OWNER´S MANUAL

Vehicle and Infotainment
ŠKODA OCTAVIA

Documentation of vehicle delivery

Date of vehicle handover[a] ☐☐ / ☐☐ / ☐☐☐☐

ŠKODA Partner

Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

Has the vehicle an extended warranty? Yes ☐ No ☐

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[b]

Years: _____ or km: _____

or

miles: _____

[a] Due to the requirements of generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be specified instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

[b] (Whichever comes first).

5E0012720AQ

1. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number
(To be filled in by the vendor)
belongs to:

Title, Name / Company:

Address:

Telephone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service consultant:

Telephone:

2. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number
belongs to:

Title, Name / Company:

Address:

Telephone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service consultant:

Telephone:

5E0012720AQ

Useful links

Before starting off

Adjusting the seat	» page 84
Adjusting the steering wheel	» page 21
Exterior mirrors	» page 83
Head / tail lights	» page 72
Windscreen wipers and washers	» page 81
Heating and ventilation	» page 114
Heated windscreen	» page 79

Instrument cluster

Warning lights	» page 39
Display operation	» page 52
Set the time	» page 50

Unlocking and opening

Key-free unlocking (KESSY)	» page 61
Luggage compartment lid	» page 65
Power windows	» page 67
Bonnet	» page 272

Connectivity

Online Services – ŠKODA Connect	» page 13
SmartLink+	» page 171
Connecting Infotainment to the Internet	» page 168
Hotspot (WLAN)	» page 169
Making telephone calls	» page 158
Configuration wizard	» page 129

Driving

Automatic gearbox	» page 205
Braking and stabilizing systems	» page 210
START-STOP system	» page 201
Adaptive cruise control	» page 234
Lane Assist	» page 244
Offroad mode	» page 213

Parking

Parking the vehicle	» page 204
Parking aid	» page 215
Reversing camera	» page 221

Care and maintenance

Service intervals	» page 56
Tyre pressure	» page 279
Washing the vehicle	» page 261
Folding the windscreen wiper arms securely	» page 295

Inspecting and replenishing

Refuelling	» page 265
AdBlue®	» page 269
Engine oil	» page 273
Windscreen washer fluid	» page 273

Emergencies

Emergency call	» page 16
Vehicle tool kit	» page 284
Lamp replacement	» page 300
Replacing fuses	» page 296
Changing a wheel	» page 284
Jump-starting	» page 290
Towing the vehicle	» page 291

Interesting tips

Electronic version of the Owner's Manual	» page 10
Tutorial videos	» page 11
Digital instrument cluster	» page 38

Table of Contents

Liability for defects and ŠKODA warranty for new cars 6

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder) 8

Radio equipment - Information on Directive 2014/53/EU 9

About the Owner's Manual

Introductory information 10
- General 10
- Printed Owner's Manual 10
- Electronic version of the Owner's Manual 10
- Tutorial videos 11
- Application MyŠKODA App 11
- Notes 12

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect 13
- Service package“ŠKODA Connect” 13
- “ŠKODA Connect” website 13
- User and vehicle registration, activation of online services 13
- Managing online services 15
- Emergency call 16
- “Care Connect” Services 17
- “Infotainment Online” services 18

Safety

Passive Safety 19
- General information 19
- Correct and safe seating position 19

Seat belts 22
- Using seat belts 22
- Inertia reel and belt tensioners 24

Airbag system 25
- Description of the airbag system 25
- Airbag deactivation 27

Transporting children safely 29
- Child seat 29
- Fastening systems 32

Operation

Cockpit 35
- Overview 34

Instruments and warning lights 36
- Instrument cluster 36
- Digital instrument cluster 38
- Warning lights 39

Information system 49
- Driver information system 49
- Operation of the information system 52
- Driving data (Multifunction display) 52
- Menus in the display of the instrument cluster 54
- Service intervals 56
- Personalization 57

Unlocking and opening 59
- Unlocking and locking 59
- Anti-theft alarm system 64
- Manually operated tailgate 65
- Electric boot lid 65
- Window operation 67
- Panoramic tilt / slide sunroof 70

Lights and visibility 72
- Light 72
- Interior lighting 77
- Visibility 79
- Windscreen wipers and washers 80
- Rear view mirror 82

Seats and head restraints 84
- Front seats 84
- Rear seats 87
- Headrests 88
- Seat heaters 89
- Heated steering wheel 90

Practical features 91
- Passenger compartment features 91
- Electrical sockets 98
- Ashtray and cigarette lighter 100
- Tablet holder 101

Transport of cargo 102
- Luggage compartment 102
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate) 110
- Net partition 112
- Transport on the roof rack 113

Heating and ventilation 114
- Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic 114
- Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 119

Infotainment

Introductory information 122
- Important information 122
- Infotainment Overview 122

Infotainment operation 125
Infotainment operation 125
Voice control 130
Updating the Infotainment software 132

Infotainment settings - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero 133
Infotainment system settings 133
Radio menu settings 136
Media menu settings 137
Image menu settings 137
Video DVD menu settings 137
Settings 137
SmartLink+ menu settings 138
Navigation menu settings 139

Infotainment settings - Swing 141
Infotainment system settings 141
Radio menu settings 142
Media menu settings 143
Import contactsTelephone menu settings 143
SmartLink+ menu settings 143

Radio 144
service 144

Media 147
service 147
Audio sources 149

Images 153
Image viewer 153

Video DVD 154
video player 154

Media Command 156
Operation 156

Telephone 158
Introductory information 158
Pairing and connecting 159
Use the SIM card in the external module 162
Telephone functions 163
Text messages (SMS) 166

Data connection 168
Internet connection 168
Connecting via the CarStick device 168
Establishing a connection using a SIM card in the external module 169
Establishing a connection using the Bluetooth® rSAP profile 169
Connecting via WLAN 169

SmartLink 171
Introductory information 171
Android Auto 172
Apple CarPlay 173
MirrorLink® 174
Application“ŠKODA OneApp” 175

Navigation 176
Introductory information 176
Search for destination and enter 179
Saved destinations 182
Import your own goals 184
Map 186
Route guidance 189
Route 192
Waypoint mode 194
Traffic reports 196

Vehicle systems 198
CAR - Vehicle settings 198

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 199
Starting and stopping the engine 199
START-STOPsystem 201
Brakes and Parking 203
Manual gear changing and pedals 204
Automatic transmission 205
Running in the engine and economical driving 207
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 209

Assist systems 210
General information 210
Braking and stabilisation systems 210
Offroadmode 213
Parking aid (ParkPilot) 215
Rear traffic alert and wizard for “Blind spot”Monitoring 218
Rear View Camera 221
Park Assist 224
Trailer manoeuvring assistant (Trailer Assist) 229
Cruise Control System 231
Speed limiter 232
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 234
Front Assist 239
Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection) 241
Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist) 243
Spurhalteassistent (Lane Assist) 244
Traffic sign recognition 246
Fatigue detection system 248
Tyre pressure monitoring 249

Towing device and trailer 250
Hitch 250
Using hitch 255

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 259
- Service work, adjustments and technical alterations 259
- Cleaning and care 260

Inspecting and replenishing 265
- Fuel 265
- AdBlue® and its refilling 269
- Engine compartment 271
- Engine oil 273
- Coolant 274
- Brake fluid 275
- Vehicle battery 276

Wheels 278
- Wheels and tyres 278
- Operating in winter conditions 281

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help 283
- Emergency equipment 283
- Changing a wheel 284
- Puncture repair kit 287
- Jump-starting 290
- Towing the vehicle 291
- Remote control and removable light - changing the battery 293
- Emergency unlocking / locking of doors 294
- Replacing windscreen wiper blades 295

Fuses and light bulbs 296
- Fuses 296
- Bulbs 300

Technical data

Technical data 305
- Basic vehicle data 305
- Vehicle-specific details per engine type 312

Index

Liability for defects and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO a.s. grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO will ensure the following services.
- Free repair of faulty components or vehicle defects that occur within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of paintwork defects on your vehicle that occur within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of rust perforation to the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only rust perforation of body panels from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of rust perforation on bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of warranty is the date on which the first buyer purchases the new cars from the ŠKODA Partner[1]. The ŠKODA Partner must insert this date into the manufacturer's systems accordingly for your car identified by the Vehicle Identification Number.

Vehicle repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by repairing it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

The ŠKODA warranty is valid at any ŠKODA service partner.

One of the conditions for service from the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and adequate manner and in accordance with ŠKODA AUTO provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO provisions when raising a claim from the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO provisions was not the cause of the defect.

ŠKODA warranty excludes parts that are subject to natural wear such as tyres, spark plugs, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchroniser rings, batteries etc. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third-parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that are not factory installed and/or delivered.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the defect was caused by one of the following:
- Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unapproved modification to your vehicle.
- Non-compliance with provisions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.).
- Parts fitted or connected on or in the vehicle whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that it was not the cause.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

[1] Due to the requirements of generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be specified instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

Mobility warranty
The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

As part of the mobility warranty, if your car breaks down as a result of an unexpected fault when you are on the move, you can access services to ensure your continued mobility. These services include the following: Breakdown service at the breakdown location and towing to the ŠKODA Service Partner, technical assistance by phone or on-site operation.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage available for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a subsequent agreement.

Optional ŠKODA extended warranty
If you opted for a ŠKODA extended warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty with regards to all free warranty repairs is extended by the period you chose or until the chosen mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA extended warranty does not apply to external and internal foils.

The information on the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA extended warranty is provided by your ŠKODA partner.

i Note
The ŠKODA extended warranty is only available in some countries.

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with a device that serves as an accident data recorder (referred to solely as “EDR” from this point). The main purpose of the EDR is data recording during a traffic accident or other exceptional traffic conditions (referred to solely as “accident” from this point), where the restraint systems are activated.

The EDR records the accident in a short time (approximately 10 s), by showing the following information, for example:

- The function of certain vehicle systems,
- The driver and passenger seat belt status,
- The actuation of the brake and accelerator pedal,
- The speed of the vehicle at the time of the accident.

The recorded data helps with the analysis of how the vehicle systems were behaving shortly before, during and shortly after the accident, thereby ensuring better information regarding the circumstances under which the accident occurred, which lead to material damage and possibly to personal injury.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is then also recorded. In addition to the information on whether the affected systems were switched on or off at the relevant time, whether these were only partially available or were inactive, there is also the possibility of tracking whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or braked the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the vehicle equipment, these functions may include, for example:

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Lane Assist
- Park Assist
- Parking aid
- Emergency brake function (Front Assist)

EDR data is only recorded if an accident causes the restraint systems to be activated. Under normal driving conditions there is no data recording and there is no audio or video recording of the vehicle interior or the vehicle environment. Personal data such as name, gender, age or place where the accident occurred is also not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect EDR content to other data sources, and therefore deduce the identification of some of the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes of the accident.

Reading out the EDR requires special equipment with specific access authorization and a legally prescribed diagnostic connection in the vehicle “on-board diagnostics”), and the ignition will need to be switched on.

ŠKODA AUTO will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDRwithout the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised for use of the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Due to the legal requirements, ŠKODA AUTO is required to monitor the quality and safety of its products, meaning that it is only entitled to use data from the EDR for monitoring the product on the market, for further research and development, and to improve the quality of the vehicle's safety systems. For the purpose of research and development, ŠKODA AUTO will also make data available to third parties. This is done exclusively in anonymous form, i.e. without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or other authorised user.

Radio equipment - Information on Directive 2014/53/EU

Fig. 1
ŠKODA websites

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

The manufacturers of these radio systems declare that these systems comply with the requirements of Directive 2014/53/EU.

To display **Information on Directive 2014/53 / EU and the Declaration of Conformity** proceed as follows.

1. Scan the QR code » Fig. 1 **or** enter the following address in your web browser.

   http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals
2. Click on “Choose your manual”.
3. Select the desired model - a menu with the manuals is displayed.
4. Select the construction period as well as the language.
5. Select the **Information on Directive 2014/53 / EU** file in **pdf** format.

About the Owner's Manual

Introductory information

General

Read this Owner's Manual carefully, because the operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the universally applicable country-specific legal requirements (e.g. for transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic etc.) must always be observed.

Always pay attention when driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

The Owner's Manual applies to all **body variants** of the vehicle, all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

The Owner's Manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in the Owner's Manual.

The scope of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. For any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **pictures** in the Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in the Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in the Owner's Manual.

We recommend that the **web pages** that are referred to in the Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. If the web pages are displayed using the mobile view, they may not contain all necessary information.

Printed Owner's Manual

The printed Owner's Manual includes the most important information relating to vehicle operation. For complete information, see the electronic version of the Owner's Manual.

Electronic version of the Owner's Manual

Fig. 2
ŠKODA websites

The electronic version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The electronic version of the Owner's Manual is available on the ŠKODA website and in the MyŠKODA App mobile application.

Displaying the electronic version of the Owner's Manual

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 2 **or** enter the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

› Click on “Choose your manual”.
› Select the desired model.
› Select the construction period as well as the language.
› Select the desired Owner's Manual.

Tutorial videos

Fig. 3
Tutorial videos

The operation of some vehicle functions can be displayed in the form of video instructions.

Show menu with video instructions

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 3 **or** enter the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals-videos

Note

The video instructions are only available in some language versions.

Application MyŠKODA App

Fig. 4 **The MyŠKODA App application is available for devices with the Android (Google) or iOS (Apple) operating system.**

The MyŠKODA App application contains, for example, the electronic version of the Owner's Manual, quick tips regarding how to resolve certain situations in relation to the vehicle or a description of the Simply Clever solutions.

You can use this application to get in touch with a ŠKODA partner and to use its services or to access the breakdown service quickly.

The application can also be used as an RSS reader of favourite websites.

After entering the following address into the web browser, the website is opened with information on the ŠKODA mobile applications.

http://go.skoda.eu/service-app

Installing the MyŠKODA App application

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 4 .

Notes

Terms used

“Specialist” - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

“ŠKODA service partners” - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to perform service work on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

“ŠKODA partners” - A company that has been authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

“Press” - Short press (e.g. a button) within 1 s

“Hold” - Long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 s

Direction indications

All direction indications such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear” relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Explanation of symbols

→ Marker to the next operation step

! WARNING

Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

! CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

i Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Service package“ŠKODA Connect”

The “ŠKODA Connect” online services extend the vehicle and Infotainment functions with the “Care Connect” and “Infotainment Online” service packages.

“ŠKODA Connect” online services are not included in the vehicle delivery. Their order is made separately via the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” » page 13, *Website “ŠKODA Connect Portal”*. Rights and obligations of the Parties with respect to the provision of these services are governed by a separate agreement.

“Care Connect” online services
“Care Connect” services include the following features.

- Emergency, information and breakdown call.
- Proactive service offering to connect with your ŠKODA service partner.
- Remote access to the vehicle using the “ŠKODA Connect” application and the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website.

For “Care Connect”Services functionality, the vehicle must be within range of a mobile network through which the “Care Connect”Services are provided.

“Infotainment Online” online services
The “Infotainment Online” services extend the Infotainment functions, e.g. with the following functions.

- Weather forecast.
- Filling station search with information on fuel prices.
- Online traffic information.
- Online destination search.

The Infotainment must be connected to the Internet for the “Infotainment Online” Services to work» page 168.

Terms of use and availability of services
Current **“conditions for the use of the user account”** incl. **“declaration on the protection of personal data”** can be found on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website » page 13, *Website “ŠKODA Connect Portal”*.

The availability of the services is dependent on the type of vehicle and on the type of Infotainment system installed in the vehicle. Some services are available only in certain countries.

Note
The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this period of validity, interim content changes to these services are possible.

“ŠKODA Connect” website

Fig. 5 **Starting the ŠKODA Connect Portal website**

The “ŠKODA Connect” website contains information about the online services and their functions, access to the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website, as well as the option to download the “ŠKODA Connect” application.

The “ŠKODA Connect” website can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 5 **or** by entering the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

User and vehicle registration, activation of online services

Website “ŠKODA Connect Portal”

Fig. 6 **Starting the ŠKODA Connect Portal website**

The use of the “ŠKODA Connect” online services requires prior user and vehicle registration on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website as well as activation of online services in the Infotainment system.

The “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 6 **or** by entering the following address in your web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal

Information on registering for and activating online services

Fig. 7 **Instruction video on how to register for and activate services**

Fig. 8 **Electronic version of the instructions for registration and activation of services**

Instruction video on how to register for and activate services
Registration and activation are carried out in accordance with the instruction video.

The instruction video can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 7 **or** entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-video

Electronic version of the instructions for registration and activation of services
Current information on **registration and activation** of Online Services can be found in the **electronic version** of the instructions for the Online Services on the “ŠKODA Connect” website.

The electronic version of the instructions can be opened by scanning the QR code » Fig. 8 **or** by entering the following address in the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connect-manual

Note
For help with registration, activation as well as the Internet connection, please contact a ŠKODA service partner.

Activation in Infotainment

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)** → **Registration**.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during user and vehicle registration on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website.
› Wait until the message **Registration complete.** is displayed (can take several minutes)
› Confirm the message.

Note
- Availability of a GPS signal and a mobile network is required for activation.
- In vehicles that only have “Infotainment Online” Services, a GPS signal must be available and the Infotainment must be connected to the Internet for activation.
- The list of services can be displayed » page 15, *Display of service management*.

Deleting/switching the vehicle user

Deleting the user
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)** → **Registration**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete owner** → **Delete** and confirm the delete process.

Changing the user

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)** → **Registration**.
› Tap the function surface **New owner** → **Transfer ownership**.
› Enter and confirm the registration PIN code received during registration of the new user and during vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website.
› If necessary, confirm the change of user by tapping the function surface **Change main users**.

Note

By deleting the registered vehicle in the user account on the "ŠKODA Connect Portal" website, the user is also deleted in the Infotainment system.

Managing online services

Display of service management

In Services Management, it is possible to display information about the online services, the validity of their license, or to switch the services on/off.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management**.
› To **display the designations and the status of the services**, select the desired service.
› For **detailed information about the service** tap the function surface > .
› To **switch the services on/off**, tap the function surface with "Checkbox".

Switch online services on/off in infotainment

Switching Private mode function on/off

By switching the **Private mode** function on, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of services, are deactivated.

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management** → **Private mode**.

Switching "Care Connect" services on/off

By switching the "Care Connect" services off, the services relating to sending vehicle information and personal data, which are essential for the provision of services, are deactivated.

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management** → **Care Connect**.

Switching "Infotainment Online" services on/off

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (online services)** → **Services Management** → **Infotainment Online**.

Note

The **emergency call** remains fully functional after activation of the **Private mode** function or after deactivation of "Care Connect" services. The functions of the **information and breakdown call** are limited.

Online services at ŠKODA Switch service partner off/on

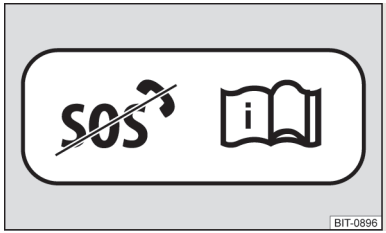

Fig. 9
Sticker with the information about the switched off online services

It is possible to have the online services switched off/on exclusively by a ŠKODA service partner.

After turning off the online services, none of the "ŠKODA Connect" online services are functioning.

To inform the vehicle user that the "ŠKODA Connect" online services, including the emergency call are out of order, the service partner **applies** the **the sticker** » Fig. 9 **at** a visible point in the vehicle (eg at the roof cladding). This **Sticker should not be removed** for as long as the online services are off.

CAUTION

It should be noted that the emergency, information and panning call is not available after switching off the online services. For this reason, no automatic emergency call is made in the event of a serious car accident.

Status Symbols of Online Services

Fig. 10
Status symbols of online services

In the Infotainment » Fig. 10 status line, information on the status of the Online Services is displayed.

A The "ŠKODA Connect" online services are available. At the same time the symbol of the connected network type can be displayed.

B The connection to the "ŠKODA Connect" online services is being established.

C Localisation services are restricted or disabled. Detailed information about online services can be displayed » page 15, *Display of service management*.

D Localisation services are enabled. Detailed information about online services can be displayed » page 15, *Display of service management*.

localisation services

For the complete functionality of some online services, activated localisation services are required.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

When localisation services are active, one of the following symbols will be displayed in the status line in the Infotainment screen D » Fig. 10.

Emergency call

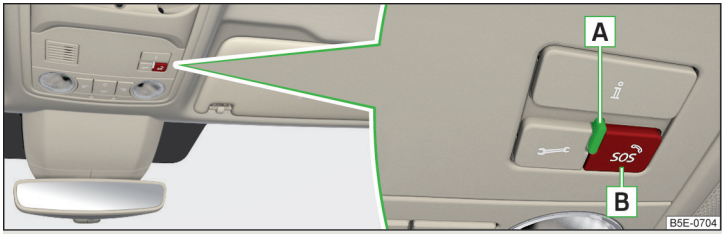

Fig. 11 **Emergency call button**

Serious accident

In the event of an accident with an air bag or belt tensioner release, a call to the emergency call centre is **automatically** started. The emergency call centre simultaneously receives information on the accident, e.g. the location and severity of the accident, the number of occupants with fastened seatbelts and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Minor accident

The option for establishing a connection to the emergency call centre or to the breakdown service appears in the Infotainment screen.

Manual start of a call with the emergency call centre

› Press and hold the B » Fig. 11 button.
› In the Infotainment screen or on the instrument cluster display, confirm the connection setup.

The call can be started manually, for example, if you are reporting an accident in which you were not directly involved.

The **system status** is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp A » Fig. 11.

▸ Green - the system is functional.
▸ Red - there is a fault in the system.
▸ Not illumiated - the system is switched off » page 15.

Note

The emergency service is functional even without user registration and activation of services.

“Care Connect” Services

Proactive service

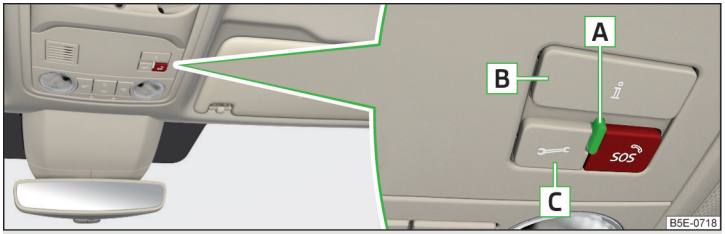

Fig. 12 **Buttons and warning lights of the Care Connect services**

The **proactive service** provides an overview of the technical status of your vehicle and on any due service events. It is also possible to establish a connection to the information or breakdown call centre.

Buttons and warning lights of “Care Connect”services » Fig. 12

A Warning light for system status.

B Press this button to establish a call to the **information number** in the event of problems with the online services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

C Press this button to establish a call to the **breakdown number** in the event of a breakdown.

The **system status** is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp A » Fig. 12.

- Green - the system is functional.
- Red - there is a fault in the system.

Note

The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this period of validity, interim content changes to these services are possible. Current information can be found on the “ŠKODA Connect” website» page 13.

Remote access to the vehicle

Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

Fig. 13 **ŠKODA Connect application**

With the **remote access to the vehicle** service, you can access some vehicle functions via the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website or the “ŠKODA Connect” application installed on your mobile device.

After entering the following address into the web browser, the website is opened with information on the ŠKODA mobile applications.

http://go.skoda.eu/service-app

Installing the “ŠKODA Connect” mobile application

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 13 .

Remote access to the vehicle includes, for example, the following services.

- Driving data.
- Vehicle condition.
- Last parking position.
- Vehicle unlocking and vehicle locking.
- Online operation of the auxiliary heater.

Note

The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this interim period of validity, content changes of these services are possible. Current information can be found on the “ŠKODA Connect” website» page 13.

“Infotainment Online” services

Main menu and overview of services

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Fig. 14
Main menu

These services extend the functionality of the Internet-connected Infotainment.

To **display** the main menu » Fig. 14, tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface .

- News from the RSS channels set in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website
- Online search for filling stations with information on fuel prices » page 181
- P Online search for car parks with information on free parking spaces » page 181
- Weather forecast near the vehicle position, the destination of the route or in the vicinity of the selected location
- Online destination search » page 179
- Import of the destinations created in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website » page 185
- Import of the routes created in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website » page 193
- Online updating of the navigation data (valid for the infotainment Columbus) and import of POI Categories » page 177
- Conditions for the use of online services
- Settings of Online Services » page 135

For more information on the available services, see the “ŠKODA Connect” website» page 13.

Note

The availability of the services listed always refers to the period of validity of the contract. During this interim period of validity, content changes of these services are possible. Current information can be found on the “ŠKODA Connect” website» page 13.

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This section of the manual includes important information on the subject of passive safety. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

Other important safety information can also be found in the following chapters of this Owner´s Manual. The Owner´s Manual should therefore always be in the vehicle.

Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Check the function of the lighting and turn signal systems.
- Check the function of the wipers and check the wiper blades for wear. Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed. Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- Ensure that no parts and components are visibly loose in the vehicle.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children by using a suitable child seat» page 29, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position. Instruct your passengers to assume the correct seated position» page 19, *Correct and safe seating position*.

Driving safety

In the interests of traffic safety, the following information must be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

Correct and safe seating position

Introduction

Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to the side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.

WARNING

▪ The adjustable seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
▪ Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 29, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
▪ The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.

Driver's correct seated position

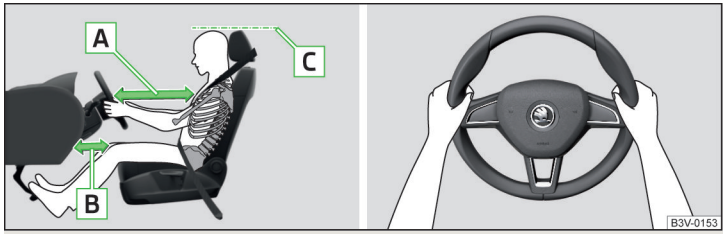

Fig. 15 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
✓ For vehicles equipped with driver knee airbags, adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 6 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 15 - B.
✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 15 - A.
✓ Adjust the headrest so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of your head (not for seats with integrated headrests) » Fig. 15 - C.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 22, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 6 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
▪ When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the “9 o'clock” and “3 o'clock” position » Fig. 15. Never hold the steering wheel in the “12 o'clock” position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). Otherwise, in the event of airbag deployment, you could suffer serious injury to the arms, hands and head.
▪ Ensure that no objects are located in the driver's footwell, as they could lodge in the pedal system whilst driving. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

Fig. 16 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 16.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the holder in arrow direction 3 until the stop.

! WARNING

▪ Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
▪ The safety lever must always be locked after adjusting so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – risk of accident!

Passenger's correct seating position

Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of your head » Fig. 15 *on page 20* - C (not for seats with integrated headrests).
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 22, *Using seat belts*.

! WARNING

▪ Ensure a distance of at least 25 cm to the dashboard, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you properly - risk of death!
▪ Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Passengers' correct seating position on the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 20 first.

For passenger safety on the rear seats and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following information must be observed.

✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 15 *on page 20* - C.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 22, *Using seat belts*.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy considerably. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

When transporting children, observe the following information» page 29, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Put the seat belt on before starting any journey! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 19, *Correct and safe seating position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of safety belts

- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.

WARNING (Continued)

- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not attach clamps or similar objects to the belt - the function of the belt retractor could be restricted.
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 87.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair the proper operation of the inertia reel » page 264.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If parts of the belt system become damaged (e.g. the belt webbing, the belt connections, the inertia reel, the locking part etc.), the respective seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage immediately.
- Seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident must be replaced by a specialist garage. Also check the seat belt anchors.

Correct routing of seat belt

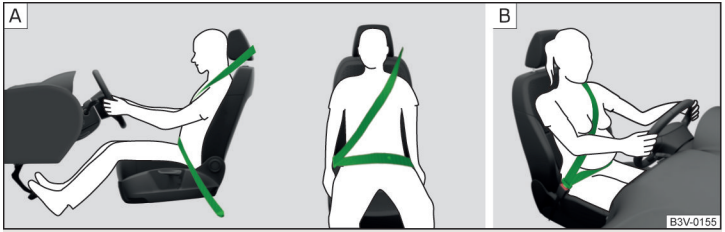

Fig. 17 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

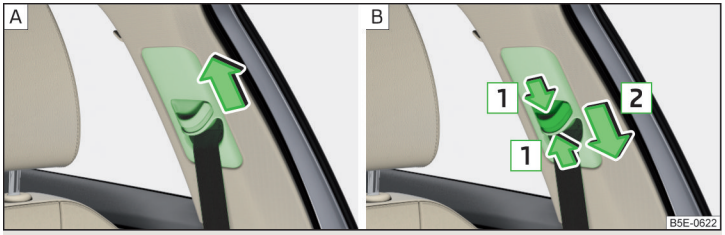

Fig. 18 **Seat belt height adjusters for front seats**

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The **shoulder part of the belt** must run approximately over the middle of your shoulder (never across your neck) and fit well against your upper body » Fig. 17 - A.

The **lap part of the belt** must run lap part of the belt must run in front of the pelvis (must never run across your stomach) and must always fit snugly » Fig. 17 - A.

In the case of **pregnant women**, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 17 - B.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats

› Push the seat belt guide loop **upwards** in the direction of arrow» Fig. 18 - A.
› **or**: push together the mechanism in the direction of arrows 1 and push the return pulley **downwards** in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 18 - B.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is blocked reliably » page 24, *Inertia reels*.

! WARNING

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, keys, etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

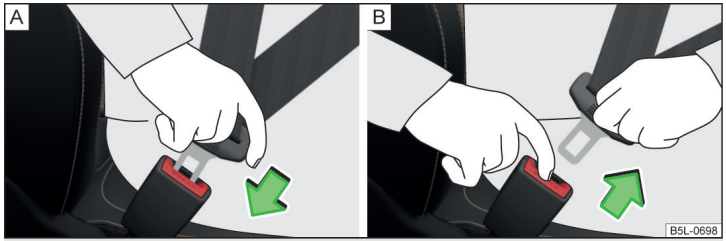

Fig. 19 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

Before fastening

› Adjust the headrest properly (does not apply to seats with integrated headrests).
› Adjust the seat (applies to the front seats).
› Adjust the belt height (applies to the front seats).

Fasten

› Slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 19 - A until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release

› Hold the lock tongue and press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 19 - B. The lock tongue pops out.

› Guide the belt back by hand so that the seat belt does not twist and the seat belt strap rolls up fully.

WARNING

The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.

Inertia reel and belt tensioners

Inertia reels

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel. The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have the inertia reel inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including the removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

As a supplement to the seat belts, the airbag system provides additional passenger protection in the event of severe frontal and side collisions.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag can only be achieved if the seat belts are applied properly. The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belts.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the warning light in the instrument cluster » page 43.

System description

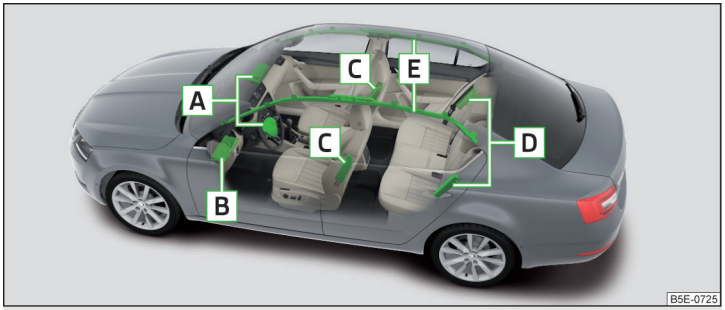

Fig. 20 **Airbag installation points**

Installation locations of airbags » Fig. 20

- A Front airbags
- B Driver's knee airbag
- C Front side airbags
- D Rear side airbags
- E Head airbags

The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the remaining body parts is thus reduced.

- **Front airbags** - head and upper body. The airbags can be identified by the lettering AIRBAG featured on the steering wheel and on the dash panel on the passenger side.
- **Driver's knee airbag** - Legs. The airbag features the lettering AIRBAG on the dashboard on the driver's side.
- **Side airbags** - for the entire upper body (chest, stomach, pelvis) on the side next to the door. The side air bags are marked by a label with the lettering AIRBAG on the front seat backrests. The rear side airbags are provided with the lettering AIRBAG in between the entrance area and the rear seat backrest.
- **Head airbags** - head and neck. The airbags are provided with the lettering AIRBAG marked on the B-pillar cladding.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.

- Individual airbags.
- Warning light in the instrument cluster » page 43.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 28.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 28.

Airbag deployment

Fig. 21 **Inflated airbags**

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

When triggered, the airbag is filled with gas and unfolds. The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

Upon inflation of the airbag, smoke is released. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Triggering conditions
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. Important here is the hardness of the object on which the vehicle impacts, the impact angle, the vehicle speed, etc.

The deceleration during impact plays an important role in the deployment of the airbags. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag.
- Rear side airbag.
- Head airbag.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.
- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - switch).

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Safety instructions

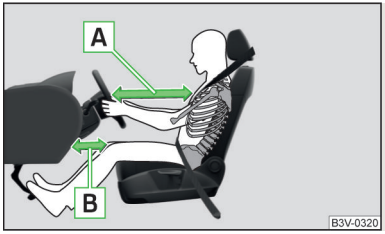

Fig. 22
Safe distance from the steering wheel and the dashboard

WARNING

General information
- **The seat belts and the airbag system can only offer proper protection if the driver and passengers are seated properly** » page 19.
- The airbag develops considerable forces when triggered, which can lead to serious injuries or even death if the correct seating position or seated position is not observed. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 31.
- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- The airbag system must be replaced if it has been deployed.
- In the area of the front airbag and the knee airbag, the surface of the steering wheel and the dashboard should be cleaned using only a dry cloth or one that has been dampened with water.

WARNING

Information about front airbags
- It is important for the driver and front passenger to maintain a minimum distance of 25 cm from the steering wheel or the control panel » Fig. 22 - A, If you do not observe this distance, the airbag cannot protect you - risk to life! The front seats and the head restraints must always be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 27, *Airbag deactivation*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.

WARNING (Continued)

- No other persons, animals or objects may be positioned in front of the occupants on the front seats in the deployment area of the front air bags.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the dashboard on the front passenger side must not have stickers attached, covered or modified in any other way. No parts (e.g. cup holders, mobile phone mounts etc.(should be mounted in the vicinity of the airbag installation locations and in the airbag deployment area.
- Never place objects on the surface of the dashboard on the front passenger side.

WARNING

Information about knee airbags

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 6 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 22 - B. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. Nothing may be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

WARNING

Information about for side and head airbags

- No objects (e.g. sun visors turned towards the windows) should be located in the deployment area of the side and head airbags. No accessories (e.g. cup holders etc.) should be fitted to the doors - risk of injury!
- Hang only light clothing on clothes hooks in the vehicle. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing. Do not use clothes hangers to hang the clothing.
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Further information » page 260.

WARNING (Continued)

- No excessive forces, such as knocks, kicks etc., should be exerted on the seat backrests - there is a risk of damage to the side air bags. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Have any damage to the original seat covers or stitching at the installation point of the side airbags repaired immediately by a specialist garage.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the seat) must only be carried out by a specialist garage. Further information » page 260.
- No modifications should be made to parts of the airbag system, to the front bumper or to the body.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

Airbag deactivation

Deactivating airbags

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 23 *on page 28* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

The airbag deactivation is indicated by the warning light » page 43.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- A child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat, in which the child is transported with its back to the direction of travel » page 29.
- Despite correct adjustment of the driver's seat, the distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest cannot be maintained.
- Additional controls for drivers with a physical disability are installed in the vehicle.
- Special seats (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags) are installed in the vehicle.

WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated upon the sale of the vehicle, the buyer must be informed of this!

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

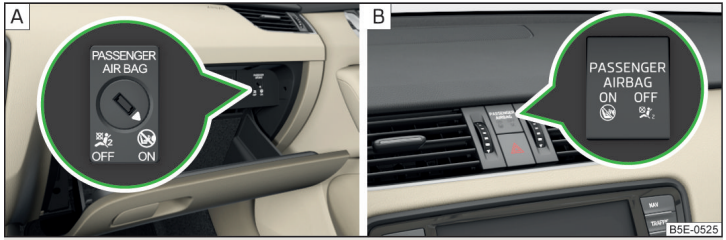

Fig. 23 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front passenger airbag**

Positions of the key switch » Fig. 23 - A

OFF The front passenger airbag is deactivated - after the ignition is switched on, the indicator light OFF » Fig. 23 illuminates B

ON The front passenger airbag is activated - after the ignition is switched on, the indicator light illuminates for 65 seconds ON

Switch off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key ».
› Carefully insert the key into the slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light OFF illuminates after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key ».
› Carefully insert the key into the slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch ».
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the warning light ON illuminates after the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- The key cannot be inserted into the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag! The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the warning lights ON OFF flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident. Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, children must be transported in child seats!

The information in this Owner´s Manual as well as the instructions of the child seat manufacturer must be observed when installing and using the child seat.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport child seats on the rear seats. Children should be transported on the front passenger seat only in exceptional circumstances.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- One should never carry children - or indeed babies - on one's lap.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. Children might not be capable of leaving the vehicle or helping themselves independently in the event of an emergency. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.
- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.

WARNING (Continued)

- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.
- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 89. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 1)

Does not apply to Taiwan

Fig. 24 **Warning labels**

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag positioned in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This is indicated also on stickers that are located at the following positions.

- On the passenger sun visor» Fig. 24 - A.
- On the B-pillar on the front passenger side » Fig. 24 – B.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned **in front of or at the same height** as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side. Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt does not "jam" in the return pulley. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

! WARNING

- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- As soon as the child seat, in which the child is transported with their back in the direction of travel, is no longer used in the front passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be switched on again.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat (variant 2)

Applies to Taiwan

Fig. 25
Warning labels

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the front passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the front passenger's sun visor » Fig. 25.

Child safety and the side airbag

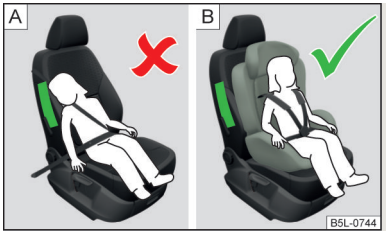

Fig. 26
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 26 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the area into which the side airbag will deploy to allow the airbag to provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 26 - B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9 - 18 kg
2	15 - 25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Read and observe ! on page 29 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats secured with a seat belt on seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats Outside	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	**U**	**U**	**U**
0+ up to 13 kg	**U**	**U**	**U**
1 9 - 18 kg	**U**	**U**	**U**

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats Outside	Rear seat Centre
2 15 - 25 kg	**U**	**U**	**U**
3 22 - 18 kg	**U**	**U**	**U**

U Child seat category “Universal” - a child seat designed for fastening on the seat with the seat belt.

Fastening systems

attachment points of the ISOFIX system

Fig. 27
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

Two locking eyes are located between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the outer rear seats and front passenger seat for fixing theISOFIX system child seat in place.

First, remove the caps A in order to access the locking eyes» Fig. 27. After removing the child seat, replace he caps.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIX system

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			
1 9 - 18 kg	D	X	IL-SU IUF	X
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			

Group	Size class of the child seat[a]	Front passenger seat[b]	Rear seats outside	Rear seat middle
2 15 - 25 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
3 22 - 18 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**

[a] The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

[b] If the front passenger seat is fitted with ISOFIX system attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with “Semi-Universal” approval.

IL-SU The seat is suitable for installation of a ISOFIX child seat with the “Semi-Universal” approval. The “Semi-Universal” category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for theISOFIX installation of a child seat with “Universal” approval and attachment with theTOP TETHER system attachment belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system

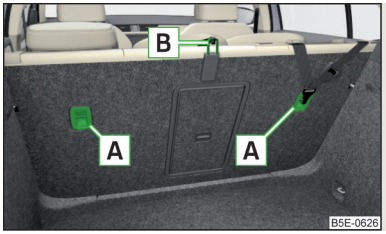

Fig. 28
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The locking eyes A for attaching the belt of a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the rear seat backrests » Fig. 28.

Some country-specific models can also be fitted with an attachment point B » Fig. 28.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats equipped with attachment points with the logo TOP TETHER.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

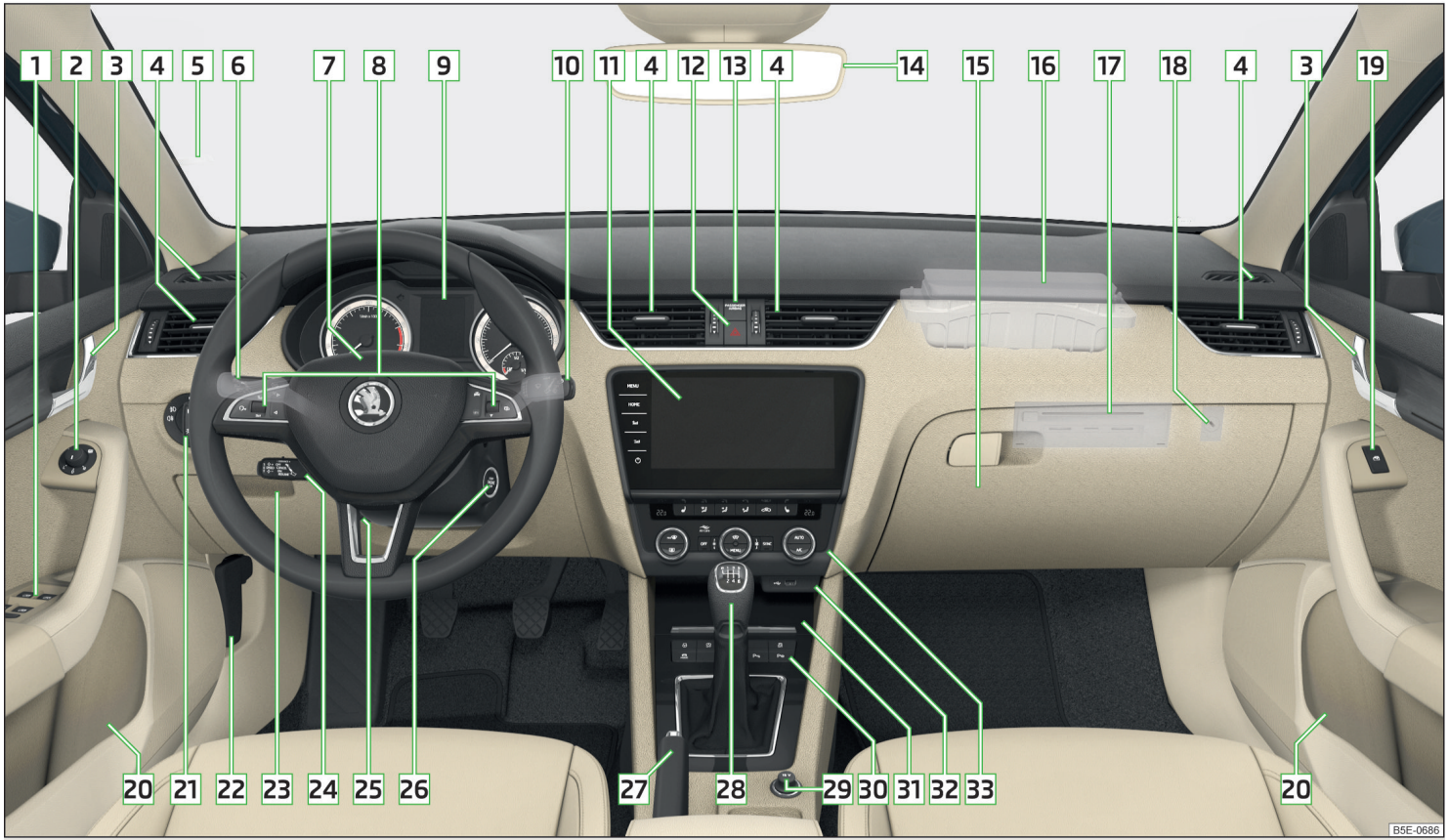

Fig. 29 **Cockpit example for LHD**

Operation

Cockpit

Overview

1 Electric power windows — 67
2 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 83
3 Door opening lever — 63
4 Air outlet vents — 118
5 Ticket holder — 91
6 Operating lever (depending on equipment):
- Indicator light and high-beam headlight — 73
- Speed regulating system — 231
- Speed limiter — 232
- Headlight assist — 75

7 Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front airbag — 25
8 Buttons for operating the information system — 49
9 Instrument cluster — 36
10 Operating lever:
- Windscreen wipers and washers — 80
- Information system — 49

11 Infotainment — 122
12 Button for hazard warning light system — 76
13 Warning light for the front seat passenger airbag — 28
14 Interior rear-view mirror — 82
15 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 95
16 Front passenger airbag — 25
17 External Infotainment module (in the passenger storage compartment) — 124
18 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 28
19 Power window in the front passenger door — 68
20 Storage compartment — 92
21 Light switch — 72
22 Bonnet release lever — 272
23 Storage compartment — 91
24 Operating lever for adaptive cruise control — 236
25 Steering wheel locking lever — 21
26 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Ignition lock — 200
- Starter button — 200

27 Handbrake lever — 203
28 Depending on equipment fitted:
- Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 204
- Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 205

29 Depending on equipment fitted:
- 12-Volt power socket — 99
- Cigarette lighter — 100

30 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- Central locking system — 61
- START STOP — 201
- Traction control TCS — 211
- Electronic Stability Control ESC — 211
- selection of drive mode — 241
- Park Assist — 224
- Parking aid — 215
- Tyre pressure monitoring system — 249

31 Storage compartment/phone box — 92, 92
32 USB input — 93
33 Controls for heating/air conditioning — 115

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in » Fig. 29.

Instruments and warning lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

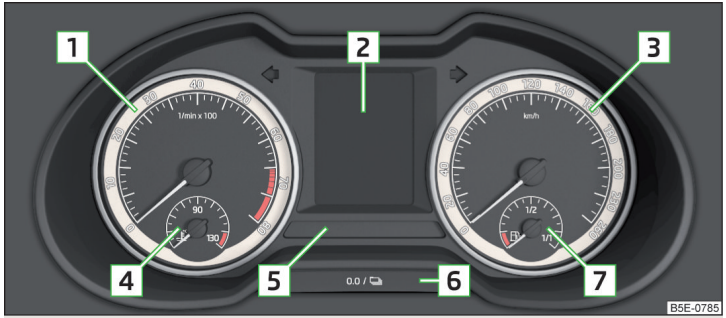

Fig. 30 **Instrument cluster**

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 36
- with warning lights » page 39

2 Display » page 49

3 Speedometer
- with warning lights » page 39

4 Depending on equipment fitted
- Coolant temperature gauge » page 36
- Natural gas display (applies to G-TEC-vehicles)

5 Bar with warning lights » page 39

6 Operation button
- setting the time » page 50
- Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 49
- Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval » page 57

7 Petrol / Diesel fuel gauge » page 37

The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout. If the visibility is poor and the lights are not on, the brightness of the instrument lighting reduces to alert the driver to switch on the lights in due time.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can be adjusted in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → → → **Light**.

Engine revolutions counter

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 30 *on page 36* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the tachometer red scale range indicates the maximum permitted speed for an engine that has been driven-in and has reached operating temperature.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D/S** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 50.

CAUTION

The pointer of the engine revolutions counter must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Coolant temperature gauge

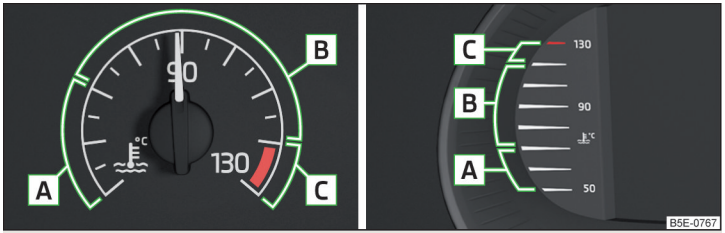

Fig. 31 **Coolant temperature gauge: Version 1/version 2**

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

A **Cold area**, The engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds and high engine loads.

B **The operating range**

C **High temperature range**, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 46.

Fuel gauge - Petrol/ Diesel

Fig. 32 **Fuel gauge: Version 1/version 2**

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The capacity of the fuel tank for petrol/diesel is approximately 50 litres for vehicles with front-wheel drive, and approximately 55 litres for vehicles with four-wheel drive.

If the fuel level reaches the reserve level A » Fig. 32, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 44.

WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The arrow ▶ next to the symbol within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Fuel gauge - natural gas / petrol

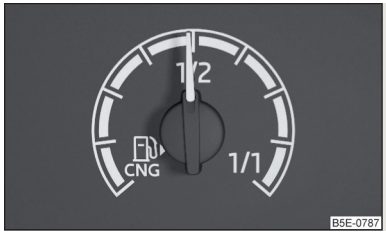

Fig. 33
Gas gauge

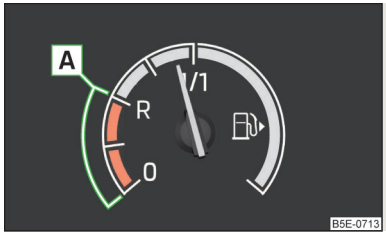

Fig. 34
Petrol fuel gauge

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The capacity of the **natural gas** fuel tank is approximately 17.5 kg.

The capacity of the **petrol**fuel tank is approximately 8.5 l.

If the fuel level reaches the reserve area in the **natural gas** tank, the icon and a request for natural gas refuelling is shown in the display.

If the fuel level in the fuel tank reaches the reserve area for **petrol,** A » Fig. 34 the warning light comes on » page 44.

Note

The arrow ▶ next to the symbol and within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right side of the vehicle.

Digital instrument cluster

Introduction

Fig. 35 **Digital instrument cluster**

1 Bar with warning lights » page 39
2 Coolant temperature gauge » page 36
3 Display » page 38
4 Petrol / Diesel fuel gauge » page 37

The brightness of the instrument illumination is set automatically depending on the ambient lighting throughout.

The brightness of the instrument lighting can be adjusted in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → → **Light**.

Display in the digital instrument cluster

Fig. 36 **Display variants / example of the classic display**

A Display variants (from the left)
- **Classic display**
- **Advanced display**
- **Modern display**
- **Basic display**
- **Sporty display**

B Central display area
C Additional information

Operation of the digital instrument cluster

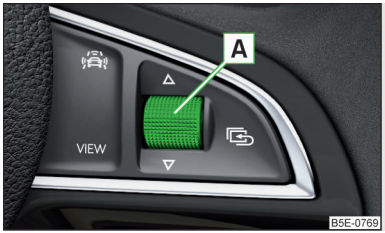

Fig. 37
Buttons/dial on the multifunction steering wheel

A **Rotate** - Movement in the selected menu / setting values / Manually change map scale (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
Press - confirm selected menu item
Turn and press - switch on automatic change of the map scale (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)

VIEW **Press** - Change the display version » Fig. 36 *on page 38*
Hold - Display the menu for the pre-selection options with additional information

Press - display main menu / return to a previous level in the menu » page 54

Pre-selection options for additional information

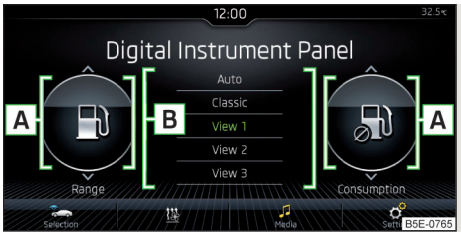

Fig. 38
Set the pre-selection options in the Infotainment system

Select the pre-selection option
› Press and hold the button VIEW on the multi-function steering wheel.
› Select and confirm one of the following pre-selection options.

- **Auto** - additional information is displayed depending on the selected driving mode
- **Classic** - Information about the engaged gear and the current speed
- **View 1** - adjustable pre-selection option
- **View 2** - adjustable pre-selection option
- **View 3** - adjustable pre-selection option

Set the pre-selection option
The pre-selection options **View 1**. **View 2** and **View 3** can be set in infotainment in the menu CAR / in the → **Dig. Instrumentenpan.**.

- In the areas A » Fig. 38, the desired additional information can be selected by moving your finger vertically across the display.
- The desired function area for the pre-selection option in the area B to save the selection.

Warning lights

Introduction

	Handbrake	» page 40
	Brake system	» page 41
	Front seat belt warning light	» page 41
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	» page 41
	Power steering Steering lock (KESSY system)	» page 41
	Stabilisation control (ESC) Traction control (TCS)	» page 42
	Traction control (ASR) deactivated	» page 42
	Antilock brake system (ABS)	» page 42
	Rear fog light	» page 42
	Exhaust control system	» page 42
	Glow plug system (diesel engine)	» page 43
EPC	EPC fault light (petrol engine)	» page 43
	Safety systems	» page 43
	Tyre pressure	» page 43
	Brake pads	» page 44

	Fuel reserve- petrol/diesel	» page 44
	Lane Assist	» page 44
	Turning signal system	» page 44
	Trailer turn signal lights	» page 44
	Fog lights	» page 45
	Speed regulating system Speed limiter	» page 45
	Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)	» page 45
CNG	Natural gas operation	» page 45
	High beam	» page 45
	Automatic gearbox	» page 45
	Rear seat belt warning light	» page 45
	Alternator	» page 45
	Coolant	» page 46
	Engine oil pressure	» page 46
	Engine oil level	» page 46
	AdBlue® level too low (diesel engine)	» page 47
	AdBlue® error (diesel engine)	» page 47
	Bulb failure	» page 47
	Display when the light is switched off	» page 47
	Particle filter	» page 47
	Windscreen washer fluid level	» page 47
	Headlight assist	» page 47
	START-STOP system	» page 48
	Display of a low temperature	» page 48
	Water in fuel filter (diesel engine)	» page 48
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)	» page 48
	Distance warning (Front Assist)	» page 48
	Front Assist	» page 48
SOS	Emergency call	» page 48
ECO	Economy mode	» page 48
	Offroad mode	» page 48
	Adaptive chassis (DCC)	» page 49
	Service	» page 49
	Natural gas container test	» page 49

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

Warning lights in the display

Depending on the significance, the warning light ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) will light up along with some other warning lights in the display.

Depending on vehicle equipment fitted, some indicator lights can be shown in the display. For example. the coolant warning light can be shown as follows.

- ▶ - monochrome (“black and white”) display
- ▶ - coloured display

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 76. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. While working in the engine compartment, be sure to observe the following warnings » page 271.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

(P) illuminates - the hand brake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 5 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

▶ Release the handbrake.

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

lights up – the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

▶ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 275.

WARNING

- If the warning light lights up at the same time as the warning light » page 42, *Anti-lock braking system (ABS)*, **do not continue your journey.** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Front seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of more than 30 km/h, the warning light flashes and an audible warning sounds at the same time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 minutes, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light illuminates permanently.

Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates – the ACC delay is not sufficient.

▶ Apply the brake.

For more information about the ACC system » page 234.

Power steering/steering lock (KESSY system)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Fault in the power steering

! lights up – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist is no longer working (significantly higher steering forces).

! illuminates - this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces may be greater.

▶ Switch off the ignition, start the engine again and travel a short distance.
▶ If the warning light ! does not go off, stop the vehicle, **do not continue your journey**. Seek help from a specialist garage.
▶ If the warning light ! does not go off, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering lock defect (KESSY system)

! flashes

Message: **Steering lock faulty. Stop!**

▶ Park the vehicle, **do not continue your journey**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

! flashes

Message: **Steering lock: workshop!**

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering column lock not unlocked (System KESSY)

! flashes

Message: **Steering lock: workshop!**

▶ Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.
▶ If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light ! comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Stability Control (ESC)/Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC system.

flashes – the ESC or TCS is currently being activated.

illuminates – there is an ESC or TCS fault.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the ESC or TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
▶ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ESC or TCS is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

For more information on the ESC system » page 211 or TCS system » page 211.

Traction control (TCS) deactivated

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

Note
On vehicles without the ESC system, the warning light **does not illuminate** upon deactivation of the TCS system, a message is just displayed on the display of the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

lights up – there is an ABS fault.

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING
- If the warning light lights up at the same time as the warning light » page 41, *Brake system*, **do not continue your journey.** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates - the rear fog light is switched on.

Emission control system

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode – there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Preheating unit (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

There is a fault in the preheating unit if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously once the ignition has been switched on.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine electronics warning light (petrol)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

EPC lights up – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode – there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Safety systems

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

System fault

illuminates

Message: **Error: airbag**

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

lights up for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds

Message: **Airbag/belt tensioner deactivated.**

ProActive passenger protection

illuminates and the following message is shown in the information cluster display

Message: **Proactive passenger protection not available.** or **ProActive passenger protection: funct. restricted.**

The seat belt for the driver and front passenger needs to be replaced.

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Change of tyre pressure values

illuminates - there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

▶ Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
▶ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressures » page 279.
▶ Correct the tyre pressure if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 284 or use the repair kit » page 287.
▶ Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 249.

System fault

flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

▶ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes after starting the engine again, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Other incidents
The warning light might be lit for one of the following reasons.
▶ The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute the load evenly.
▶ The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
▶ Snow chains are mounted.
▶ A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION
Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light in the instrument cluster can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Brake linings

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates - the brake pads are worn.

▶ It is possible to continue driving with due caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Low fuel - petrol/diesel

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 6 litres).

▶ Fill up with fuel » page 265.

Note
The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Lane Departure Warning (Lane Assist)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

The warning lights indicate the status of the Lane Assist system.

More information about the Lane Assist System » page 244.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

flashes - the left turn signal is switched on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate (does not apply when towing).

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Trailer turn signal lights

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

flashes - the trailer turn signals are switched on.

If a trailer is hitched and the warning light is not flashing, one of the trailer turn signal lights has failed.

▶ Check the trailer bulbs.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates - the fog lights are switched on.

Speed regulating system/speed limiter

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates - the vehicle speed is limited by the speed regulating system and/or the adaptive cruise control or by the speed limiter.

flashes - the speed set with the speed limiter has been exceeded.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

lights up – apply the brake.

Natural gas operation

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates - the vehicle is running on natural gas.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates - the main beam or headlight flasher is switched on.

Automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Gearbox overheated

illuminates

Message: **Gearbox overheated. You can drive on.**

Transmission overheated. You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution.

illuminates

Message: **Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!**

▶ **Do not drive the vehicle!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

▶ If the warning light does not go out, **do not continue your journey.** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Transmission problem

illuminates

Message: **Gearbox faulty. Stop the vehicle safely!**

▶ Park the vehicle, **do not continue your journey.** Seek help from a specialist garage.

illuminates

Message: **Gearbox in emergency mode. No reverse gear.**
Error: gearbox. Speed is limited.

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Rear seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates – a rear seat belt is not fastened.

illuminates - a rear seat belt is fastened.

When the seat belt is fastened/unfastened, the particular light lights up briefly and indicates the current belt status!

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates - the battery is not being charged while the engine is running.

▶ As the vehicle battery during your journey, are all non-essential electrical loads (e.g. Infotainment) must be switched off.
▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If in addition to the light the light illuminates while driving, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Coolant level too low

illuminates

Message: **Please check the coolant level. Log book!**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool.
- Check the coolant level » page 274.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light lights up again, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light lights up again, **stop driving.**

- Seek help from a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

illuminates

Message: **Engine overheat. Stop! Observe log book.**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and let it cool.
- Continue your journey only after the warning light has disappeared.

Engine oil pressure

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

flashes - the engine oil pressure is too low.

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
- If the warning light flashes, **stop driving**, even if the oil level is OK. Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.
- Seek help from a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Engine oil level too low

illuminates

Message: **Please add engine oil.**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If the engine oil is not replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Engine oil level too high

illuminates

Message: **Please reduce oil level.**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
- If the oil level is too high, you can driven on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

illuminates

Message: **Oil sensor: please visit workshop.**

- Immediately drive to the nearest specialist garage with appropriate caution.

CAUTION

If it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

AdBlue®level II low (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Illuminates - AdBlue®level too low.

▶ Replenish Add AdBlue® » page 269.

AdBlue® error (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates – there is a fault in the AdBlue® system.

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

⚠ illuminates - one of the lamps is faulty.

A message will appear in the display about the affected lamp.

Display when the light is switched off

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

Applies to vehicles with the digital instrument cluster.

lit - no light is on.

Message: **Please turn on the light.**

Particulate filter

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

The particulate filter separates and burns the soot particles from the exhaust.

⚠ illuminates - the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, if allowed by the traffic conditions » !, you should drive at a speed between 50-120 km/h in the recommended gear.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the indicator light does not go out within 30 minutes, the filter was not cleaned.

▶ Immediately drive to the nearest specialist garage with appropriate caution.

! WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials, such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or the like.

! CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- As long as the indicator light is lit, the START-STOPfunction is not available.

i Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This supports the correct function of the particulate filter.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

⚠ illuminates - the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

▶ Top up the windscreen washer fluid » page 273.

High-beam assistant

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates - the high beam assistant is activated » page 75, *Light Assist*.

START-STOPsystem

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

The warning lights Ⓐ indicate the status of the START STOP system » page 201.

Display of a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

❄ illuminates - the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! Do not only rely upon the information given on the outside temperature display that there is no ice on the road.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

⚠ illuminates

Message: **Water in fuel filter. Log book!**

▶ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

The warning lights indicate the condition of the ACC system » page 234.

Front Assist

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates – the safe distance to the vehicle in front is below the minimum.

Information on the Front Assist system» page 239.

Front assist

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

⚠ illuminates

▶ Front Assist has recognised the risk of a collision or automatically triggered an emergency braking manoeuvre » page 239.

▶ An automatic deactivation of Front Assist took place with ESC Sport activated » page 211 and with ASR activated» page 211.

▶ Front Assist is not available » page 241.

Illuminates with the lettering OFF ⚠ - Front Assist is deactivated » page 241.

emergency call

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

⚠ lights up – there is a fault in the emergency call system.

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Economy mode

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

eco illuminates - the vehicle is in economy mode due to the intervention of the active cylinder management or due to the neutral position of the automatic gearbox.

Offroad mode

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates – the conditions for the engagement of Offroad mode are met» page 213, *Offroadmode*.

flashes (stronger) – the hill descent assistant is engaged at the moment.

Adaptive chassis (DCC)

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

⚠ illuminates – there is a DCC fault.

▶ It is possible to continue driving with due caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Service

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

illuminates – note regarding a due service appointment » page 57, *Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval.*

Natural gas tank test

Read and observe ! on page 40 first.

lights up - Note on the natural gas tank test

The indicator light will be displayed along with the remaining days until the natural gas tank check.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▶ Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

If the natural gas tank test fails, the natural gas drive is not available in your vehicle.

Information system

Driver information system

Display in the instrument cluster

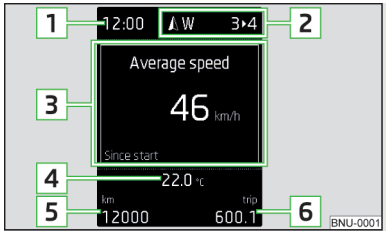

Fig. 39
Display overview

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system uses the display in the instrument cluster to provide the following information » Fig. 39.

1 Time / symbols of the Infotainment voice control

2 Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
Warning lights of the START-STOP system
Compass display
Detected traffic signs

3 Driving data (multifunction display)
Warning lights
Information messages
Door alarm
Eco tips
Service interval display

4 Outside temperature

5 Cruise control / speed limiter
Total distance travelled

6 Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)

Door, luggage compartment and bonnet alarm
When the door or luggage compartment / bonnet is open, a graphic warning appears in the display.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
The counter can be reset by tapping the button A » Fig. 40 *on page 50* or in Infotainment via the menu CAR/ → → → **Instrument cluster** menu.

Setting the time

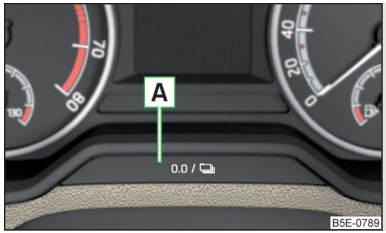

Fig. 40
Button in the instrument cluster

The time can be adjusted in Infotainment via the menu MENU → → **Time and date** or by pressing the button in the instrument cluster.

Set the time using the button in the instrument cluster
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 40until the**time** is shown in the display.
› Release the button A and the system switches to the hour setting function.
› Press the button A again and set the hours.
› Wait 4 seconds, the system switches to the minutes setting.
› Press the button A again and set the minutes.
› Wait 4 seconds, the system switches to the initial setting.

Gear recommendation

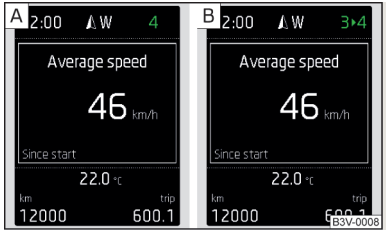

Fig. 41
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

A suitable engaged gear or, where appropriate, a recommended gear is displayed, with the aim of conserving the life of the engine and increasing driving efficiency.

Display » Fig. 41
A Optimal gear engaged
B Gear recommendation (e.g. 3 ▶ 4 means that it is advantageous to switch from 3rd to 4th gear)

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

WARNING
The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

Vehicle condition

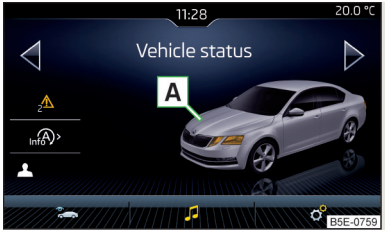

Fig. 42
Vehicle condition

Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. If there is a fault in the system, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster.

While the operational faults remain unrectified, the messages are always indicated again. After the message is displayed for the first time, the warning lights ⚠ (danger) or ⚠ (warning) continue to be displayed.

The vehicle condition can be displayed in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Vehicle status**.

In the screen, information regarding vehicle condition or function of the tyre pressure monitor is displayed.

› Using the function surfaces◁ ▷ select the menu item *Vehicle status*.

Function surfaces and screen display » Fig. 42

A Vehicle representation (the zones of the vehicle are shown in different colours, corresponding to any warning messages that occur. The warning messages are displayed once you touch the “vehicle”)

✓/⚠ No message/warning messages relating to vehicle status and the number (if there is only one message, one warning message text is displayed)

Display information about the status of the START-STOP system

Activation / deactivation of notes relating to START-STOP-System messages in another screen display

Display information on sporty driving in Infotainment

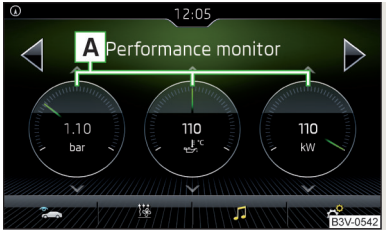

Fig. 43
Infotainment display

The display of data on sporty driving is used to evaluate current motor values.

› To **display** tap in the Infotainment menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Sports**.

› Using the functional surfaces ◁ ▷ the *Information sports* the menu item is chosen.

A swipe of the finger vertically across the screen allows three of the following displays A to be shown » Fig. 43.

- Boost pressure display
- Acceleration display
- Power display
- Coolant temperature gauge
- Oil temperature display

laptimer Show (stopwatch) in the infotainment

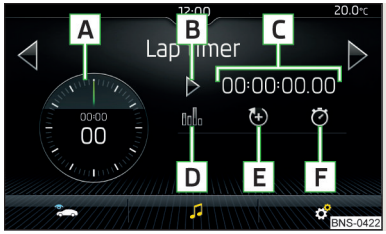

Fig. 44
Infotainment display

› To **display** tap in the Infotainment menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Sports**.

› Using the functional surfaces choose ◁ ▷ the *laptimer* menu item.

Function surfaces and screen display » Fig. 44

A Total time, display of intermediate time for 5 s

B Start/stop the time measurement

C Current lap time

D Statistics - Evaluation / Reset of measured times

E New lap - start measuring the next lap time

F interim

Stop timing

After the termination of the time measurement, the following functional areas for the completion of the measurement are displayed on the screen.

☐ The current lap time is saved

✕ The current lap time is not saved

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the **Lap timer** when you are in any traffic situation where you have full control of the vehicle.

i Note

If the measured times are not reset, then these are stored even after turning off the ignition.

Operation of the information system

Operation using the control lever

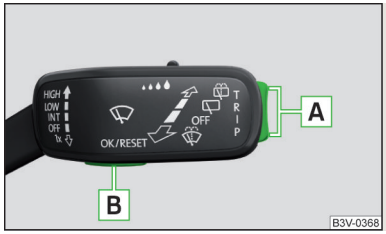

Fig. 45
Buttons on the operating lever

Operating the multifunction display

A **Press** (up or down) - select data / set values
B **Press** - display / confirm data

Operation of the display menus

A **Press** (up or down) - move in the selected menu
Hold (up or down) - display main menu
B **Press** - confirm selected menu item

Operation using the multifunctional steering wheel

Fig. 46 **Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel**

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Switch voice control on/off
A **Turn** - set the volume
Press - sound on/off

▷ Skip to next track/station
◁ Switch to previous track/station
Display the assistance systems menu
VIEW Depending on equipment:
- Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 39
- Show previous menu (if one has been selected) / display *Telephone* menu

Operating the multifunction display

B **Turn** - select data / set values
Press - display / confirm data

Operation of the display menus

Hold - display main menu
Press - return to a higher level in the menu
B **Turn** - move in the selected menu
Press - confirm selected menu item

Driving data (Multifunction display)

Introduction

The driving data display is only possible with the ignition switched on.

The units can be adjusted in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Units**.

The journey data can be set/reset in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Instrument cluster**.

Note

The setting of the information display is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Information Overview

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment).

Range - drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase. With G-TEC vehicles the following details are displayed - total range / with natural gas / petrol.

AdBlue® range - drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing AdBlue® tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase. When the system detects that AdBlue® can be refilled, an indication of the minimum and maximum AdBlue ® refilling quantity appears.

Average fuel consumption - is calculated continuously since the last time the memory was deleted. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 100 m driven. With G-TEC vehicles, the average consumption of fuel currently being used is displayed.

Current fuel consumption - when the vehicle is stationary or slowly moving, the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (--,- km/l appears on models for some countries). With G-TEC vehicles the current consumption of the fuel currently being used is displayed (with regards to a stationary or slow moving vehicle, the natural gas consumption is displayed in kg/h).

Oil temperature - if the temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, the --- symbols are displayed.

Warning when the preset speed is exceeded - allows the setting of a speed limit where, if exceeded, an acoustic warning signal and a warning message appears on the display of the instrument cluster.

Traffic sign recognition - traffic signs display » page 246, *Traffic sign recognition*.

Current speed - digital speedometer.

Average speed - is calculated continuously since the last time the memory was deleted. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Driving route - distance driven since the last time the memory was deleted.

Driving time - driving time since the last time the memory was deleted.

Comfort consumers - information about the total consumption of the comfort consumers in l/h and a list of three consumers (e.g. air conditioning etc.), which have the largest share of fuel consumption.

Refill amount After the consumption of about 10 litres of fuel from the fully refuelled tank, an amount of fuel is displayed in litres. This amount can now be safely refilled.

Natural gas quality The details of the quality of natural gas are displayed as a percentage of between 70% to 100%. The higher the value of natural gas, the lower is the consumption.

Coolant temperature - If the coolant temperature is in the range 70-120 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached. If the temperature is below 70 ° C, high engine speeds and straining the engine should be avoided. If the temperature is over 120 °C, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster » page 46.

Infotainment display

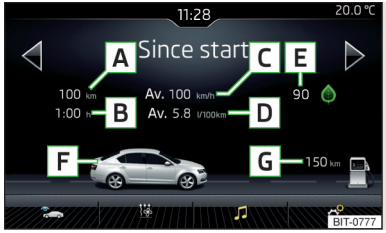

Fig. 47
Journey data

› In Infotainment in the menu CAR / tap on function surface → Tap **Journey data**.

Screen display » Fig. 47

- **A** Distance travelled
- **B** Driving time
- **C** Average speed
- **D** Average fuel consumption
- **E** Transit point rating (**DriveGreen** Function)
- **F** Graphic fuel level display (if the estimated range is less than 300 km, the vehicle starts to approach the symbol)
- **G** Approximate range (for vehicles with CNG drive, the approximate range with petrol and CNG is displayed separately).

Use the function surfaces ◁ ▷ to select one of the following preset lists.

- *Since start* - Driving data for the individual trip
- *Long-term* - Long-term journey data
- *Since refuel* - Data since refuelling

Warning when exceeding the set speed

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Select the menu item **Warning at** and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit is 5 km/h steps.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Select the menu item **Warning at** and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Reset the speed limit

› Select the menu item **Warning at** and confirm.
› By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is reset.

The speed limit set mode is stored even after the ignition is switched off and on. After a gap between driving exceeding 2 hours, the pre-set speed limit is deactivated.

Memory

Fig. 48
Memory display

The system saves the data in the three memories described below which are displayed at the position A » Fig. 48.

Since start

In the memory, driving data is saved for the time between switching on and switching off the ignition. New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Long-term

The memory gathers driving data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 kilometres driven.

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

Since refuel

The driving data is stored in the memory since the last fuel refuelling.

The memory is erased automatically the next time you fill up.

› To **choose the memory bank**, confirm the selected indication again and select the desired memory.
› To **delete the memory bank** of the chosen selection, hold down the button confirming the selection.

The following driving data are stored.

▸ Average fuel consumption
▸ Distance travelled
▸ Average speed
▸ Driving time

Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Menus in the display of the instrument cluster

Introduction

The instrument cluster display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, provides information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc.

The menus with details can be operated and displayed using the buttons on the operating lever or the multifunction steering wheel » page 52.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **Driving data** » page 52
- **Assist systems** » page 55
- **Navigation** » page 55
- **Audio** » page 55
- **Telephone** » page 55;
- **Vehicle** » page 50
- **Lap timer** » page 56

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must first be confirmed to access the main menu.
- The display language can be set in Infotainment » page 134, *Setting the Infotainment language* and » page 141, *Setting the Infotainment language*.

Navigation menu item

The following information is displayed in the **Navigation** menu item.

- Driving recommendations
- Compass
- Last destinations
- Navigation card (applies to the digital instrument cluster)

audio menu item

The following information is displayed in the **Audio** menu item.

Radio
- Currently playing station (name/frequency).
- The selected frequency range (e.g. FM) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. FM3), if the station is stored in the memory list.
- List of available stations (if more than 5 stations can be received).
- TP traffic announcements.

Media
- Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

Telephone menu item

The call list with the following symbols is displayed in the **Telephone** menu item.

Incoming call
Outgoing call
Missed call

Symbols in the display

Telephone battery charge (this function is only supported by some mobile phones)
Signal strength (this function is only supported by some mobile phones)
A telephone connected to the Infotainment system
Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)
Switch-off microphone

Apple CarPlay

An external device connected to the Infotainment system via Apple CarPlay can be operated via the multifunction steering wheel as well as via menus in the instrument cluster display.

The following symbols are displayed in the **Telephone** menu option.

Answer the incoming call
Reject incoming call / end call
Activate / deactivate microphone (applies for the infotainment Swing)

Assist systems menu item

The following systems are activated/deactivated in the **Assist systems** menu item.

- Lane Assist
- ACC (vehicle with speed limiter)
- Cruise control system (vehicle with speed limiter)
- Speed limiter
- Front Assist
- Assist system for blind spot monitoring
- Rear Traffic Alert

menu item Laptimer (Stopwatch)

The Lap timer function offers the possibility of calculating the lap time, for example when driving on a race course. The measured time is shown in the display.

The following functions are available.

- **Start time** - start the timing manually or continue the interrupted measurement
- **Since start** - Start the timer automatically upon start-up
- **Statistics** - Evaluate and reset the measured times

Time measurement

- ▶ To start the measurement manually, choose the menu item **Lap timer** - **start** .
- ▶ To start the measurement automatically, choose the menu item **Lap timer** - **Since Start** . Timing will begin automatically when starting up.
- ▶ To start the measurement of the next lap during time measurement, choose the menu item **new lap**.

During timing, information about the fastest and the last lap time are also shown in the display.

Measure split time

- ▶ During the timing, select the menu item **Split time**. The split time data is displayed for 5 seconds in the display.

Stop measurement

- ▶ During the timing, press the menu item **Stop**.

The time measurement is stopped, the following functions are now available.

- **Continue** - Continue measurement of the current lap time
- **New lap** - Start measurement of the next lap time.
- **Abort lap** - Cancel the timer (the current lap time is not stored)
- **Hang up** - End timing (the current lap time is stored)

Evaluate recorded times

- ▶ Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics**.

The following information is displayed.

- ▶ **Fastest:** - The fastest lap
- ▶ **Slowest:** - The slowest lap
- ▶ **Average:** - The average lap time
- ▶ **Overall time:** - The total of all the lap times

Reset measured times

- ▶ Select the menu item **Lap timer** - **Statistics** - **Reset**.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Only use the **Lap timer** when you are in any traffic situation where you have full control over the vehicle.

i Note

If the measured times are not reset, then these are stored even after turning off the ignition.

Service intervals

Introduction

Compliance with the service intervals is of crucial importance for the service life and value retention of the vehicle. Never exceed the service date.

The specialist garage will inform you about the type of service interval, the option to change it, and the service scope.

The service interval display in the display of the instrument cluster will notify you when a service is due.

Service record

A specialist garage will confirm the corresponding service record in the service information system called Digital Service Plan.

We recommend that you always print out the respective service record.

i Note

The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO warranty terms or other binding agreements.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval

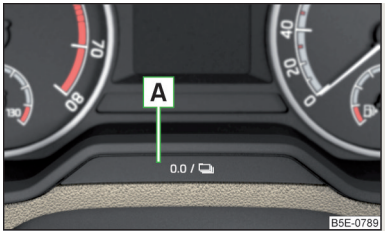

Fig. 49
Button in the instrument cluster

The details regarding the remaining kilometres or days until the next scheduled service can also be displayed in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → **Events** or with the button in the instrument cluster.

Use the key to display

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press and hold the button A » Fig. 49 until the **Service** menu item is shown in the display.
› Release the button A.

In the display, the symbol appears for 4 seconds along with the following message for the kilometres or days to the next service appointment.

Service messages

Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after the ignition is switched on.

Once the service interval **is reached**, the symbol appears in the display after the ignition is switched on, together with the message:

Resetting the service interval display

Have the display reset by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display can cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval

For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Personalization

Introduction

Thanks to the personalisation, more drivers have the opportunity to use a vehicle with individually set system functions by means of a user account which is assigned to the respective vehicle key.

! WARNING

Make all adjustments when the vehicle is stationary - otherwise there is the risk of accident!

Operating principle

Fig. 50
Switch to a different user account

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

After unlocking the vehicle and opening the driver's door, all the personalised functions are adjusted according to the user account that is assigned to the key which was used to unlock the vehicle.

Any change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

As part of the personalisation, three default user accounts as well as a **guest**account are provided.

Switch to a different user account
You can switch to a different user account in the instrument cluster display » Fig. 50 within 10 seconds after turning on the ignition.

An account can be changed at a later time in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Vehicle status** → (if the **Tyre Pressure Monitoring System** is displayed first of all, then use the arrow ◁ or ▷ switch to **Vehicle status**).

If an account is selected in which not all of the points required by the system are set, a configuration wizard can be automatically displayed on the Infotainment screen » page 129.

Electrically adjustable driver's seat (referred to only as seat in the following)
The seated position adjustment is carried out in the following cases.
- After unlocking the vehicle and opening the driver's door (in this case: before the vehicle was locked, an account with a certain seat setting was selected. After vehicle unlocking, an account is activated to which a different seat setting is assigned).
- After switching to a different user account and at a speed less than 5 km/h.

The seat adjustment can be terminated as follows.
- By tapping on the function surface **Cancel** on the Infotainment screen.
- By pressing any key on the seat » page 85.

Note
Vehicles with the personalisation function are provided with three vehicle keys.

Overview of some personalized functions

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

- Setting the electrically adjustable driver's seat.
- Exterior mirror adjustment.
- Driving mode - setting the **individual** mode
- Assistance systems - Lane Assist, parking aid (Park Pilot).
- Light - ambient lighting, convenience turn signal, COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME.
- Climatronic - temperature in each individual area, fan speed, recirculation mode.
- Infotainment settings - brightness level of the screen, keyboard arrangement.
- Radio - sound settings, station sorting.
- Media - shuffle / repeat title, selected video format.
- Voice control - acoustic signals.
- Navigation - home address, alternative routes, recommended route, reminder of the lack of fuel.

Note
The scope of the personalisation functions is dependent on the type of Infotainment package.

Setting the personalization

Read and observe ! on page 57 first.

› In Infotainment in the menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Personalisation**.

The following menu items are displayed.

Personalisation
Active - activate/deactivate the personalisation

Select a user account
A list of user accounts with the option to manage user accounts and to switch to another account.

- > - Account management with the following options:
  - **Rename user account** - rename the user account (not applicable to the **Guest** account)
  - **Copy settings to another account** - copy the settings of an active user account to another user account
  - **Reset user account** - reset the selected user account to factory settings

Adjusting
- **Key assignment:** - options for assigning the vehicle key to the user account:
  - **Manual** - detected vehicle key must be assigned to the active user account manually
  - **Automatic** - detected vehicle key automatically assigned to a different account of the active user account

- **Assign vehicle key to current user account** - manual assignment of the detected vehicle key to the active user account - follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen
- **Reset all** - reset the personalisation and the user accounts to factory settings

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

The vehicle is equipped with a central locking system which makes it possible to unlock / lock **all** the doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid simultaneously.

The door unlocking can be adjusted individually » page 62.

The **unlocking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing twice.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 45 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically.

The **locking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing once.

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons (e.g. children) could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the keyway clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.

unlock / lock with the key on the lock cylinder

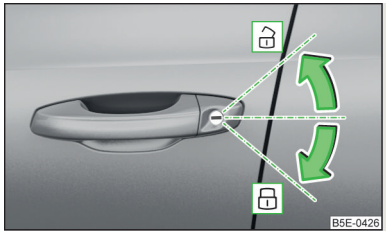

Fig. 51
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 51

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

! CAUTION

If the locking cylinder is provided with a cap » page 294, to unlock / lock the vehicle with key, the cap must be removed beforehand.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

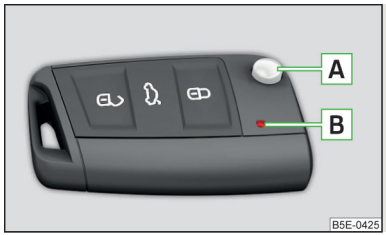

Fig. 52
Key with pop-out key bit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Description of the key » Fig. 52

- Unlock button
- Lock button
- Depending on equipment fitted:
  - Unlock boot lid (by pressing) / unlatch and partially open (by holding) (vehicles with manual valve operation)
  - Open/close/ the boot lid Stop movement of the boot lid (vehicles with electric folding operation)

A Locking button for folding the key bit in/out

B Warning light for the battery charge - if the warning light does not flash when a button on the key is pressed, the battery is discharged.

Unlock/unlatch the boot lid (vehicles fitted with manual folding operation)

By pressing the button, the lid is unlocked.

By holding the button, the lid is unlocked and unlatched (partially open).

If the lid is unlocked or unlatched using the button, then the lid is automatically locked after closing. The period after which the lid is locked can be set » page 65.

! CAUTION

- The remote control may be affected by signal superposition of transmitters that are in the vicinity of the vehicle.
- The range of the remote control key is about 30 m. The battery must be replaced if the central locking only reacts to the remote control at a distance of less than approximately 3 m away » page 293.

Locking / unlocking - KESSY

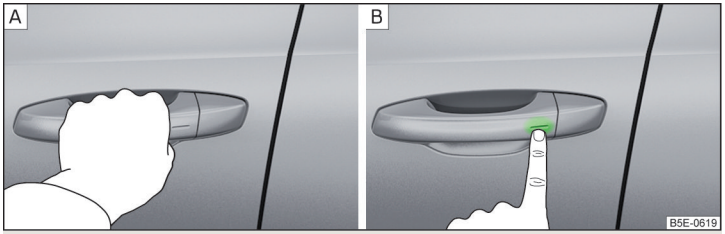

Fig. 53 **Vehicle unlocking / vehicle locking**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

› Grip the door handle to **unlock** the vehicle » Fig. 53 - A.
› Touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger to **lock** » Fig. 53 - B the vehicle.

When unlocking/locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Information on locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

After locking the car, it is not possible to unlock within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed after the vehicle has been locked and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle will be automatically unlocked. After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is automatically unlatched (partially opened). After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. The boot lid **remains unlatched** (partially opened); the other doors remain locked.

! CAUTION
Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device via the sensors in the door handle.

Deactivating KESSY

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

› Lock the vehicle with the button on the key.
› Within 5 s, touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger » Fig. 53 *on page 61* - B. Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.
› **To check the deactivation**, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle. The door must remain locked.

The KESSY system is activated again automatically after the vehicle is unlocked.

Locking/unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button

Fig. 54
Central locking button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Conditions for the locking/unlocking using the central locking button.
✓ The vehicle is not locked from the outside.
✓ All doors are closed.

› To **lock/unlock**, press the Press » Fig. 54

Locking is indicated by illumination of the symbol in the button.

The following applies after locking.
- Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

WARNING

Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

SafeLock

Read and observe and on page 59 first.

SafeLock prevents the doors from behind opened from inside as well as window operation. This makes it more difficult for anyone to break into the vehicle.

Switching on
SafeLock switches on when the vehicle is locked.

This function is enabled after switching off the ignition with the message **Check SAFELOCK! Owner's manual!** in the instrument cluster display.

Switch-on display
With the activated SafeLock, the warning light in the driver´s door flashes for 2 seconds in rapid succession, this then starts to flash at longer intervals.

Switching off
- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- **or:** by deactivating the interior monitor and the towing protection » page 64.

The warning light in the driver´s door flashes fast for about 2 seconds, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

The safelock switches on the next time the vehicle is locked.

WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe and on page 59 first.

The following central locking functions can be set individually in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → → **Opening and closing**.

All doors
The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY allows the unlocking of a single door which is in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Doors on a vehicle side
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY allows the unlocking of both doors which are in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Automatic locking/unlocking
This function enables the locking of all doors and the boot lid from a speed of 15 km/h. Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.

The renewed unlocking of the doors and the boot lid is carried out when the ignition key is removed or when the door is opened from inside (depending on the individual setting for the central locking system).

Note

The individual adjustment of the central locking system is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Opening / closing door

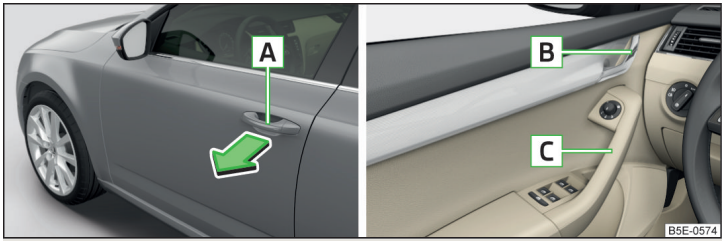

Fig. 55 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

› To **open from outside**, unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 55.
› To **open from inside**, pull on the door opening lever B and push the door away from you.
› To **close from inside**, grip the handle C and close the door.

! WARNING

- The door must be closed properly, otherwise it could open whilst driving - risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when no one is located in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - it can be fatal!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

Child safety lock

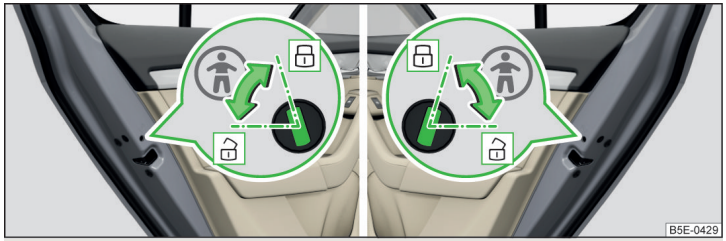

Fig. 56 **Rear door: Child safety system switch on / off**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching on and off

› To **switch on**, turn the parental control with the vehicle key in position » Fig. 56.
› To **switch off**, turn the parental control with the vehicle key in position.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 59 first.

Synchronising the remote control

If the buttons on the remote control key have been operated several times beyond the effective range of the system or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced and the vehicle cannot be unlocked using the remote control, the key must be synchronised.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Fault with the central locking

If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then illuminates for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

A fault in the central locking system means the vehicle doors and the boot lid cannot be emergency locked or emergency unlocked» page 294.

Failure of the system KESSY
If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the appropriate error message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Low voltage of the key battery
If the voltage of the key battery is too low, a message appears in the display of the instrument cluster referring to the need to replace the battery. Replace the battery » page 293.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note
The alarm system has its own power source, the service life of which is 5 years. In order to ensure functionality of the alarm system, we recommend that you get the alarm checked after this time by a specialist garage.

Alarm trigger

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The alarm is triggered when one of the following unauthorised actions is activated on the vehicle with an activated warning system.
- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Movement in the vehicle.
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer.

An alarm is triggered also when the driver's door is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder.

The alarm is switched off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 64 first.

The **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

The **anti-towing** detects tilts in the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

These functions should be deactivated if there is a possibility that the alarm will be triggered by movements (e.g. by people or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Disable both functions once
- In the infotainment system, in menu CAR / → → → **Open and close**,
- By locking twice within 2 seconds.

Safelock is switched off during deactivation » page 62.

CAUTION
The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Manually operated tailgate

Introduction

WARNING

- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the boot lid, it could crack – risk of injury!

Open/close boot lid

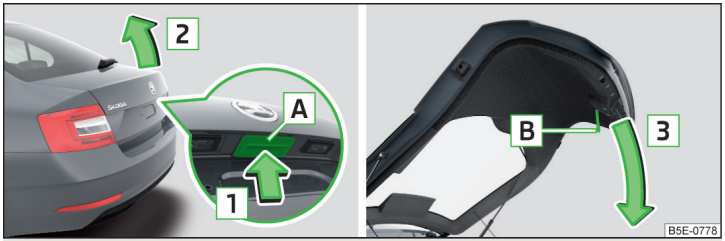

Fig. 57 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

› To **open**, press the A button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 57.
› Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow 2.
› To **close**, grab the mount B and pull in the direction of arrow 3.

Note

Button A » Fig. 57 is deactivated when starting or at a speed of more than 5 km/h. The button is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Setting the delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically.

Electric boot lid

Introduction

The boot lid (hereinafter as lid) can be operated electrically and manual in the event of an emergency » page 67.

WARNING

- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open while the vehicle is moving - risk of accident.
- Never drive with the lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Only open and close the lid when no one is located in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- Make sure that no limbs are caught or crushed when closing the lid - risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Do not attempt to close the lid manually during electrical motion - there is a risk of damaging the electric lid operation.
- Lock the vehicle before driving through a car wash (or with the central locking button). In some car washes the boot lid might open automatically due to the pressure action of the washing brushes - there is a risk of damage to the vehicle interior, as well as to the objects being transported.

CAUTION

- Before opening / closing the flap, check that there are no objects in the opening / closing area that could damage the flap, and if there are any objects in the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the objects being transported.
- In certain circumstances, if the lid is loaded (e.g. by a thick layer of snow), the opening process of the lid can be interrupted. Remove the snow from the lid to re-enable the electrical operation.
- If the lid closes automatically (e.g. under load of snow), you will hear an intermittent beep.
- The flap is always to be close before disconnecting the battery.

Description of operation

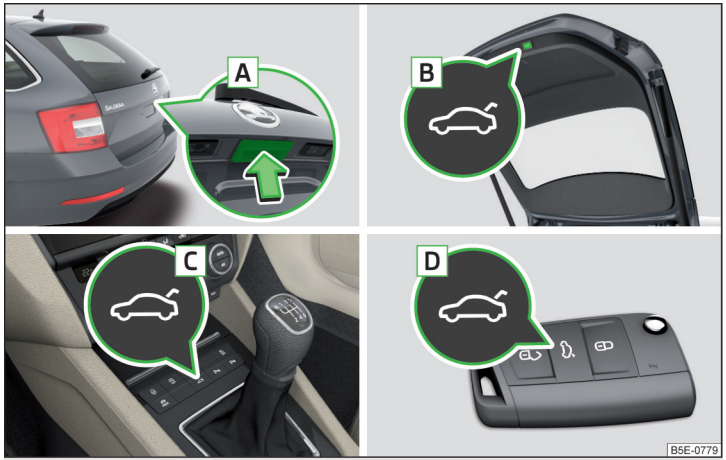

Fig. 58 **Lid operation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 65 first.

Ways to open the lid

- By pressing the handle A » Fig. 58.
- By holding the button C.
- By holding the button D on the key.

Ways to close the lid

- By pressing the button B » Fig. 58.
- By pressing the handle A.

Ways to stop the lid movement

- By pressing the button B » Fig. 58.
- By pressing the button C.
- By holding the button D on the key.
- By pressing the handle A.

Audible signals

An acoustic signal is sounded when opening/closing the lid by means of the button C or D.

Note

If you rapidly enter the vehicle during the opening or closing process of the lid, the whole vehicle may jerk and, as a result, the movement of the lid can be interrupted.

Set the top position of the lid

Read and observe ! and ! on page 65 first.

The top position of the lid can be adjusted (e.g. in a limited space to open the lid due to the garage height or for a more comfortable operation, depending on the height of the person).

Adjusting the top position of the lid

› Stop the lid in the desired position.
› Press and hold button B » Fig. 58 *on page 66* until you hear an acoustic signal.

Adjusting the top starting position of the lid

› Carefully raise the flap manually to the limit.
› Press and hold button B » Fig. 58 *on page 66* until you hear an acoustic signal.

Note

The top position which is reached when the lid opens automatically, is always lower than the maximum top position which can be reached when the lid is opened manually.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 65 first.

Examples of operational malfunctions

Description of the malfunction	Possible solutions
The lid cannot be opened	Unlocking the lid » page 294
The lid does not react to an opening signal	Removing a possible obstacle (e.g. snow), re-opening the lid » page 66 Press handle A » Fig. 58 *on page 66* and pull the lid upwards
The lid remains in the top position	Manual closing of the lid
The lid is open and the battery was disconnected	

Close manually
Close the door slowly, push down the lid, push in the lock on the centre of the edge, above the ŠKODA logo.

Operating contactless boot lid

Fig. 59
Opening the boot lid

Read and observe ! and ! on page 65 first.

Depending on equipment the boot lid can be operated without contact.

The ignition must be switched off and you have to have the vehicle key on your person.

› To **open/close**, move one foot in the sensor area below the rear bumper quickly in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 59.

The flap opens / closes automatically. When opening the fully closed flap, the brake light in the rear window lights up. An acoustic signal is sounded when closing the lid.

If the lid does not move, then repeat the operating process after a few seconds.

The lid movement can be stopped by a rapid swinging of the foot. Swinging the foot again will continue the lid movement.

The function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → **Opening and closing** → **"Easy Open"**.

We recommend that the function is deactivated in the following cases:
- Installation of a roof rack.
- Connecting a trailer (accessory) to the towbar.
- Manual vehicle wash.
- Maintenance and repair work in the back of the vehicle.

When connecting a device to the trailer socket the deactivation of the function takes place.

Note
With heavy rain or a dirty rear bumper, under certain circumstances that there may be limitations, or the automatic deactivation of the contactless opening function of the boot lid may occur.

Window operation

Introduction

WARNING
- Always close the window carefully and controlled. Otherwise, you may cause considerable crushing injuries to yourself or fellow passengers.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 69. If there is an obstacle (e.g. If a body part gets trapped), the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean (free of ice and similar) to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the electric windows before disconnecting the battery.

Note

If the windows are opened, dust and other dirt can get into the vehicle and the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical windows

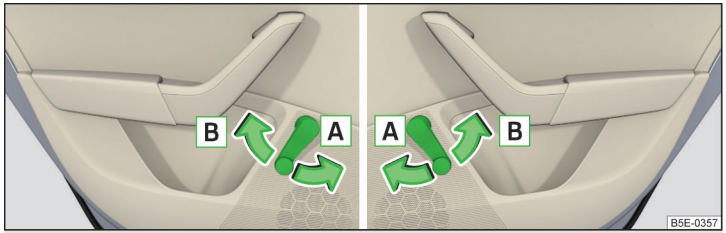

Fig. 60 **Window Operation: Left/right**

Read and observe and on page 67 first.

› To **open**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 60.
› To **close**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow B.

Electric Windows

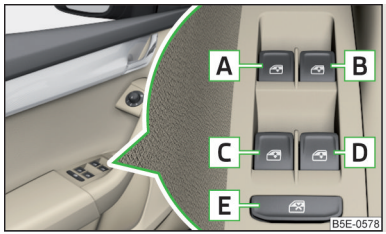

Fig. 61
Electric window buttons

Read and observe and on page 67 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat. The window in the front passenger door and the windows in the rear doors are operated via the button in each door.

Power window buttons » Fig. 61

A Left front door
B Right front door
C Left rear door
D Right rear door:
E Deactivate/activate the buttons in the rear doors (the deactivation may be advantageous if, for example, children are transported on the rear seats)

Opening/closing window

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** Press the button to the stop; the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
› To **close**, pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** Pull the button briefly to the stop, the window automatically closes fully. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.

Disable / enable buttons in the rear doors

› To **deactivate/activate** the buttons in the rear doors, press the E button. If the buttons are deactivated, the warning light illuminates in the E button.

Note

- After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes.
- After the driver or front passenger door is opened, the operation of the window is only possible with the button A » Fig. 61, in which case this is pressed or pulled for approx. 2 seconds.

Opening/closing the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors

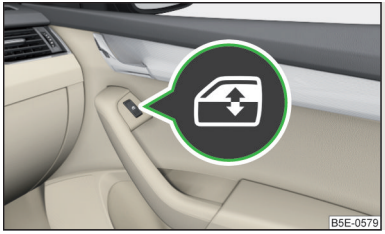

Fig. 62
Power window button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

- To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button **underneath** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
- **or:** Press the button briefly **at the bottom**; the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
- To **close**, push the corresponding button **above** briefly and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.
- **or:** Press the button briefly **at the top**; the window automatically closes fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

The convenience operation for the window offers the option to open/close all the windows at once (or only the window in the driver's door). The convenience operation function can be adjusted individually in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Opening and closing.**

Opening

- Press and hold the button on the key.
- **or:** Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the open position » Fig. 61 *on page 68*.
- **or:** Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the unlock position until all electrically operated windows are open.

Closing

- Press and hold the button on the key.
- **or:** Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the closed position » Fig. 61 *on page 68*.
- **or:** Keep the key in the locking cylinder of the driver's door in the lock position until all the electrically operated windows are closed.
- In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 53 *on page 61*.

The convenience operation will only function correctly if all the windows automatically open/close properly.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's door locking cylinder is only possible within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the respective button is released.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 67 first.

Repeatedly opening and closing the window can cause the window mechanism to overheat and become temporarily blocked. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the operating mechanisms has cooled down.

After disconnecting the vehicle battery, automatic opening / closing of the window can be deactivated. In this case, the system must be **activated** as follows.

Window in the driver door

› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Windows in the other doors

› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the respective key **above** and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button **above** and hold for 1 second.

Panoramic tilt / slide sunroof

Introduction

The panorama sliding/tilting roof (hereinafter referred to as sliding/tilting roof) can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is no lower than -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. After opening the driver or front passenger door, it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

! WARNING

When operating the sliding/tilting roof and the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- During the winter, remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

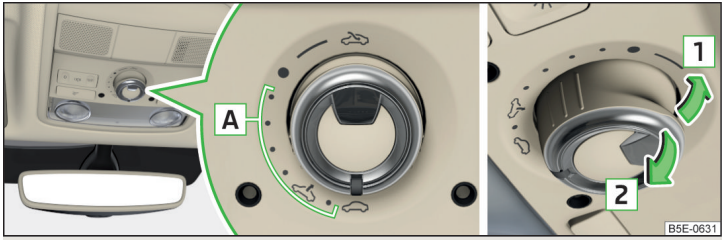

Fig. 63 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 70 first.

Operation of the sliding/tilting roof » Fig. 63

- Fully opening
- ● Open to the low-noise position
- A Open partially
- Complete closing
- 1 Opening (switch in position)
- 2 Resetting (switch in position)

After turning the switch one stop to position (spring-tensioned position), the tilt / slide sunroof stops in the position in which the intensity of the wind noise is low. After turning the switch further to position , the tilt / slide sunroof opens up to the stop.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 70 first.

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

WARNING

If the tilting / sliding sunroof is closed, by pulling on the recess of the switch in the direction of arrow 2, » Fig. 63 *on page 70* and the closing process is hindered by an obstacle, then at the third attempt at closing, the force limitation will cease to function (if less than 5 s passes between the individual attempts to close). The sliding/tilting roof closes with full force - it may cause injury.

Convenience operation of the sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe ! and ! on page 70 first.

The convenience operation makes it possible to open or close the sliding/tilting roof using the key or the KESSY system via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

› To **open out**, press and hold the button on the key.
› **or:** Hold the key in the unlock position in the driver's door lock.
› To **close**, press and hold the button (with KESSY, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door).
› **or:** Hold the key in the lock position in the driver's door lock.

By interrupting the locking process, the closing operation is interrupted.

Activate operation of the sliding/tilting roof

Read and observe ! and ! on page 70 first.

If the operation of the sliding/tilting roof is deactivated (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then operation will have to be activated.

› Turn on the ignition and set the switch to position » Fig. 63 *on page 70*.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.

The sliding/tilting roof opens/closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the lever.

Manually operated sunblind

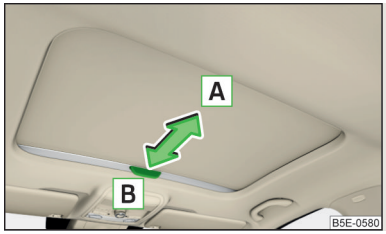

Fig. 64
Operation of the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 70 first.

› To **open**, pull the handle in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 64.
› To **close**, pull the handle in the direction of arrow B.

Electrically operated sunblind

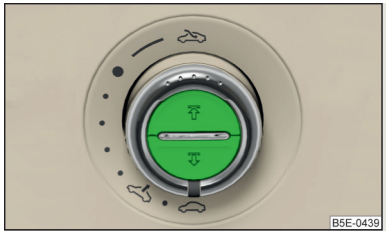

Fig. 65
Button for operating the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 70 first.

Operation of the sunblind » Fig. 65

Open - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)
Close - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)

The sunshade can also be operated by pressing and holding the appropriate button (starts movement of the sunshade) and releasing it when the sunshade reaches the desired position.

Activating operation of the sunshade

Read and observe ! and ! on page 70 first.

If the operation of sunshade is deactivated (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then the operation will have to be activated.

› Turn on the ignition and set the switch to position » Fig. 65 *on page 71*.
› Press the button and hold down.

The sunshade opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the button.

Lights and visibility

Light

Introduction

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

For the basic position of the light switch, use position **AUTO**.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the light is switched on, the light-emitting surface demists after a short period of time.

Operating the lights

Fig. 66
Light switch

To **switch on/off** the lights, turn the A » Fig. 66 switch to one of the following positions (equipment-dependent).

0 Switch off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Switching the light on/off automatically » page 74

Switching on the parking lights or parking lights on both sides » page 76

Switch on the low beam

Headlight range control of the Halogen headlights

The headlight range can be set in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → → **Light**.

The range of the halogen headlights can be set on the screen, in accordance with the vehicle load, to the following basic settings.

0 Front seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot empty

4 All seats occupied, boot loaded
6 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

In the event of another vehicle loading condition, the setting for positions 1. 3. 5 can be used.

The LEDFront headlights s automatically adjust to vehicle loading and driving conditions, so they do not have manual headlight range control.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight range control to comply with the following conditions and prevent accidents.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- If, with a dipped beam, the ignition is turned off, then the dipped beam will automatically switch off and the parking lights will come on. Does not apply to the position AUTO, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function . The parking lights are switched off when the ignition key is removed (for vehicles with the KESSY system, after opening the driver's door).
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daytime running lights

The daytime running light (hereinafter referred to as "function") lights the front and rear vehicle area (only valid for some countries).

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The function is activated.

Deactivating/activating

The function can be deactivated/activated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → Light.

WARNING

Always switch on the low beam when visibility is poor.

Note

The light can operate automatically under certain circumstances, even if the light switch is in position .

Note

The setting (activation/deactivation) of the daytime running lights is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account for personalisation » page 57.

Turn signal and main beam

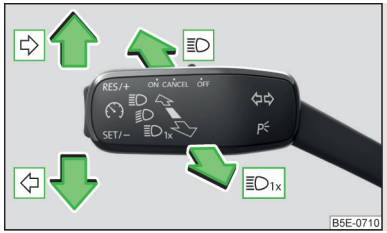

Fig. 67
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Control stalk positions » Fig. 67

⇨ Switch on the right turn signal
⇦ Switch on the left turn signal
≡D Switch on main beam (spring-tensioned position)
≡D1x Switch on main beam or headlight flasher (spring-loaded position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be used even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal** switches off automatically depending on the steering angle after turning.

Use the control stalk to switch on/off the **headlight assistant** » page 75.

Comfort flashing

When the control talk is pressed slightly up or down, the respective turn signal indicates three times.

If during comfort signalling the operating lever is pressed in the opposite direction, the indicating will stop.

Convenience signalling can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Light/**

WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Note

The setting (activation/deactivation) of the convenience turn signal is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Automatic driving light control

Fig. 68
Light switch: Position AUTO

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 68, then the lights are automatically switched on/off to suit current light or weather conditions (rain), depending on the equipment.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering AUTO illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol also illuminates next to the light switch.

Automatic driving light control in the rain (referred to as function in the following)

The dipped beam is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The function is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 30 s.

The light turns off automatically about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

Setting, activation/deactivation

The following functions can be set or activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → **Light**.

- Sensitivity adjustment of the sensor for determining the lighting conditions for automatic driving light control
- Automatic driving light control during rain

WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control (position **AUTO**) only acts as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the light and, if necessary, to switch on the lights depending on the prevailing light conditions.

CAUTION

Poorer visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.

Note

The setting (activate/deactivate) of the automatic driving light control during rain is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

LED headlights

The LED headlights (hereinafter referred to as just system) use the journey data to automatically ensure the best possible light cone in front of the vehicle.

The system operates automatically in the following modes: urban, remote, motorway and bad weather.

A component of the system is the static side light. This light is used in some light modes, e.g. for bend illumination during reversing.

The system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO**.

WARNING

If there is a system malfunction the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Light Assist

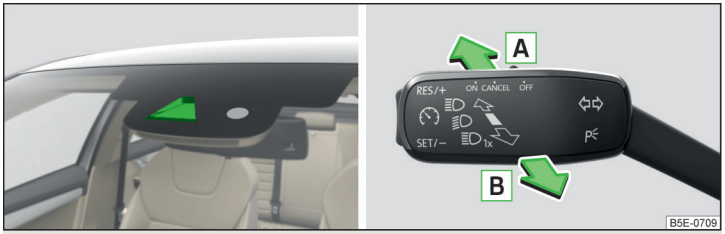

Fig. 69 **Installation location of the sensor / system on/off**

The system automatically switches the high beam on/off in accordance with the existing traffic (other vehicles) and environmental conditions (e.g. driving through a lit village).

The high beam on/off is controlled by a sensor or a camera » Fig. 69.

The system can be **activated/deactivated** in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Light** → **Light Assist**.

Conditions for the system function

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The vehicle speed is over 60 km/h or for some countries more than 40 km/h.
✓ The windscreen is clean in the sensor area.

Switch on the system

› Push the lever into the sprung position A » Fig. 69 The following indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster display.

Switch off the system

› If the high beam **is** switched on automatically, move the lever into the sprung position B. The warning light goes out. The high beam turns off.
› If the high beam is **is not** switched on automatically, move the lever into the sprung position A. The warning light goes out. The high beam turns on.

The high beam switches off automatically when the speed falls below 30 km/h (but the system remains switched on).

If there is a **fault**, the error message will appear in the instrument cluster display. Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

The system is used only for support, thus the driver is not released from his obligation to manually adjust the main or low beam according to the given ambient conditions (e.g. in unfavourable lighting and weather conditions, as when passing poorly lit road users, if necessary, when the area in front of the sensor is covered by an obstacle).

CAUTION

Do not cover the sensor and keep the front screen clean - system functionality can be impaired.

Note

The setting for the high-beam assistant in Infotainment is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account for personalisation » page 57.

Fog lights/rear fog light

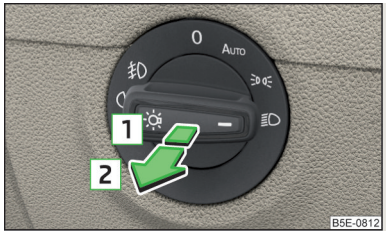

Fig. 70
Light switch – switch on front and rear fog lights

Switching on the fog lights/rear fog lights is possible under the following conditions.

✓ The lights switch is in position **AUTO**, or » Fig. 70.

› To **switch on** the **front fog lights**, pull the light switch to position 1; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.
› To **switch on** the **rear fog lights**, pull the light switch to position 2; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is not equipped with **front fog lights**, the **rear fog lights** can be switched on by pulling the light switch to the only possible setting.

Switch off the fog lights/rear fog lights in reverse order.

Note

If an accessory is connected to the trailer socket, the rear fog lamp does not light up on the vehicle.

function CORNER

The CORNER function automatically switches on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle (e.g. when cornering or steering), if the following conditions are fulfilled.

- ✓ The turn signal is turned on or the front wheels are severely locked (in the event of conflict between the two versions, has turn signal has the higher priority).
- ✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The two functions can be used in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Light (activated/deactivated and adjusted)**.

CAUTION

- Really poor visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not cover the sensor - the system can be affected.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

Note

The setting of the two functions is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Hazard warning light system

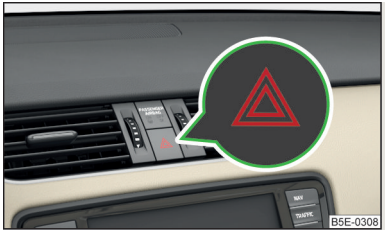

Fig. 71
Button for hazard warning light system

› To **switch on/off**, press the ⚠ button » Fig. 71.

When switching on, all the turn signal lights as well as the warning light ⚠ in the button flash simultaneously with the control lights ⬅ ➡ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

The automatic activation of hazard warning lights can take place during a heavy braking. After starting or accelerating the hazard warning system is automatically switched off.

When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking light

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light on one side

› Switch off the ignition.
› Press the control lever all the way into position ⇨ or ⇦ until it stops » Fig. 67 *on page 73*.

The parking lights on the respective side of the vehicle are turned on.

Switching on the side light on both sides

› Turn the ignition on and turn the light switch to position » page 72.

› Switch off the ignition and lock the car.

After removing the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds, or after closing the driver's door, the acoustic warning signal stops.

CAUTION

- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking lights may switch off automatically due to a low battery charge.

If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, the parking lights will not switch on automatically.

Entry space lighting

The lighting is positioned on the lower edge of the exterior mirror and illuminates the entry area of the front door.

The lighting **switches on** after unlocking or opening the vehicle door (depending on the lighting conditions).

The lighting **switches off** after around 30 seconds after closing the front door or switching on the ignition.

Driving abroad

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic.

Therefore, the LEDFront headlight setting must be adapted by turning on **travel mode** in infotainment in the CAR/ → → **Light** menu. In this mode, there is no automatic adjustment of the light beam in front of the vehicle.

Interior lighting

Introduction

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off. With the ignition off (or after a door is opened),the lights will automatically switch off after approximately 10 minutes.

Front interior lights

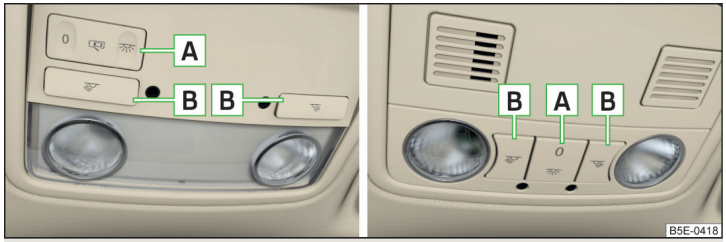

Fig. 72 **Operation of the front light: Version 1/version 2**

Positions of the rocker switch A . » Fig. 72

- Switching on
- Automatic operation (centre position)
- 0 Switching off

There is no icon available for the centre position (automatic operation) in version 2.

Switching on / off (by pressing the relevant switch B) » Fig. 72

- Reading light left
- Reading light right

Automatic operation - position
The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors is opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.

- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Interior light, rear

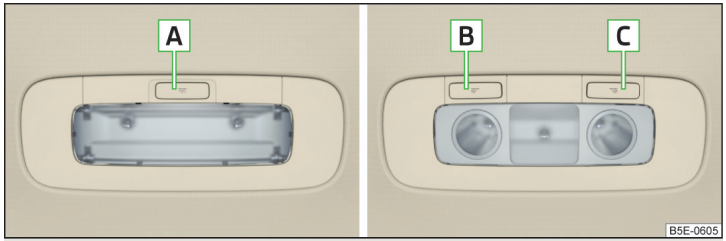

Fig. 73 **Interior lights at the rear: Version 1/version 2**

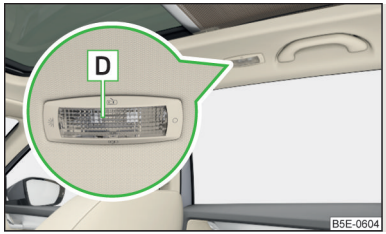

Fig. 74
Interior lights at the rear: Variant 3

The rear light (variant 1 and 2) is switched on/off automatically together with the front light. When the front interior lighting is switched off, the rear interior lighting can be turned on/off as required.

Version 1 and 2 (by pressing the switch) » Fig. 73

- **A** Switches the rear interior light on/off
- **B** Switches the left rear reading lamp on/off
- **C** Switches the right rear reading lamp on/off

Version 3 - (by moving the spreader disc D) » Fig. 74

- Switches the rear interior light on
- Automatic operation (the light is switched on/off automatically together with the front light)
- 0 Switches the rear interior light off

Ambient lighting

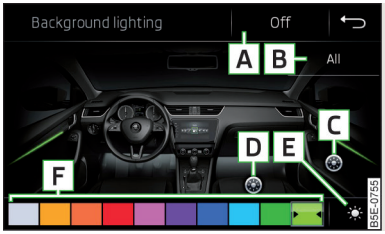

Fig. 75
Setting the ambient lighting

The ambient lighting illuminates the side door trim panels in colour, and the footwell in white.

The **switching on** of the lighting takes place automatically after opening the door, **switching off** occurs automatically after the locking of the vehicle or 30 seconds after the closing of the door with the ignition switched off.

The ambient lighting can be adjusted in Infotainment in the menu CAR / → → **Background lighting**.

Description of the function surfaces » Fig. 75

- **A** Enable / disable the background lighting
- **B** Activating of the brightness setting for all areas at the same time
- **C** Activating the brightness controls for the door area
- **D** Activating the brightness setting for the footwell area
- **E** Choice of colour options/brightness adjustment
- **F** Function surfaces for selecting lighting colour / brightness adjustment

To display **B**, **C**, and **D**, tap the function surface ☀.

Vehicles by selecting the driving mode
For vehicles with driving mode selection » page 241 The lighting can be switched on automatically or manually **A** » Fig. 75. A change in the illumination colour occurs automatically due to the driving mode change or manually by selecting one of the colour options. In individual mode, the last manually selected colour is displayed.

Note
The adjustment of the ambient lighting is stored (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Visibility

Introduction

WARNING

No objects should be attached to the sun visors, which could limit the view or endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or should the vehicle collide.

Windscreen and rear window heater

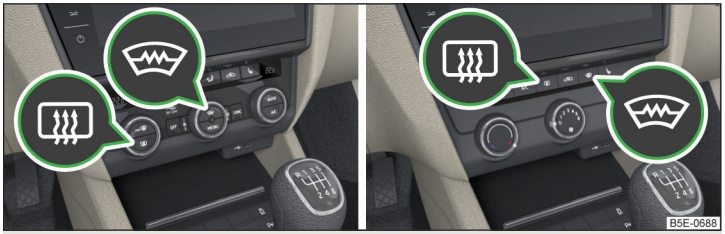

Fig. 76 **Buttons for the front and rear window heater: Climatronic / manual air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

The heating aids defrosting and ventilation of the windscreen/rear window.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

Buttons for the heating (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 76

- Switching the windscreen heater on/off
- Switch on/off the rear window heater

When the heating is switched on, a light illuminates inside or below the button.

The heating automatically switches off after ten minutes.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Note

- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 276, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.
- If the lighting inside or below the button flashes, the heater will not work because of the low charge of the battery.
- If the Climatronic recognises that the windshield could fog up, the windshield heating is automatically switched on. This function can be activated/deactivated on the Climatronic control panel in the menu MENU → ⚙.

Front sun visors

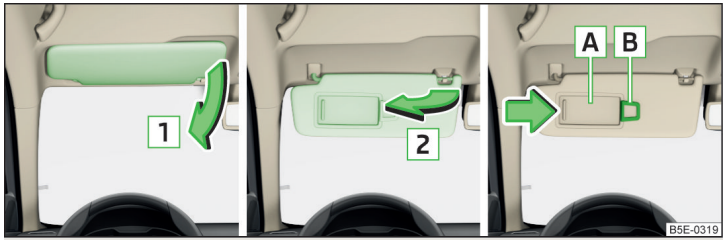

Fig. 77 **Fold down visor / flip up visor / make-up mirror and Park Memo Holder**

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 77

- 1 Swivel the visor towards the windscreen
- 2 Swivel cover towards the door
- A Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)
- B Parking ticket holder

Sunshade

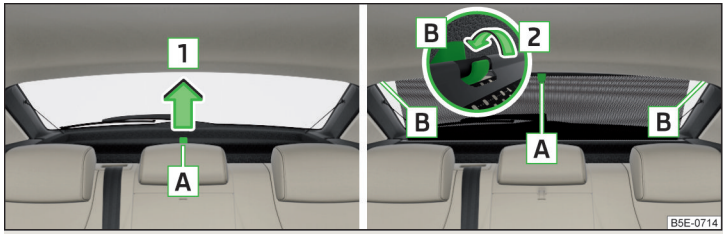

Fig. 78 **Sun screen**

Read and observe ! on page 79 first.

The sun screen is located in a housing on the luggage compartment cover.

› To **roll down**, pull the sunshade by the handle A in direction of arrow 1 and suspend in the magnetic holder B in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 78.
› To **roll up**, pull the sunshade by the handle A out of the holder B against the direction of arrow 2. Hold the sunshade so that this can slowly roll back in without damaging.

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

The windscreen wipers and the wash system operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot are closed.

! WARNING

Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

! CAUTION

- If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. The wipers must be set to the service position to raise them off the windscreen » page 295.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor.
- Carefully release the frozen-on windscreen wiper blades from the windscreen and remove snow and ice.
- Handle the windscreen wipers with care - there is the risk of damaging the windscreen with the windscreen wiper arms.
- Do not switch on the ignition when the front windscreen wiper arms are folded down - there is the danger of damaging the bonnet by the windscreen wiper arms.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wipers will try to push away the obstacle five times. Thereafter, the wipers will stop to prevent them becoming damaged. Turn on the wipers again only after the obstacle has been removed.

i Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper blades.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than +10 °C.

Front wipers and washers

Fig. 79
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system at the front

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

HIGH Fast disk wiping

LOW Slow disk wiping

INT Depending on equipment fitted:
- Intermittent wipe of the windscreen
- Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain

OFF Wipers and washers off

1x Single windscreen wipe (sprung position)

A Setting of windscreen wiper interval for the position INT - by setting the switch in the direction of the arrow, the windscreen wipers will wipe more often

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position)

Spraying and wiping the windscreen
After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 2 to 3 wiper strokes.

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain can be used in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Mirrors and wipers (activated/deactivated)**.

! WARNING

The automatic wiping in the rain function merely serves to help you. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

i Note

- If the wiping is carried out without interruption, the wiping speed varies depending on the vehicle speed.
- The setting (activation/deactivation) of the automatic windscreen wiping in the rain is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Rear window wipers and washers

Fig. 80
Operating the windscreen wipers and washing system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position) - after releasing the control stalk, the wipers perform another 2 to 3 wiper strokes

Windscreen wiping

OFF Wipers and washers off

Automatic rear wiper
If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

This function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Mirrors and wipers** (activated/deactivated).

i Note

- The rear window is wiped automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.
- The setting (activation/deactivation) of the automatic rear window wiping in the rain is stored (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

Headlights are cleaned under the following conditions.

✓ The low beam is switched on.

✓ The outside temperature is about -12° C to +39° C.

To clean the headlights, the headlamp is also sprayed after spraying the windscreen every first and tenth time. Setting the spray interval can be carried out by a specialist garage.

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice (e.g. using the de-icing spray).

Rear view mirror

Introduction

! WARNING

Exterior mirrors increase the field of view, however, make objects appear smaller and further away. Therefore, use the rear-view mirror to determine the distances to the following vehicles.

! WARNING

- The mirrors with automatic dimming contain electrolyte fluid which may leak if the mirror glass is broken - this can irritate skin, eyes and the respiratory system.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Seek medical assistance if required.

Interior mirror dimming

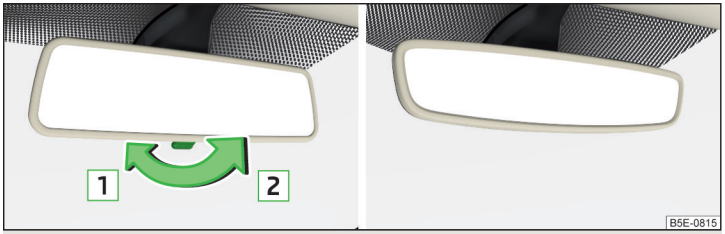

Fig. 81 **Interior rear-view mirror: with manual dimming/auto-darkening**

Read and observe ! on page 82 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 81

1 Basic position of the mirror (not dimmed)

2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming

The mirror dimming » Fig. 81 is automatically controlled after the engine start.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

! WARNING

- Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) not in the vicinity of the **mirror with automatic dimming**. The illuminated display of an external device can affect the function of the rear-view mirror - it could cause an accident.
- The automatic dimming mirror only functions smoothly if the light falling on the sensors is not compromised (e.g. by the sunshade at the back). The sensors are located on the front and back of the mirror.

Exterior mirrors

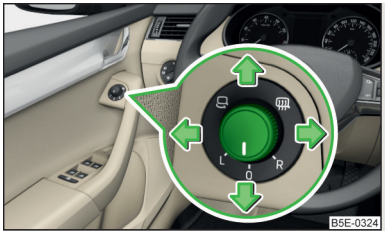

Fig. 82
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 82 first.

The exterior mirrors can (depending on vehicle equipment) have a manual or electric fold-in function, automatic dimming and memory function.

The rotary knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment)

L Adjusting the left-hand mirror area
0 Switch off mirror control
R Adjusting the right-hand mirror area
Mirror heating (only works when the engine is running)
Folding in the mirrors electrically (to fold back, move the rotary knob to another position) » !

Setting the mirror area

› Move the rotary knob in the direction of arrows » Fig. 82.

If the mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted manually by pressing on the edge of the mirror area.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously

This function allows the simultaneous adjustment of the two mirror areas. The function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Mirrors and wipers** (activated/deactivated).

› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror areas to the desired position.

Manual folding mirrors

The mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. To put it back to its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

Automatic folding in/back of both mirrors

The exterior mirrors are automatically collapsed after locking the vehicle in the park position. After unlocking the vehicle, the mirrors are folded back to the driving position » !.

This function can be activated/deactivated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Mirrors and wipers** (activated/deactivated).

Mirror with automatic dimming

The exterior mirror dimming is controlled together with the automatic rear-view mirror dimming » page 82.

Memory function for mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)

It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position with » page 85, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 86, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Tilting the mirror area of the front passenger mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)

The front passenger mirror area can be tilted to the stored position to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

Operating conditions

✓ The function can be activated in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ → → → **Mirrors and wipers**.
✓ The setting for the mirror area has been previously stored » page 85, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat* or » page 86, *Memory function of the remote control key*.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.

The mirror area returns to its initial position after the rotary knob is set to another position or if the speed is greater than 15 km/h.

WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

CAUTION

- Never manually fold in/out the electrically folding exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage to the mirror!
- When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Note

The setting of the mirror functions is stored in Infotainment (depending on the Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.

Manual adjustment

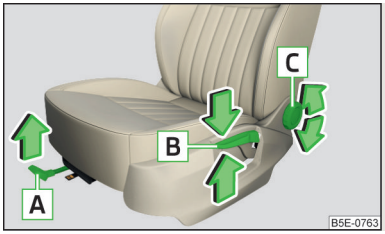

Fig. 83
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

A Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing the control lever must lock audibly)

B Adjusting height of seat[1)]

C Adjust the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

Electrical adjustment

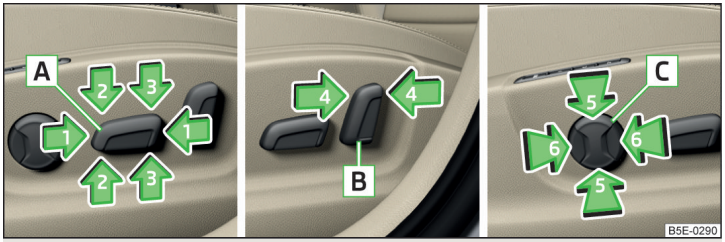

Fig. 84 **Control elements on the seat**

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

A Seat adjustment
- **1** - Move in the longitudinal direction
- **2** - Change in inclination
- **3** - Change in height

B Adjusting the seat backrest
- **4** - Change in inclination

C Adjusting lumbar support
- **5** - Change curvature
- **6** - The degree of curvature change

! WARNING

The electric front seat adjustment is functional even with the ignition off. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a danger of injury!

i Note

▪ If the inclination angle of the seat backrest relative to the seat surface is greater than approx. 110°, then it is not possible for safety reasons to save this setting in the memory of the electrically adjustable seats or the remote control key.

▪ On vehicles with personalisation, the driver's seat setting is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

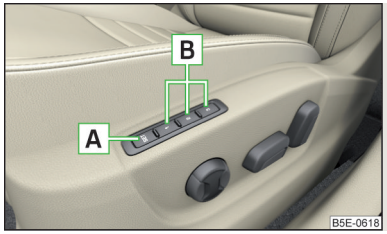

Fig. 85
SET button and memory buttons

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Among the memory buttons B on the driver's seat, a setting for the driver´s seat and exterior mirror position can be saved » Fig. 85.

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for the forwards drive

› Switch on the ignition, adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors, as required.
› Press the SET A » Fig. 85 button and then, within 10 seconds, press the desired memory button B. Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing

The function for lowering the front passenger's mirror area during reversing can be activated in Infotainment in the menu CAR → → → **Mirrors and wipers**.

› Turn on the ignition and press the desired memory button B » Fig. 85.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 83.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting

› With the ignition off and the driver's door open-press- the desired memory button **B**.
› In other cases (e.g. if the ignition is switched on or the driver's door closed), **hold** the button.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note

Every time you save new seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forwards, you must also save the front passenger mirror setting for reversing again.

Memory function of the remote control key

Applies to vehicles that do not have the personalisation function.

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

Every time the vehicle is locked, the driver´s seat and exterior mirror settings are saved and assigned to the key with which the vehicle was locked.

After the following unlocking of the vehicle with the same key and opening the driver's door, the driver´s seat and exterior mirrors that are saved to this key will be adopted.

This function can be used in Infotainment in the menu CAR → → → **Seats activated/deactivated**.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing

The function for lowering the front passenger's mirror area during reversing can be activated in Infotainment in the menu CAR → → → **Mirrors and wipers**.

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key and switch on the ignition.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 83.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment

› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Folding front passenger seat

Fig. 86
Folding the front passenger seat forward

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

The front passenger seat can, (depending on vehicle equipment fitted), be folded forward into a horizontal position.

› To **fold down**, pull the lever in direction of arrow 1, fold the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 86. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› To **fold up**, pull the lever in direction of arrow 1, fold back the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 2. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› Check this by pulling on the seat and on the seat backrest.

WARNING

- If the seat backrest is folded down, only the seat behind the driver´s seat can be used to transport passengers.
- When transporting objects on the folded seat backrest, the front passenger airbag should be deactivated » page 28.
- Do not adjust the seat backrest while driving - it can cause injury and accidents!
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs out of the area between the seat and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle, e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or could protrude into the driver's zone.
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers due to a change of direction or braking manoeuvre when accelerating sharply.

Armrest setting

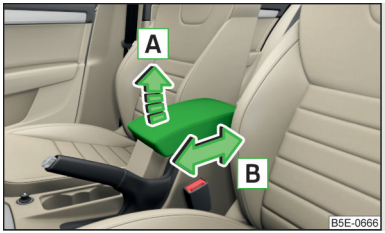

Fig. 87
Adjust armrest

Read and observe ! on page 84 first.

› To **adjust the height**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow A into one of the locking positions » Fig. 87.
› To **close**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A past the stop and then fold down again.
› To **Set the armrest lengthways** in the direction of arrow B Move to the desired position.

Rear seats

Seat backrests

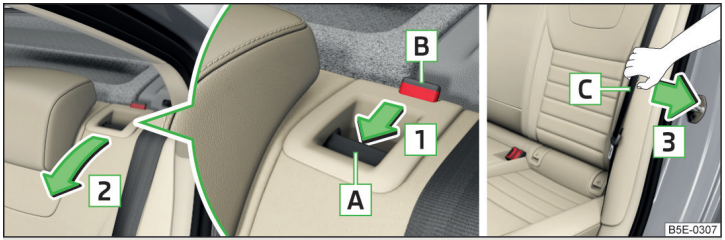

Fig. 88 **Fold the seat backrest forwards from the interior/pull the belt for the side trim**

Fig. 89 **Fold the backrest forward from the luggage compartment: Version 1/version 2**

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the seat backrests. Remove the rear headrests if required » page 89.

Folding forwards from the passenger compartment

› Push the release lever A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 88.

In the **undivided** seat back, press the release handles A on both sides of the seat back at the same time.

Fold forward from the luggage compartment

On vehicles with a net partition, the left and then the right and middle rear seat backrest must first be unlocked. The net partition must be rolled up in the housing.

› Pull the corresponding lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 89. The respective seat backrest is unlocked or folded forward.

Folding backwards

› Pull the seat belt C for the side panel in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 88.
› Raise the seat backrest against the direction of arrow 2 until the release handle A audibly locks. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

In the **undivided** seat back, pull the two outer belts to the side panel. After folding back the backrest, the release handles A should audibly click into place on both sides of the backrest and the red mark B should not be visible on either side of the backrest.

WARNING

- The seat backrests in the occupied rear seats must be properly engaged.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.
- The seat backrests must be securely latched in position so that no objects from the luggage compartment can slip into the passenger compartment under sudden braking – risk of injury.

CAUTION

When operating the seat backrests, the seat belts must not be pinched - there is a risk of damage to the seat belts.

Fold down armrest

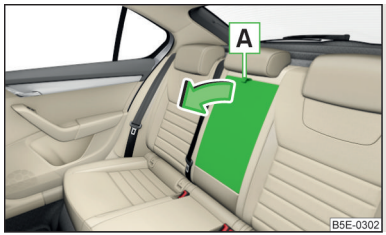

Fig. 90
Fold down armrest

The armrest can be **folded down** by pulling on the loop A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 90.

The folded-down armrest can be used as a side table.

Headrests

Introduction

Note

In sports seats, the headrests are integrated into the seat backrests and cannot be adjusted in height.

Adjust height of front head restraint

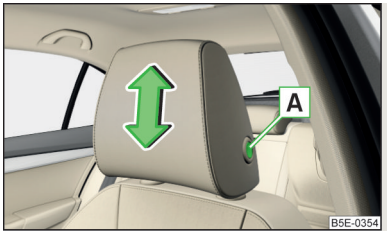

Fig. 91
Setting the height of the front headrest

› To **adjust the height**, hold the locking button A and move the rest in the desired direction » Fig. 91.

CAUTION

If the tablet holder adapter is secured to the guide rods of the headrests » page 101, do not push the headrests down to the stop – risk of damaging the headrests.

Adjusting the rear headrests

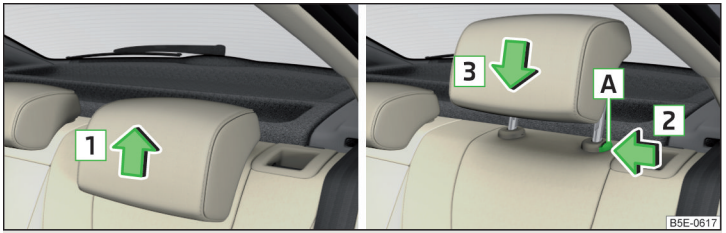

Fig. 92 **Setting the height of the back headrest**

Setting the height

› Grasp the headrest and move **upwards** in the direction of 1 » Fig. 92.
› To move the headrest **down**, press the securing button A in the direction of arrow 2 and hold it down while pressing the headrest in the direction of arrow 3.

Removing/inserting the rear headrests

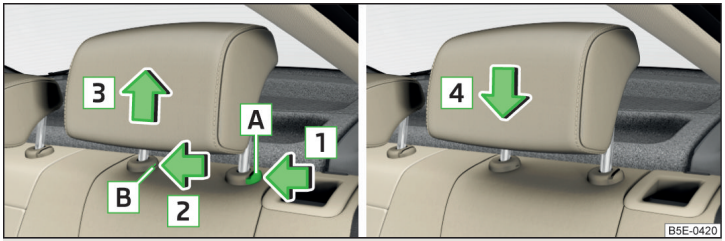

Fig. 93 **Removing/inserting the rear headrests**

Before removing/inserting the headrests, fold the corresponding seat backrest slightly forward » page 87.

› To **remove**, pull the rest out of the seat backrest up to the stop.
› Hold the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1, at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the locking button in the opening B in the direction of arrow 2 and pull out the rest in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 93.
› To **insert** the headrest, push the headrest into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 4 until the locking button clicks into place.

Seat heaters

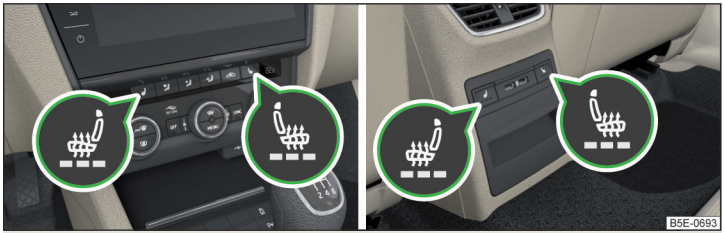

Fig. 94 **Buttons for heating the front seats/rear seats**

The seat backrests and surfaces of the front seats and the outer rear seats can be heated electrically.

Buttons for the seat heating » Fig. 94

Left seat heating
Right seat heating

› To **turn on** the heating to max, press the key or button.

With repeated pressing of the button, the level is down-regulated until it **switches off** . The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights underneath / in the button.

The seat heating only operates when the engine is running.

When the ignition is switched off, the seat heating / ventilation is also switched off. if the engine is started again within 10 minutes, then the driver's seat heating / ventilation is switched on again automatically according to the setting before switching off the ignition.

WARNING

If you have a limited pain and / or temperature sensitivity, e.g. due to medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend that you do not use the seat heating. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed to avoid damage to the seats.
- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not heat seats that do not contain occupants.
- Do not heat seats in which objects are secured or resting (e.g. children´s seat, a bag etc.).
- Do not heat seats on which additional slipcovers or protective covers are fitted.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating switches off automatically » page 276, *Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery*.

Heated steering wheel

Fig. 95 **Steering wheel heating: Manual air conditioning/Climatronic**

Switching heating on/off (applies to the manual air conditioning)

› In the Infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap the function surface A » Fig. 95.

Switching heating on/off (applies to Climatronic)

› Press the button MENU on the Climatronic, then tap the function surface B » Fig. 95.

When the heating is switched on, the symbol in the function surface B is orange.

The heated steering wheel only works when the engine is running.

Setting the heating power (applies to the Climatronic)

› Press the button MENU on the Climatronic, then tap the function surface → *Steering wheel heating* on the Infotainment screen.
› Setting the heating power.

The heating power is displayed by the number of segments in the indicator light C » Fig. 95.

Steering wheel heating together with the driver's seat heating (applies to the Climatronic)

› To **activate / deactivate** the heated steering wheel with the driver's seat heating, press the button MENU on the Climatronic, then tap the function surface → **Link seat/steering wheel heating** in the Infotainment screen.
› To **switch on / off** the heated steering wheel, press the button for the driver seat heating.

If the heated steering wheel is turned on together with the driver's seat heating, then the function surface is displayed on the Infotainment screen. This can be used to switch the heated steering wheel off/on.

Practical features

Passenger compartment features

Introduction

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - cause an accident!
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- For safety reasons, lockable storage compartments must be closed while driving - there is a risk of injury from the opened cover or from the items in the compartment.
- Make sure that no objects protrude from the compartments - there is danger of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible load for the storage compartments and pockets - it may cause injury or there is the risk of damaging the compartments and pockets!
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like may only be placed in the ashtray - risk of fire!
- The storage compartments, multimedia holder and waste container are not a substitute for the ashtray and must not be used for such purposes – risk of fire!

CAUTION

No not place large or sharp objects in the storage compartments and pockets - there is a risk of damage to the compartments and pockets.

Parking ticket holder

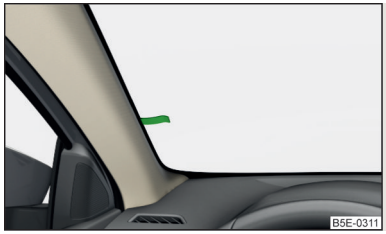

Fig. 96
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

The ticket holder is provided for the attachment of e.g. parking tickets.

Storage compartment on the driver's side

Fig. 97
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› To **open**, lift the handle and fold out the compartment » Fig. 97 .
› To **close**, swing the lid against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 0.5 kg.

Storage compartments in the doors

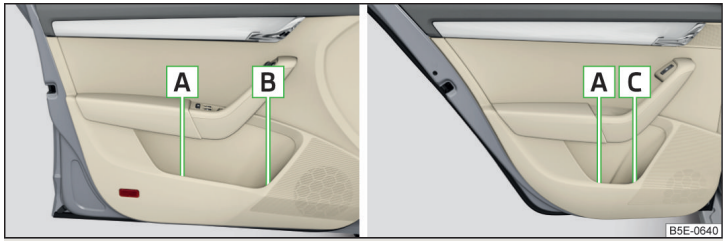

Fig. 98 **Storage compartments: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 98

A Storage compartment
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
C Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l

! WARNING

The storage compartment A » Fig. 98n the front door is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not protrude - there is the danger of limiting the operating range of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the front centre console

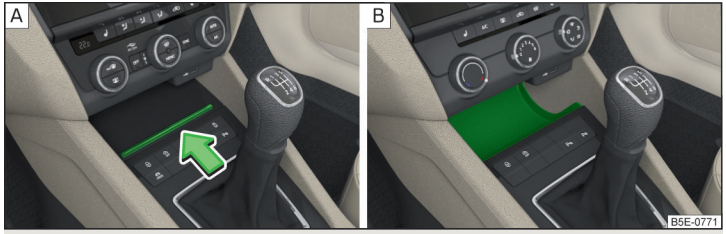

Fig. 99 **Opening storage compartment/ non-lockable storage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› To **open**, press the ridge in the direction of arrow » Fig. 99 - A.
› To **close**, pull on the ridge against the direction of the arrow.

Certain models do not have a storage compartment lid» Fig. 99 - B.

Phonebox

Fig. 100
Phonebox

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

The storage compartment in the front centre console can be equipped with the Phonebox function.

If a phone is placed face up on the pad in the storage compartment » Fig. 100, the phone signal is amplified by the roof antenna.

Telephones that support the standard for wireless Qi charging can be charged wirelessly in the storage compartment.

While wireless charging is taking place, **no** objects may be between the pad and the telephone being charged.

! WARNING

- The phone may become warm during wireless charging, so it should be removed carefully from the tray.
- Metal objects between the pad and the phone to be charged can become hot due to the action of the induction field - this is a risk of injury. If there is a metal object in the storage compartment that has become hot, then take out the telephone and let the object cook in the storage compartment!

CAUTION

- Metal objects between the pad and the phone to be charged can become hot due to the action of the induction field - this is a risk of damage to the telephone.
- With some phones, the charging process can be interrupted or the phone can switch off due to heating up.
- Do not insert any electronic or magnetic storage media (e.g. SD cards, USB sticks, cards with magnetic strips or chips) between the pad and the phone to be charged- there is a risk of data loss and damage to these data carriers.
- If a message appears in the Infotainment screen that the phone cannot be charged, then proceed as follows.
  - Check that there is no object between the support and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, then take out the object and the phone. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.
  - Check if the position of the phone to be charged has not changed during the journey. If this is the case, then take out the phone and put it back centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Note

- At the start of the wireless charging, the appropriate message appears on the Infotainment screen.
- For the optimum phone signal strength and uninterrupted wireless charging, we recommend position the phone in the storage compartment without the protective sleeve, if possible.
- Insert a max. 160x84 mm into the storage compartment.

USB inputs

Fig. 101 **Front USB input/rear USB inputs**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

The USB input is above the storage compartment in the front centre console and, depending on the equipment, also in the rear centre console » Fig. 101.

The USB input in the front centre console can be used for charging and for data transmission. The USB inputs in the rear centre console can be used only for charging.

Information for use » page 150, *USB input*.

Cup holders

Fig. 102 **Cup holder at the front/rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

The cup holders are located in the front centre console A and in the rear armrest B » Fig. 102.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

In the front area of the holder A, a beverage container can be opened with one hand by pushing the container into the holder and turning the lid.

WARNING

- Do not use breakable cups or beakers (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!

CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Waste container

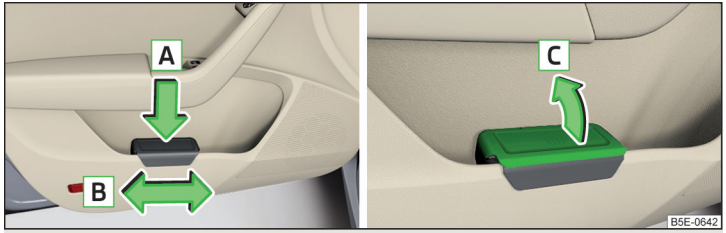

Fig. 103 **Waste container: inserting and moving/opening**

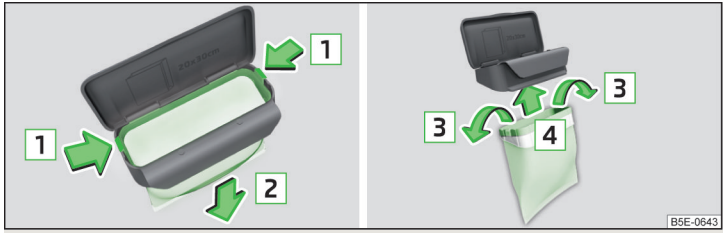

Fig. 104 **Replace bags**

Read and observe and on page 91 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors.

Insert waste container

› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container in the rear area in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 103.
› If required, push the waste container in the direction of arrow B.

Remove the waste container

› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow A » Fig. 103.

Open/close waste container

› Lift the cover in the direction C » Fig. 103.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags

› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 104.
› Pull the bag together with the frame downwards in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the bag frame in the direction of arrow 3.
› Insert the bag containing the frame in the direction of arrow 4 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly with the frame.

Note

We recommend that you use 20 x 30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

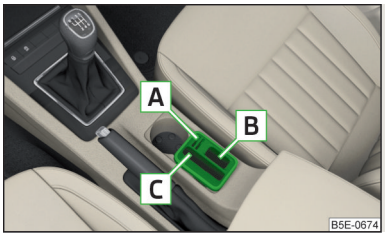

Fig. 105
Multimedia holder

Read and observe and on page 91 first.

Multimedia holder » Fig. 105

A Storage compartment for storing two coins
B Storage compartment for storing the vehicle key
C Storage compartment for storing a mobile phone

Storage compartment underneath the front armrest

Fig. 106
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› To **open**, pull the armrest by the handle A to the stop » Fig. 106.
› To **close**, fold down the armrest.

Glasses storage box

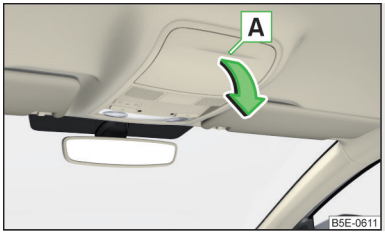

Fig. 107
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› To **open**, press on the outer edge of the glasses compartment in area A . The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 107.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.

! CAUTION

- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box - with high temperatures there is risk of damage.
- The box must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

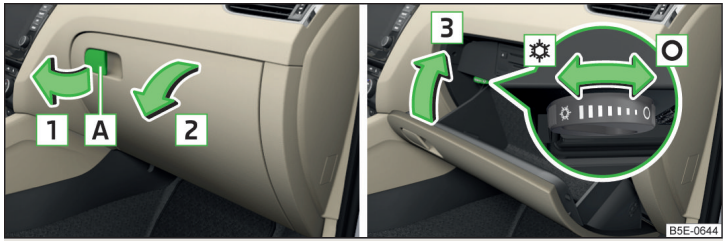

Fig. 108 **Open storage compartment / close storage compartment and open air supply**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

The storage compartment is equipped with an interior light (this is illuminated when the parking lights / low beam are switched on), a pen/card holder and an air outlet.

Storage compartment

› To **open**, pull the handle A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 108.
› To **close**, swivel the cover in the direction of arrow 3 until it audibly clicks into place.

Air supply

› To **open**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position ✲ » Fig. 108.
› To **close**, turn the rotary switch until it stops in the position ○.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air inlet when the air conditioning system is on causes fresh or interior air to flow into the storage compartment.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 3 kg.

Storage compartment for an umbrella

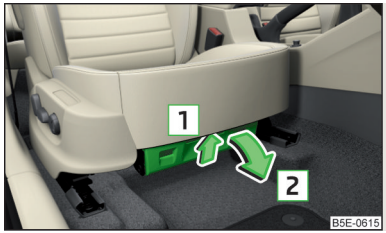

Fig. 109
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› To **open**, pull the handle in direction of arrow 1 pull and open the compartment in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 109.
› To **close**, screw in the lid in the opposite direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

Clothes hook

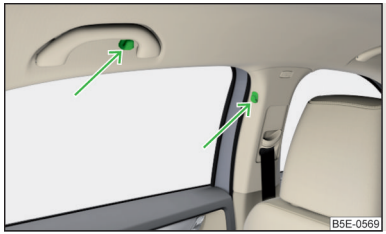

Fig. 110
Clothes hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 110.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

! WARNING

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing hung up.
- To hang the clothes do not use hangers - there is a risk of limiting the effectiveness of head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the outside.

Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats

Fig. 111
Map pockets

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

The map pockets are intended for storage of maps, magazines, etc.

Folding table on the front seat rest

Fig. 112
Opening the folding table

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› To **fold down**, raise the table in the horizontal position in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 112.

› **Fold** the table back into the vertical position by push the table away from the arrow.

The maximum permissible load for the table is 10 kg.

WARNING

- During the trip to the table must be in folded-down - otherwise there is danger of injury.
- Do not use breakable cups or beakers (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!

Storage compartment in rear centre console

Fig. 113
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› To**open** Pull the handle on the upper section of the recess and open out the compartment in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 113.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow.

There is a cushioned insert in the storage compartment. This can be removed if the storage compartment is opened to the stop.

Long cargo channel

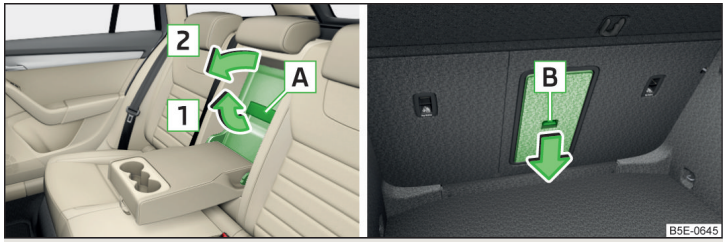

Fig. 114 **Open lid: from the passenger compartment / from the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

› To **open from the passenger compartment**, fold down the rear armrest slightly » page 88.
› Pull handle A in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 114.
› To **open from the luggage compartment**, push the securing tab B in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover with the armrest forwards.
› To **close**, fold the cover and the rear armrest upwards until the stop. This should audibly click into place.

The cover must be secured after the closing process. Ensure that the red field above the securing tab B is not visible.

WARNING

The through-loading channel is only intended for transporting skis in a properly secured, through-loading bag.

Removable through-loading bag

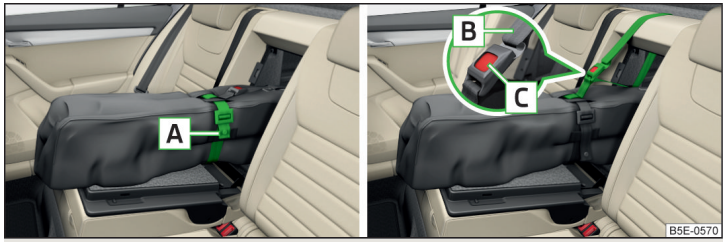

Fig. 115 **Tighten ribbon / secure through-loading bag**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 91 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to as bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis and poles (max. 4 pairs).

Stowing bag and skis

› Fold the rear armrest and the cover in the seat backrest downwards » Fig. 114 *on page 97*.
› Place the empty bag in the opening in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Place the skis **with the tips facing to the front** and the sticks with the tips facing to the rear into the bag and close the bag.

Securing bag and skis

› Tighten the strap A around the skis **in front of** the bindings » Fig. 115. The strap must hold the skis tight.
› Partially fold the middle seat backrest forward » page 87.
› Guide the securing strap B through the opening in the seat backrest around the upper part of the seat backrest.
› Then, fold the seat backrests back until the locking button clicks into place. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.
› Insert the securing strap B into the lock C until it clicks into place.

! WARNING

▪ The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 17 kg.
▪ Always stow and secure the skis and the bag securely - otherwise there is a risk of injury or accident!

Electrical sockets

Introduction

! WARNING

▪ Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
▪ Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - cause an accident!
▪ Safely stow all devices during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – risk of death!
▪ The devices may warm up during operation – risk of injury or fire!
▪ Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
▪ The 12-Volt sockets also work if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.

! CAUTION

When using the 12 volt power outlets the following notes are to be observed.
▪ The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts, otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
▪ Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
▪ Before switching the ignition on / off or before starting the engine, switch off the devices which are connected to the sockets - there is a risk of damage to the equipment due to voltage fluctuations.

12-volt power outlet

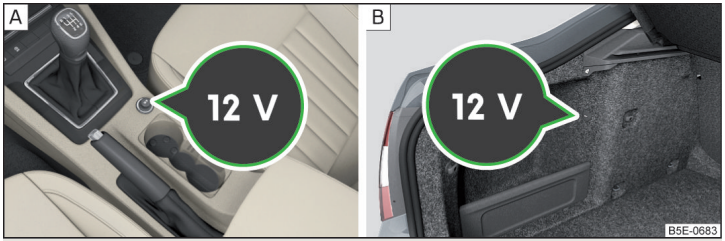

Fig. 116 **12-volt socket cover: in the front centre console/in the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

› To **use**, remove the cover from the socket » Fig. 116 - A or open the cover of the socket » Fig. 116 - B.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

230-volt socket

Fig. 117 **Open the cover of the 230 volt outlet / 230 volt outlet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 98 first.

The 230-volt socket has a child safety lock. When inserting the plug, the fuse is released, the socket is activated and the warning light above the socket is illuminates green (if this flashes red, then the socket is deactivated).

The socket works with the engine running (in STOP mode in vehicles with the START-STOP system) and for about 10 minutes after the engine is switched off, provided an appliance was still connected prior to switching off the engine (the warning light flashes green)).

› To **use**, fold up the cover of the socket in the direction of arrow » Fig. 117 and plug the electrical appliance plug into the socket.
› Before removing the electrical appliance plug from the socket, fold open the cover of the socket part way in the direction of the arrow.

An automatic deactivation of the socket can take place, for example, for the following reasons.
▶ Excessive current.
▶ Low state of charge of the battery.
▶ High outlet temperature.

If disabling reasons no longer exist, the automatic activation of the socket can be done.

Should no automatic activation of the socket take place, the connected devices must be disconnected from the power outlet and reconnect after a short time.

! WARNING

- Make sure that no liquid or moisture enters into the socket - it can be fatal! If fluid does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before reuse.
- The child lock on the power socket is unlocked when using adapters and extension cables which carry volts – risk of injury!
- Do no insert any objects (e.g. knitting needles) into the contacts of the power socket – risk of death!

! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a two-pin 230V plug, with a total power uptake of up to 150 watt.
- The plug of the electrical appliance must be plugged in up to the stop, otherwise the child safety lock can be unlocked and the socket may be activated but the electric appliance is still not receiving power.

▪ Do not connect bulbs with neon tubes in the socket - there is a risk of damaging the lamp.
▪ For appliances with an independent power source (e.g. such as notebooks), first connect the power source itself and only after that connect the appliance.

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

Introduction

The ashtray can be used for ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like

WARNING
Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

Ashtray

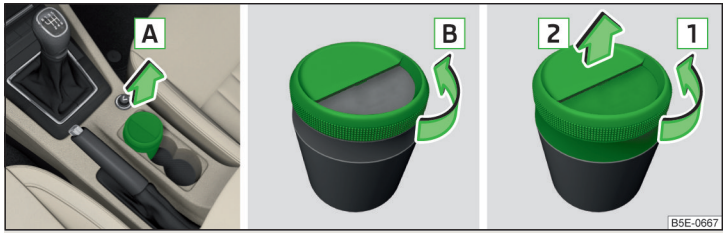

Fig. 118 **Remove / open / disassemble ashtray**

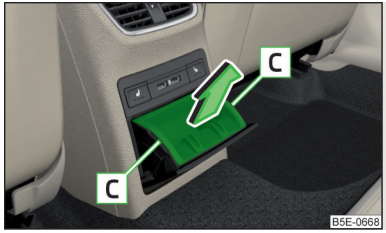

Fig. 119
Removing the rear ashtray insert

Read and observe ! on page 100 first.

Removable ashtray
› Remove the ashtray in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 118. **Insertion** takes place in reverse order.
› To **open** the ashtray, turn the cover in the direction of arrow B. **Closing** takes place in reverse order.
› To **disassemble** turn the entire cover in the direction 1 until it stops and remove in direction of arrow 2. **Assembling** takes place in reverse order.

Ashtray with removable insert
› To **remove** the insert, open the ashtray fully, hold the insert in area C and remove in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 119.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Cigarette lighter

Fig. 120
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 100 first.

› To **use** the lighter, push it in as far as the stop and wait until the glowing lighter clicks out again » Fig. 120.
› Take out the glowing lighter instantly, use it and insert it back into the socket.

WARNING
▪ The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of burning, fire or damage to the vehicle interior.
▪ Be careful when using the cigarette lighter - it can cause burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket.

Tablet holder

Introduction

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the holder.

The maximum permissible load of the compartment is 750 g.

CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Attaching the rear headrests

Fig. 121 **Inserting: Adapter/Holder**

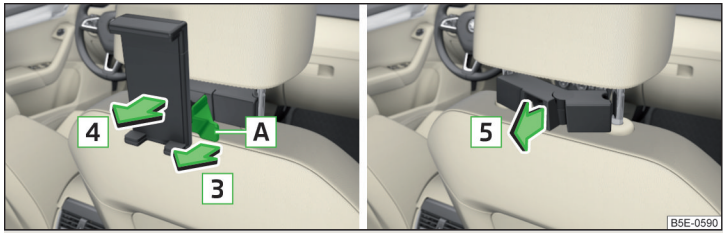

Fig. 122 **Removal: Holder/Adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 101 first.

- To **insert**, attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the front headrest and clip in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 121 » !.
- Clip in the holder in the direction of arrow 2 into the adapter.
- To **remove**, pull on the securing tab A in direction of arrow 3 and take the holder out of the adapter in the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 122.
- Press the adapter and remove in the direction of the arrow 5 from the guide rods of the headrest.

WARNING

Be careful with the adapter- otherwise there is a risk of finger injury.

Handling the holder

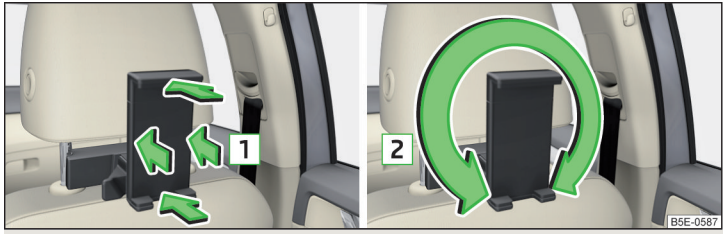

Fig. 123 **Tilting and rotating the holder**

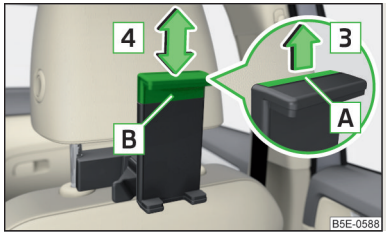

Fig. 124
Adjusting the holder size

Read and observe ! on page 101 first.

The holder may be by 30° in the direction of the arrow 1 **tipped** and by 360° in the direction of arrow 2 **turned** » Fig. 123.

› To **adjust the holder size**, pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and push the part B in the direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 124.

Note

If there is no external device in the holder, then we recommend that the part B is moved down fully. Otherwise, irritating noise may occur at certain speeds.

Transport of cargo

Luggage compartment

Introduction

When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in centre-of-gravity. Therefore, adjust the speed and driving mode accordingly.

When transporting cargo the following the instructions must be adhered to

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or securing nets so that they cannot slip.
- Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Tyre pressure is to match the load.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Luggage compartment light

The light switches on/off when the boot lid is opened or closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. Heavy objects were not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!
- An unfixed or improperly fixed load can slip during a sudden manoeuvre or an accident - danger of injury!
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats .

CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. - these could be damaged.
- Make sure that the heating elements of the rear window heater, the elements of the integrated aerial in the rear window or in the rear side windows are not damaged by abrasive items.
- Do not place sharp objects in the nets and storage compartments in the luggage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the net as well as the compartments.
- Put the items in the storage compartments carefully and not load these punctiform - there is a risk of damage to the compartments.

Fastening elements

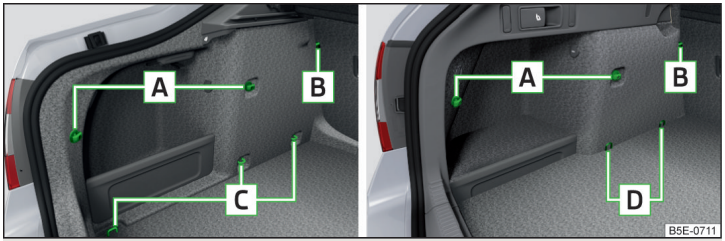

Fig. 125 **Fastening elements: Variant 1/variant 2 (G-TEC)**

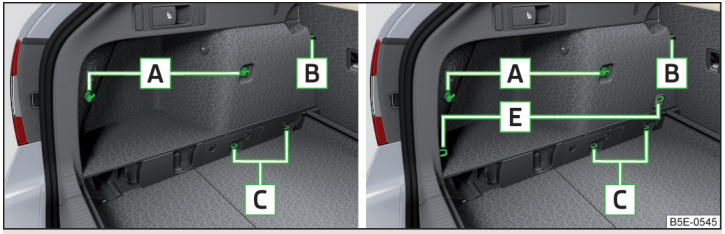

Fig. 126 **Fastening elements: Version 3/version 4**

Read and observe and on page 102 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 125**and** » Fig. 126

- **A** Fasteners for securing fastening nets and multifunction pocket
- **B** Lashing eyes **only** for fastening fixing nets
- **C** Lashing eyes for fastening of cargo and fastening nets (in variant 1, the rear and centre eye is additionally provided for securing the multifunctional bag)
- **D** Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and fastening nets
- **E** Lashing eyes for fastening cargo and fastening nets

The lashing eyelet **B** is located behind the folding rear seat backrest .

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes **C** and **E** is 350 kg.

The maximum permissible load of the individual lashing eyes is **D** is 150 kg.

Fixing nets

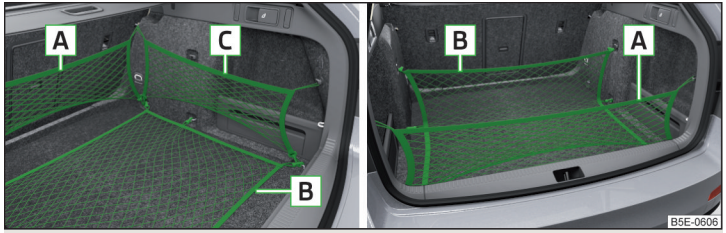

Fig. 127 **Fastening examples for nets**

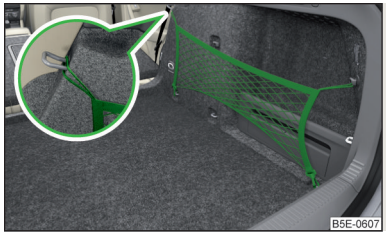

Fig. 128
Fastening vertical pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 127 **and** » Fig. 128

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor and this is in the upper position, then the lashing eyes E » Fig. 126 *on page 103* can be used for attaching the nets.

! CAUTION

On vehicles with lashing eyes D » Fig. 125 *on page 103* only the cross-bag are attached behind the seats and the floor net (the net can be attached to the rear fasteners A » Fig. 125 *on page 103*at the rear).

Multifunction pocket

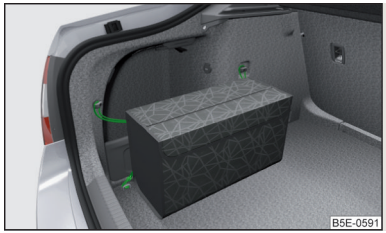

Fig. 129
Securing the multifunction pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

The pocket » Fig. 129 can be secured to the fastening elements A and the rear and centre lashing eyes C » Fig. 125 *on page 103*.

The maximum permissible load for the bag attached to the fastening element is 3 kg.

! CAUTION

In vehicles with a variable loading floor, it is not possible to attach the bag to the fastening elements.

Folding double hooks

Fig. 130
Folding double hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

Folding double hooks» Fig. 130 for attaching small items of luggage, such as bags etc. are provided on one or both sides of the luggage compartment depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle (e.g. Bags etc.).

An item of luggage with a maximum weight of 5 kg can be attached to each side of the double hook.

Foldable hook

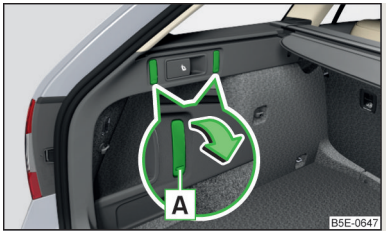

Fig. 131
Fold down hook

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

Foldable hooks for hanging small items of luggage, such as bags, etc., are provided on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› To the **use** on the lower part A Press the hook and pull it down in direction of the arrow » Fig. 131.

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7 kg.

Fasten the flooring

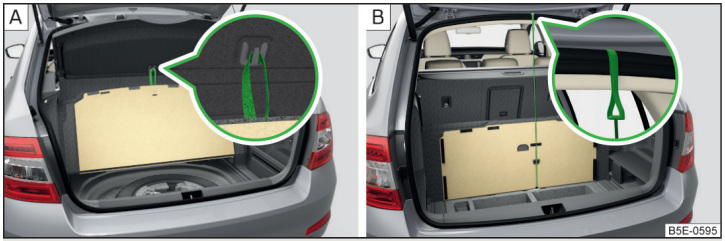

Fig. 132 **Fixing the floor covering: Version 1/version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

Fastening options for the flooring » Fig. 132

A With the loop on a hook on the luggage compartment cover

B With the hook on the frame of the luggage compartment lid

! CAUTION

For version 1, the following information applies.

- The hook on the luggage compartment cover is only provided for the fixing of the floor covering, do not hang objects on it - there is a risk of damage to hook.
- The flooring covering can be fixed to the hook only with the boot open. Before closing the lid, check that the flooring is not attached to the hook - there is a risk of damage to the hook.

! CAUTION

The floor covering can be fixed with Version 2 only if the variable loading floor is folded in the upper position » Fig. 146 *on page 111*.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

A double-sided floor covering can be fitted in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable (suitable for transporting wet or dirty items).

! CAUTION

The double sided floor covering can only be used in vehicles without the variable loading floor» page 110 - There is a risk of damage to the variable loading floor.

Net on the luggage compartment cover

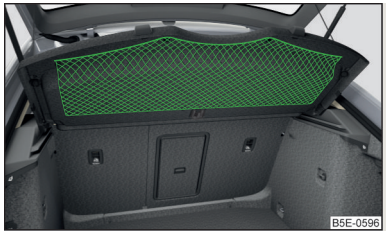

Fig. 133
Net on the luggage compartment cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

The net at the bottom of the luggage compartment cover » Fig. 133 is provided for transporting light and soft items.

The maximum permissible load of the net is 1.5 kg.

Luggage compartment cover

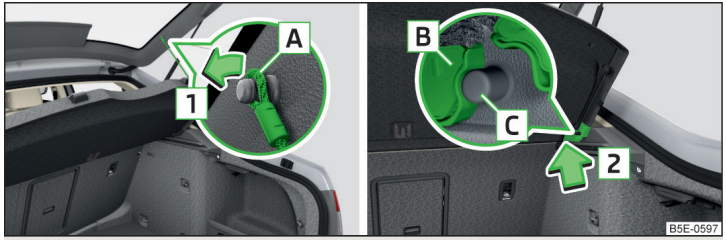

Fig. 134 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**

Fig. 135
Luggage compartment cover stowed behind the rear seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

If the retaining straps A » Fig. 134 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will also raise the luggage compartment cover (hereafter only referred to as "cover").

The cover can be removed from the vehicle and stowed behind the rear seat backrests if required » Fig. 135. Before removing the cover, the sunshade at the back must be rolled up» page 80.

Removing

› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 134.
› Hold the raised cover and press on the two sides on the underside of the cover in the area of the recess C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fitting

› Place the fixtures B on the cover above the brackets C on the side trim » Fig. 134.
› Press on the two sides to the upper side of the cover in the region of the mounts C. The fixtures B must lock into place of the recess C on both sides of the luggage compartment.
› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A.

! WARNING

Do not place any objects on the cover during the trip - There is a risk of injury if you brake or have a collision!

CAUTION

- Observe the following instructions to avoid canting and the subsequent damage to the cover or the side trim.
  - The cover must be inserted properly and the load must not exceed the height of the cover.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the raised position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the raise position and the rear backrest.

Roll-up cover

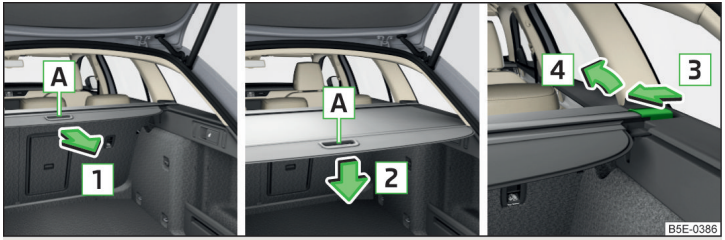

Fig. 136 **Roll-up cover: extending/retracting/removing**

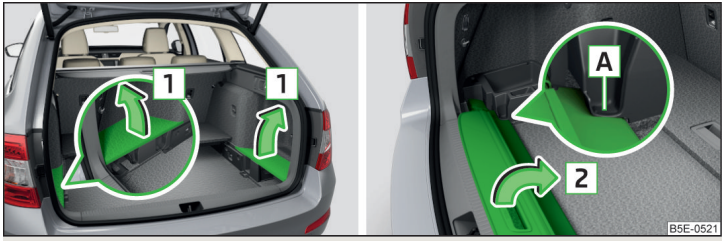

Fig. 137 **Removing side covers / stowing foldable luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

Extending

› Grasp the cover at grip-point A and pull it out in the direction of the arrow 1 until it audibly clicks into place» Fig. 136.

Retracting

› Push the cover in the handle area A in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 136. The cover rolls up automatically. The rolled-up cover can now be removed.

Removing/inserting

› Press on the side of the cross bar in the direction of arrow 3 and remove the cover in the arrow direction 4 » Fig. 136.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Stowage

If the vehicle is equipped with the variable loading floor, then the removable roll-up luggage compartment cover can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 111.
› Remove the side covers in the direction of arrows 1 » Fig. 137.
› Insert the front part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover under a portion of the side trim D on the left.
› Fold the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position.

WARNING

No objects should be placed on the roll-up cover - there is a risk of damage to the cover and a risk of injury in the event of a sudden stop or a vehicle collision!

CAUTION

It is possible that the roll-up luggage compartment cover rolls more slowly during winter weather conditions. This is not a defect.

Note

If you want to stow the roll-up luggage compartment cover and the roof rack **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

Storage compartment with cargo element

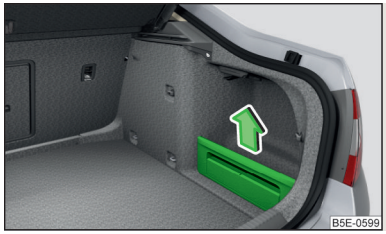

Fig. 138
Remove storage compartment

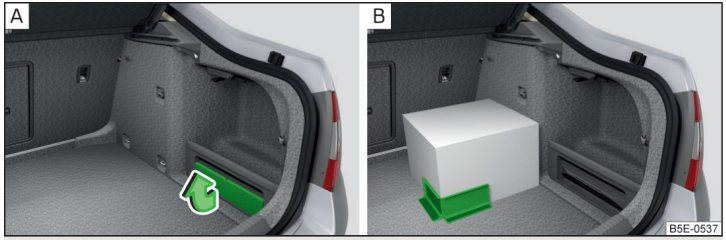

Fig. 139 **Remove cargo element / Load fastening example**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

The storage compartment with cargo element may be located on either of the two sides of the luggage compartment, depending on the equipment variant.

The space behind the storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 2.5 kg.

The cargo element is designed for attaching and securing objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Storage compartment

› Remove the storage compartment cover in the direction of the arrow» Fig. 138. **Insertion** takes place in reverse order.

Cargoelement

› Before use, remove theCargoelement in the direction of arrow» Fig. 139 - A.

› Use thecargoelements to secure the load as close as possible to the rear seats» Fig. 139 B.

› After use, stow the cargoelements in their original position.

Storage compartments under the floor covering

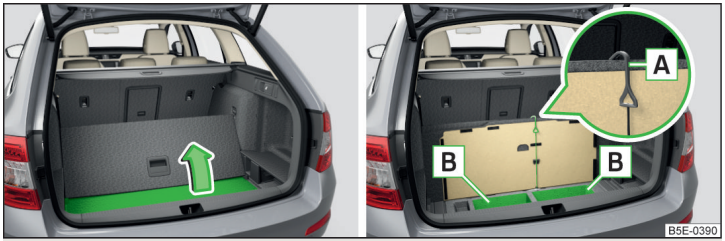

Fig. 140 **Lift floor covering/storage compartments under the floor covering**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

For vehicles that are not equipped with an emergency wheel located under the flooring of the luggage compartment B » Fig. 140.

Every storage compartment B is designed for storing small objects of up to 15 kg. in weight in total.

Use of the storage compartments

› Dividing the luggage compartment with variable loading floor » page 111.

› Lift the floor covering in the direction of arrow» Fig. 140 and hook into hook A on the upper edge of the variable loading floor.

› Stow the cargo in the storage compartments.

› Unhook hook A and fold back the flooring against the direction of the arrow (fold back the variable loading floor to the initial position if necessary).

When transporting tall objects in the compartments, the hook A must be hooked onto the upper edge of the variable loading floor.

! CAUTION

Before closing the boot lid, check that the cargo transported in the storage compartments does not strike against the luggage compartment cover - there is a risk of damage to the lid.

Multi-function pocket

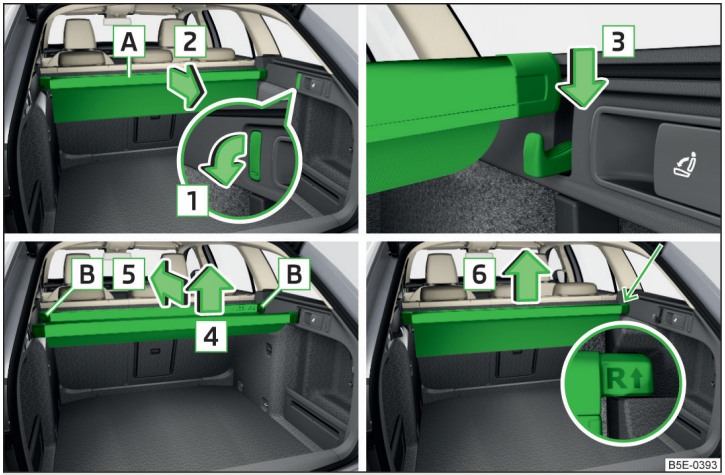

Fig. 141 **Multi-function pocket: pulling out/inserting/pushing in/removing**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

The multifunction pocket (hereinafter referred to as pocket) is provided for storing clothing and light objects with no sharp edges.

The maximum permissible load of the multifunction box is 3 kg.

Removal and fitting

› Fold down the front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 141.
› Grasp the rear bar A with both hands and withdraw the pocket in arrow direction 2.
› Place the rear bar onto the two hooks that are folded forward in the direction of the arrow 3 all the way to the stop.

Pushing in

› Remove the rear bar from the hooks in the direction of arrow 4 and push in the pocket in the direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 141.
› Place the rear bar against the front bar and press them together at both ends B.
› The front hooks on both sides of the luggage compartment fold back opposite to the direction of arrow 1.

Removing/inserting

› Remove the roll-up cover » page 107.
› Remove the pocket from the fittings in the direction of the arrow 6 » Fig. 141.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

› Insert the end of the bar marked with R ↑ into the right-hand mounting and the end of the bar marked with ↑ L into the left-hand mounting. The arrows should be pointing forward.

Removable light

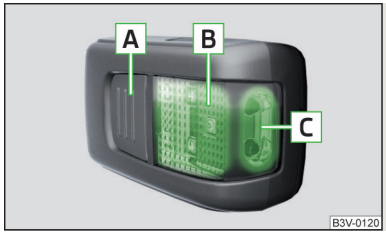

Fig. 142
Removable light

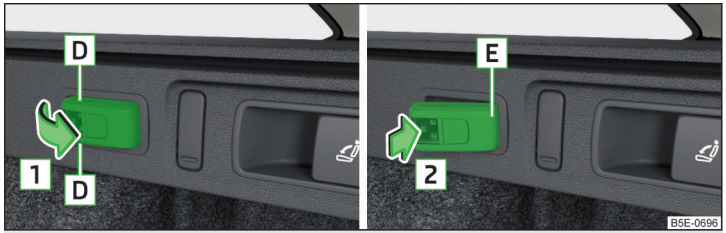

Fig. 143 **Removing light/inserting light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

The lamp is for the illumination of the luggage compartment or it can be used as a portable lamp.

The lamp is equipped with a magnet. As a result, this can, for example, be fitted to the vehicle body.

Description of the light » Fig. 142

A Button to turn the light that has been removed on / off
B Part that lights up when the lamp is in the mount
C Part that lights up when the lamp is not in the mount

If the light is in the **mount**, this will illuminate when the boot lid is opened.

› To **remove**, hold the light in the area D and swivel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 143.
› To **switch on** the removed light, press button A » Fig. 142. Pressing the light again will **switch it off**.
› To **insert**, first of all insert the light with the rear part E into the mount » Fig. 143 and then push the light in the direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

If the light is not switched off and is correctly inserted in the mount, the LED diodes in the front part of the light C » Fig. 142 are automatically switched off.

If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, this does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged.

Lamp charges

The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type NiMH AAA batteries (voltage 1.2 V). The batteries are charged continuously with the engine running (to fully charge the battery takes approximately 3 hours).

Replace batteries » page 293.

! CAUTION

The light is not waterproof, so it must be protected from humidity - otherwise there is risk of damage.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Positions of the variable loading floor

Fig. 144 **Set variable loading floor to the upper position / variable loading floor in the upper position**

Fig. 145 **Set variable loading floor to the lower position / variable loading floor in the lower position**

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

Set to the upper position

› Lift the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 144 by about 20 cm and pull towards you.
› Lift the variable loading floor to the height of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow 1 until you hear the clicking sound and press forward.

The space below the variable loading floor can be used for stowing objects such as the removed roll-up luggage compartment cover » page 107, the roof cross bars» page 113 etc.

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor in the lower position » Fig. 145.

Set into the lower position

› Check that the area below the variable loading floor is empty.
› Lift the variable loading floor by the handle A » Fig. 145 above the loading edge in the direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the loading floor towards you in the direction of arrow 3 until it sinks to the bottom position, and push forward.

Fold together / fold out the variable loading floor

Fig. 146 **Fold up variable loading floor / folded variable cargo floor in the upper position**

› To **fold together**, hold the variable loading floor by the handle A and lift in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 146.
› Fold up the variable loading floor by moving it in the direction of the arrow 2.

Folding out takes place in reverse order.

The variable loading floor is folded together / out in the same way in the upper and lower position.

Dividing the luggage compartment

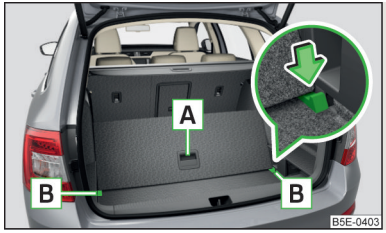

Fig. 147
Dividing the boot with variable loading floor

› To **divide**, lift the variable loading floor by the handle A and push in the rear edge of the variable loading floor in the grooves B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 147.

The variable loading floor is secured against movements in the grooves B.

Folding out takes place in reverse order.

The variable loading floor is divided in the same way in the upper and lower position.

Net partition

Using the net partition

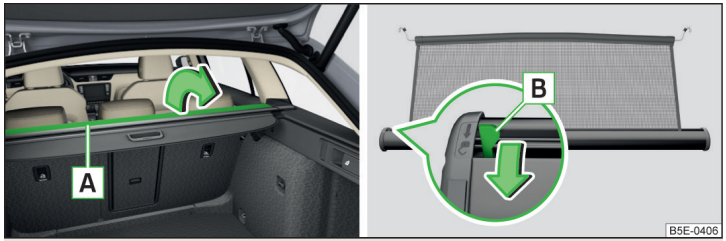

Fig. 148 **Open part of the roll-up luggage compartment cover / release lever**

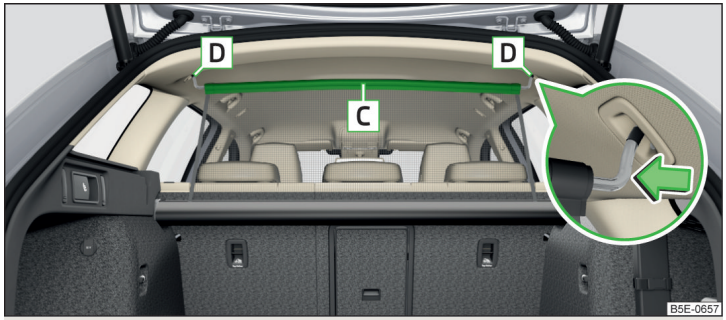

Fig. 149 **Correctly secure net partition behind the front seats in the pulled-out state**

The net partition can either be pulled out and secured from behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Pull out and secure the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 148.
› Pull out the net partition at the crossbar C and hook into one of the receptacles D » Fig. 149.
› On the other side, press on the crossbar in the direction of the arrow and hook it into the appropriate receptacle D.
› Make sure that the crossbar is firmly seated in the two mountings D.
› Fold back part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 148.

Using the net partition behind the rear seats

› Fold out part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 148.
› Press on the crossbar and remove it from the receptacles D » Fig. 149, first on one side, then on the other side.
› The crossbar C **Hold** in such a way that the net partition can slowly roll up without being damaged.
› Fold back part A of the roll-up luggage compartment cover in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 148.

Pull out and secure the net partition behind the front seats

The process is analogous to that for behind the rear seats. Before pulling out the net partition, the rear seat backs are to be folded forwards. After rolling up the net partition into the housing, the rear seat backs are folded back » page 87.

CAUTION

If the net partition blocks when pulling it out, push the release lever B in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 148.

Removing and installing the net partition housing

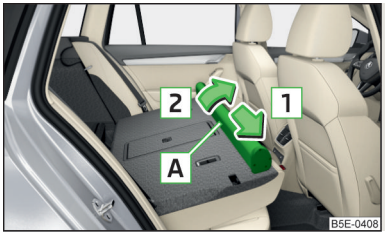

Fig. 150 **Removing the net partition housing**

› To **remove**, fold forwarded the rear seat backrests and open the rear right door.

› Push the housing A in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove it from the mountings in the direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 150.
› To **install**, insert the recesses on the housing A into the mountings on the rear seat backrests and push the housing against the arrow 1 up to the stop.
› Fold the rear seat backrests to their original position.

Transport on the roof rack

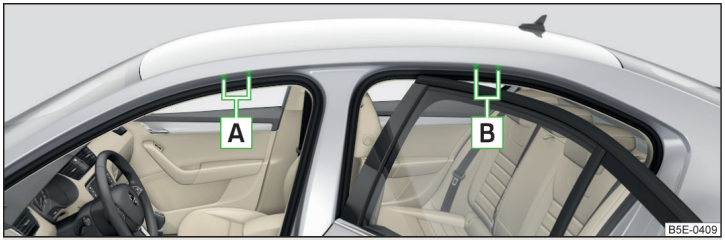

Fig. 151 **Attachment points**

Fig. 152 **Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment/stow the roof rack**

Depending on the equipment, the roof bars can be attached at the attachment points » Fig. 151 or to the roof rail.

The attachment points A and B are located on both sides of the vehicle » Fig. 151.

Mounting and dismounting of the roof bars is carried out according to the instructions provided.

Roof load

The maximum permitted weight of the load incl. carriers is 75 kg.

Stowing the roof racks

With vehicles have the variable loading floor, then the roof racks can be stowed in the recesses of the luggage compartment side trim.

› Fold the variable loading floor into the upper position » page 111.
› Remove the side panels of the luggage compartment in the direction of arrows 1 » Fig. 152.
› Remove the key from the roof rack» ! and stow in the recess C.
› Insert the front roof rack A into the front recesses of the side panel and the rear roof rack B into the back recesses of the side trim.
› Replace the side trims of the luggage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 1.
› Fold out the variable loading floor to the upper position » page 110.

! WARNING

For road safety when transporting cargo on the roof rack, observe the following instructions.
- Always distribute the load on the roof rack evenly and secure properly using suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Before stowing the roof rack, the key must be removed from the carrier - otherwise there is a risk of key corruption.
- If you want to stow the roof rack and the roll-up luggage compartment cover **at the same time**, then it is necessary that the rear part of the roll-up luggage compartment is **covering** the rear roof rack.

CAUTION

- Make sure that the sliding / tilting roof or the boot lid does not collide with the roof load when opened.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

The heating heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system works under the following conditions.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is below 2 ° C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

Fogging is prevented when the cooling system is switched on.

It is possible to boost the effectiveness of the cooling system by briefly activating the air recirculation system » page 117.

Health protection

To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.

- The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
- The cooling system should be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- Once a year, the air conditioning should be disinfected by a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting. Otherwise there could be an accident.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Note

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

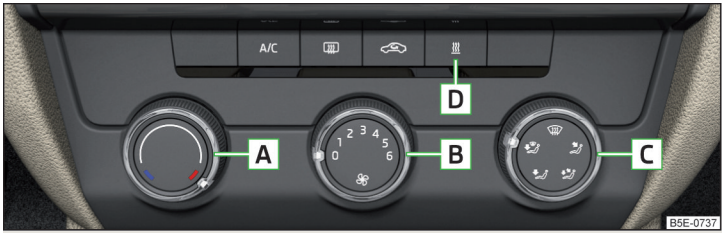

Fig. 153 **Controls of the heating / air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 153.

A Adjust temperature
- ▶ | Reduce the temperature/| Increase the temperature

B Set the blower speed (Level 0: Adjust the fan speed (level 0: fan off; level 6: highest speed)

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 118

D Depending on equipment fitted:
- ▶ Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 119
- ▶ Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 79

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Switch on/off the rear window heating » page 79

Switch recirculation on/off » page 117

When this function is switched on, the warning light lights up below the button.

Information on the cooling system

After pressing the button **A/C**, the warning light underneath the button illuminates even if not all conditions for the cooling system are met. The cooling system starts to work as soon as the following conditions have been met » page 114.

When the air distribution control is turned to position the cooling system is activated.

Note

To ensure adequate thermal comfort, during operation of the manual air conditioning there could be an increase in the engine idle speed in some circumstances.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

Fig. 154 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 154.

A Display the set temperature for the left side

B Display the set temperature for the right side

C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 118

D Adjust fan speed (the setting is indicated by the number of illuminated control lamps shown in the knob)
- ▶ Turn to the left: Reduce speed up to turning off the Climatronic
- ▶ Turn to the right: Increase speed

E Adjust the temperature for the left side (or for both sides)[1]
- ▶ I Reduce the temperature/I Increase the temperature

F Adjust the temperature for the right side (or for both sides)[2]
- ▶ I Reduce the temperature/I Increase the temperature

G Depending on equipment fitted:
- ▶ Auxiliary heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 119
- ▶ OFF Switching Climatronic system off

H Interior temperature sensor

Switch recirculation on/off » page 117

MAX Intense air flow to the windscreen on / off (when switching on, the air flow to the windows and A/C is also switched on)

Switch on/off the rear window heating » page 79

Switch the windscreen heating on/off » page 79

MENU Setting Climatronic in Infotainment (also operate with some functions)

SYNC Synchronise the temperature inside the entire vehicle according to the temperature setting on the driver's side

AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 117

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

If the function is switched on, a warning light lights up within or below the button.

Adjust temperature

The temperature can be set on the Climatronic control unit or in Infotainment» page 116. In the range between 16 ° C to 29.5 ° C, an automatic temperature control takes place.

At a temperature setting below 16 °C, LO lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum cooling performance**.

At a temperature setting above 29.5 °C, HI lights up in the temperature display, the Climatronic functions with **maximum heating output**.

CAUTION

Do not cover the interior temperature sensor H » Fig. 154 - the function of the Climatronic could be affected.

Note

- In order to ensure adequate thermal comfort, there may be an increase in engine idle speed during operation of the Climatronic in some circumstances.
- The setting of the Climatronic is stored in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Operate Climatronic in Infotainment

Fig. 155
Infotainment: example display of the main Climatronic menu

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

› To display the **main menu**, press the button MENU on the Climatronic control unit.

Function surfaces and screen display » Fig. 155.

A Displays the current operation mode (or set the operation mode) of the Climatronic

B Set the desired temperature, front - left side

C Set the desired temperature, front - right side

D Setting the power in AUTO operation

E Switching on/off and adjusting the fan speed, cooling system, air distribution and air recirculation[a]

Colour representation of the air flow from the air vents at the front (Blue colour - temperature reduction / red colour - temperature increase)

OFF/ON Switching on/off the Climatronic

[1] Applies to left-hand drive vehicles.
[2] Applies to right-hand drive vehicles.

SYNC	Switch the temperature synchronisation on/off throughout the entire interior of the vehicle according to the temperature setting on the driver's side[a]
Air Care	Switch Air Care function on/off
	Set the auxiliary heater and ventilation
	Switch the windscreen heating on/off[a]
	Turn the steering wheel heating on/off[a]
	Other Climatronic settings

[a] When function is switched on, the symbol in the function surface is green.

Other Climatronic settings
Press the MENU button on the Climatronic control panel → tap the function surface on the Infotainment screen.
- **Air-cond. profile:** - Setting the operating performance during AUTO operation (applies to Infotainment Swing)
- **Automatic air recirculation** - Automatic re-circulated air mode on/off
- **Automatic auxiliary heater** - Quick interior heating on/off
- **Automatic windscreen heating** - Activates/deactivates the automatic windscreen heating

Climatronic - automatic operation

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

› To **turn on**, press the AUTO » Fig. 154 *on page 115* .
› To **turn off**, press any button for the air distribution or change the blower speed. The temperature regulation is continued.

Holding the button AUTO will turn on SYNC automatically.

Operating modes
Automatic mode works in three modes - moderate, medium, and intensive. Setting the different modes is carried out via the function surface D » Fig. 155 *on page 116*.

After the automatic mode is switched on, Climatronic works in the last selected mode. The currently selected mode is displayed on the Infotainment screen.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the Interior of the vehicle. In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

› To **switch on**, press the button. The warning light below the button lights up.
› To **switch off**, press the button again. The warning light below the button goes out.

Heating and manual air conditioning system
If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off. By pressing the button, the air recirculation also in this position can be switched on again.

When the cooling system (button A/C) is switched on and the temperature regulator is "turned" to the left, the recirculated-air mode is switched on.

Climatronic
The Climatronic can have a sensor that measures the air recirculation mode and automatically turns on if there is an increased concentration of pollutants in the incoming air.

When the pollutant concentration decreases to the normal level, the recirculated air mode is automatically switched off.

Automatic switch-on/switch-off of the air recirculation function can be set in the Infotainment screen, by pressing the MENU button on the Climatronic and by then pressing the function surface → **Automatic air recirculation**.

The air recirculation function is shut off by pressing the AUTO button; this may be carried out automatically depending on the moisture conditions in the vehicle interior.

! WARNING
The air recirculation should not be left switched on for a long period of time because then there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. As soon as the windows mist up, turn the air recirculation mode off immediately - there is a risk of accident!

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Climatronic - Air Care function

Fig. 156
Example display of the Air Care function

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

The Air CareFunction reduces pollutant penetration contained in the outside air into the vehicle.

When the function is activated, the air in the vehicle is circulated and cleaned at the same time. The cleaning process is displayed by the zones displayed in the Infotainment screen.

› To **switch on/off**, press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic control panel, and then tap on the function surface **Air Care** → **Active** on the Infotainment screen» Fig. 156.

To ensure correct Air Care functioning, all doors and windows including the panoramic sliding/tilting roof must be closed.

When opening a door or a window, the corresponding message is displayed in the Infotainment screen.

Air outlet vents

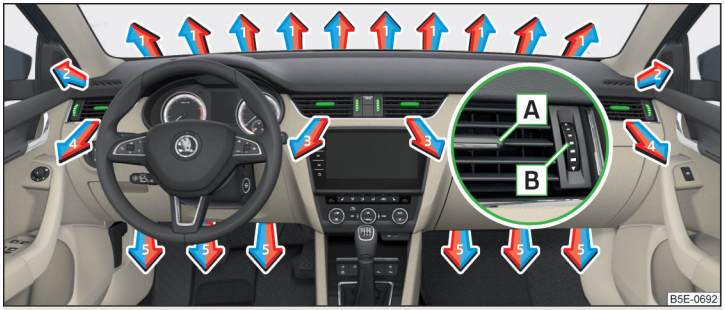

Fig. 157 **Air vents at the front**

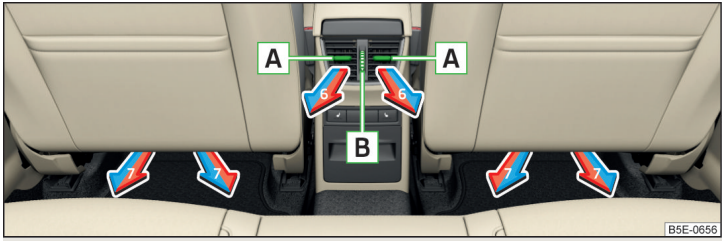

Fig. 158 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe ! on page 114 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 157 and **6** » Fig. 158, and the vents can be opened and closed individually.

The setting of the airflow direction is carried out by moving the adjustment element A » Fig. 157 or » Fig. 158 in the desired direction.

› To **open**, turn the controller B » Fig. 157 or» Fig. 158 upwards.
› To**close**, turn the controller B » Fig. 157 or» Fig. 158 downwards.

Depending on the setting of the air distribution, the air stream comes out of the following air vents.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Air vents » Fig. 157 and » Fig. 158
/	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 6
	4, 5, 7
	3, 4, 5, 6, 7

CAUTION

Do not cover the air vents - the air distribution could be compromised.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

The **auxiliary heating** heats the vehicle interior as well as the engine. For heating, fuel is consumed from the fuel tank.

The **auxiliary ventilation** enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior with the engine switched off, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

The auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) (referred to just as auxiliary heating in the following) ensures the heating / ventilation depending on the setting of the air conditioning and the air outlet vents before switching off the ignition.

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the auxiliary heating, do not park the car in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. - risk of fire.

CAUTION

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

- The auxiliary heating switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- In the engine compartment, water vapour may form during the operation of the heater.

Power on / off

Fig. 159 **Button for switching on / off (Climatronic / manual air conditioning)**

Read and observe and on page 119 first.

Functional requirements of the auxiliary heating.

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning light is not illuminated in the instrument cluster).

Manual on / off

▶ Using the button on the operating part of the air conditioning» Fig. 159.

▶ Using the (switch on) / OFF (switch off) button on the remote control operation.

Automatic on / off

▶ Via an enabled pre-selection time in Infotainment.

▶ According to the environmental conditions.

After switching off, the coolant pump and the auxiliary heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating.

Setting automatic on / off

Climatronic: On the Climatronic, press the MENU button → tap the function surface on the Infotainment screen. There will be a display of the last set operating mode with the option to change this.

Manual air conditioning: in Infotainment in the menu CAR/ tap the function surface.

Then follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen.

When automatic switching on is activated, the warning light in the symbol button lights up for about 10 seconds after the ignition is turned off » Fig. 159.

Operation in Infotainment

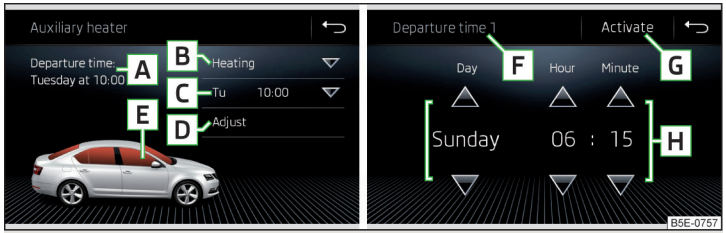

Fig. 160 **Auxiliary heater: Main menu/set preset time**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Call up the main menu

› On the Climatronic, press the MENU button → tap the function surface on the Infotainment screen.

Or vehicles with manual air conditioning:

› In Infotainment in the menu CAR/ tap the function surface.

Function surfaces and screen display » Fig. 160

- **A** Departure time - Day and time when the vehicle is to be ready for use
- **B** Setting the operating mode (heating / ventilation)
- **C** List of pre-selected times, activation / deactivation of the preset time
- **D** Set the preset times 1-3 and the duration (10-60 minutes)
- **E** When heating the windows are shown in red / with continuous aeration, the windows are shown in blue
- **F** Currently displayed preset time
- **G** Activation of the currently displayed preset time
- **H** Setting the departure time: Day, hour, minute

Only one preset time can be active. The activated preset time will be deactivated again after it has started automatically. For the next start, activate one of the preset times.

Note

▪ In the selection of the day in the preset time, there is an option between Sunday and Monday without the specified day. If this setting is selected, the vehicle will be ready for use at the selected time, regardless of the current day.

▪ If a different time is set, the activated preset time is automatically deactivated. The preset time must be reactivated.

Radio remote control

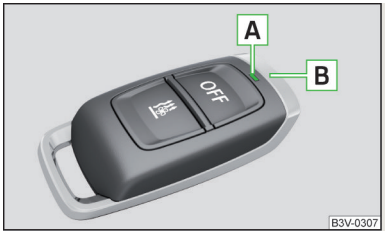

Fig. 161
Radio remote control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 119 first.

Description of the remote control » Fig. 161

- **A** Warning light
- **B** Aerial
- Switch on the auxiliary heating
- **OFF** Switch off the auxiliary heating

The auxiliary heating is switched on/off by pressing the button. To switch the remote control on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial B » Fig. 161 pointing upwards. Do not cover the antenna with the fingers or the palm of the hand.

Display warning light A	Meaning
Lights up green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating is blocked, e.g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the auxiliary heating.
Flashes red for 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 293.

! CAUTION

- The remote control must be protected against moisture, severe shocks and direct sunlight - Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the remote control.
- The range of the remote control with a charged battery is a few hundred metres (depending on obstructions between the remote control and the vehicle, weather conditions, the battery condition etc.).

Infotainment

Introductory information

Important information

Introduction to the subject

WARNING

- Only use Infotainment in such a way that you have control of the vehicle in every traffic situation (e.g. Do not write text messages while driving, do not link or connect the telephone, do not work with the contact list, do not enter any destinations, do not connect WLAN or SmartLink etc.)- Otherwise there is a risk of an accident!
- Always route the connection cable of the external device such that is does not restrict you when driving.

WARNING

- Adjust the volume to ensure that acoustic signals from outside the vehicle, e.g. sirens from emergency vehicles, can be heard at all times.
- High volumes can cause hearing damage!

CAUTION

In some countries, some Infotainment functions can no longer be selected when the vehicle is running faster than a certain speed. This is not a malfunction, but complies with the national legal regulations.

Mobile devices and applications

Fig. 162
QR code with reference to web pages for checking the compatibility of devices

The availability of some of the functions described in this Owner's Manual depends on the type of device to be connected and the applications installed in it.

Compatibility
On the ŠKODA pages, check to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile devices. This verification is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 162 **or** after typing the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

Applications
Applications can be installed in external devices (e.g. Mobile, tablet) making it possible to display additional information on the Infotainment screen or to operate Infotainment.

Due to the variety of applications as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not work in all external devices. ŠKODA AUTO can accept no liability for their proper function.

The range of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the Infotainment model, vehicle and region.

Infotainment Overview

Description - Infotainment Columbus

Fig. 163 **Infotainment Columbus**

⏻ Switches Infotainment on/off
1 MENU Overview of Infotainment menu » page 128
2 HOME - Display of the main screen “HOME” » page 129
+ Volume up
− Volume down
3 Touch screen » page 124

Description – Infotainment Amundsen

Fig. 164 **Infotainment Amundsen**

⏻ Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
⊙ Control dial for calls and confirmations
1 RADIO - *Radio* menu » page 144
2 MEDIA - *Media* menu » page 147
3 PHONE - *Telephone* menu » page 158
4 VOICE - Voice control » page 130
5 NAV - *Navigation* menu » page 176
6 APP - SmartLink menu » page 171
7 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 198
8 MENU Overview of Infotainment menu » page 128
9 Touch screen » page 124

Description – Infotainment Bolero

Fig. 165 **Infotainment Bolero**

⏻ Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
⊙ Control dial for calls and confirmations
1 RADIO - *Radio* menu » page 144
2 MEDIA - *Media* menu » page 147
3 PHONE - *Telephone* menu » page 158
4 VOICE - Voice control » page 130
5 SETUP - Infotainment settings » page 133
6 APP - SmartLink menu » page 171
7 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 198
8 MENU Overview of Infotainment menu » page 128
9 Touch screen » page 124

Description – Infotainment Swing

Fig. 166 **Infotainment Swing**

- ⏻ Left control dial for switching Infotainment on and off; volume adjustment
- ⊙ Control dial for calls and confirmations
- 1 RADIO - *Radio* menu » page 144
- 2 MEDIA - *Media* menu » page 147
- 3 Depending on equipment fitted:
  - PHONE - *Telephone* menu » page 158
  - MUTE Muting
- 4 SETUP - Infotainment settings » page 141
- 5 Depending on equipment fitted:
  - APP - Menu SmartLink (Press) / turn on / off the voice control function SmartLink (hold) » page 171
  - SOUND - Sound settings » page 141
- 6 CAR - Vehicle system settings » page 198
- 7 Touch screen » page 124
- 8 SD card slot » page 150

External module

applies to Infotainment Amundsen and Columbus.

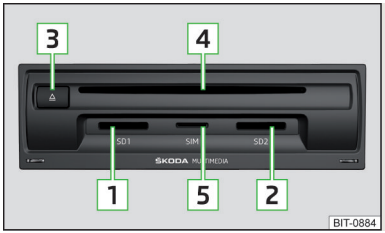

Fig. 167
Example of an external module

Depending on the vehicle configuration and Infotainment type, all the following elements must not be included in the external module.

The external module is located in the storage compartment on the front passenger side » Fig. 167.

- 1 SD1 card slot
- 2 SD2 card slot
- 3 ⏏ - CD / DVD eject button
- 4 CD / DVD slot
- 5 SIM card slot

Touch screen

The Infotainment can be operated by **lightly touching the screen with your fingers**.

The brightness level of the screen can be set by » page 133 or » page 141.

To protect the screen, a suitable protective film for touch screens can be used.

The screen can be cleaned with a soft cloth and pure spirit if necessary.

Infotainment operation

Infotainment operation

Screen areas

Fig. 168
Screen areas

Description of the display » Fig. 168

A Status line with time and outdoor temperature data and other information
B Information and the operation of the current menu
C Function surfaces of the current menu

Operation principles

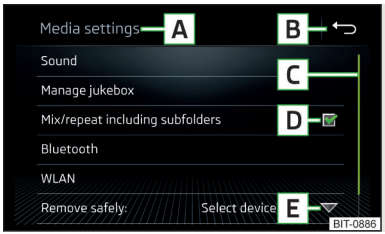

Fig. 169
Screen display

Description of the display » Fig. 169

A Identification of the current menu
B Return to the higher-level menu
C Scroll symbol – you can move in the menu by moving your fingers up or down on the scroll symbol
D Menu item with “Checkbox”
  ▶ ☑ - Function is switched on
  ▶ ☐ - Function is switched off
E ▼ Opens a sub-menu of the menu item with a “pop-up window”

Functional surfaces
The screen areas which confirm a function or a menu are called “**function surfaces**”.
▶ **White text** - the surface is active and thus selectable
▶ **Grey text** - the surface is inactive and therefore not selectable
▶ **Green frame** - currently selected surface

Selecting menu/menu item/function
▶ Drag your finger over the screen in the required direction.
▶ By moving your finger over the slider
▶ Turning the knob ⊙ (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

Confirming menu/menu item/function
▶ By tapping on the function surface.
▶ By pressing the knob ⊙ (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

Returning to the higher-level menu
▶ By tapping on the function surface ⮌.
▶ By tapping on the screen outside of the “pop-up window”.
▶ By pressing the corresponding button next to the screen (e.g. in the *Media* menu, by pressing the sensor field/the MEDIA button) (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

Selecting the menu item/function value
▶ ⊙ - Selected menu item/function value
▶ ○ - Deselected menu item/function value

Set value
▶ By tapping on the function surface ◁ or ▷ the bottom of the screen.
▶ By touching or moving your finger over the scale.
▶ Turning the knob ⊙ (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

i Note
Depending on the equipment, the Infotainment can also be operated by means of the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel. Further information » page 52.

Operating the menus

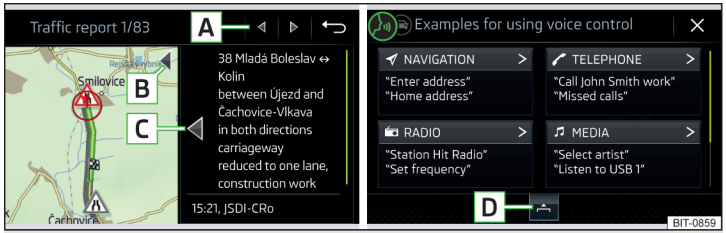

Fig. 170 **Operating the menus**

Operating the menus » Fig. 170

A Browse the menu- List entries

B Enlargement/reduction of the menu window (applies to the infotainment Columbus)

C Expand/reduce the menu window (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)

D Open / close the menu window

× Close the menu window

Alphanumeric keyboard

Fig. 171
Example of the keyboard display

The alphanumeric keypad is used to enter for letters, numbers and characters.

Description of the alphanumeric keyboard » Fig. 171

A Input line

B Context-dependent:
- ⇧/⇧ - Toggle upper case to lower case and vice versa
- §&# - Switch to special characters
- 123 - Switch to numbers

C Context-dependent:
- 123 - Switch to numbers
- ABC - Switch to Latin letters
- АБВ - Switch to Cyrillic letters

⋮≡ - Display of visited entries (the number of visited entries is displayed in the function surface)

⌫ Erase the entered characters

◿ By holding the variants of each type are displayed.

🌐 / 🌍 Switch between keyboards with specific characters of the selected languages » page 134 or » page 141

␣ Enters a blank

< Move the cursor within the input line to the left

> Move the cursor within the input line to the right

OK Confirmation of the entered number

Search

While entering characters, a search is made for corresponding entries.

The entry such as a telephone contact to be searched for must be entered along with the special characters (diacritics).

By tapping on the function surface ⋮≡ a list of matching entries opens.

Gesture control

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

Fig. 172
Example of a menu with gesture control

Some menus of Infotainment Columbus can be operated by means of hand gestures by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the Infotainment screen.

The menus with gesture control feature the symbol in the lower right-hand corner » Fig. 172.

Switching the function on / off
The gesture control function is switched on at the factory.

› To **switch the function on/off**, tap the sensor field MENU and then the function surface → **Screen** → **Hand gesture** .

Acoustic confirmation of gesture
When the function is switched on, Infotainment indicates that a gesture has been recognised by means of an acoustic signal.

› To **activate/deactivate** the acoustic confirmation of a recognised gesture, tap the sensor field MENU and then the function surface → **Screen** → **Audible hand gesture feedback**.

Visual confirmation of the gesture
When the function is switched on and a gesture has been recognised, Infotainment shows an animation with the bottom bar moving in the direction of the hand movement.

› To **activate/deactivate** the visual confirmation of a recognised gesture, tap the sensor field MENU and then the function surface → **Screen** → **Visual hand gesture feedback**.

Switching Infotainment on/off

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.
› To **switch on** Infotainment, press ⏻.
› To **switch off** Infotainment, hold ⏻.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing
› To **switch on/off** Infotainment, press ⏻.

Automatic switch-on of Infotainment
If Infotainment was not turned off with ⏻ before the ignition was turned off, it will automatically switch on when the ignition is switched on.

Automatic switch-off of Infotainment
If the vehicle key is pulled out of the ignition lock while Infotainment is switched on, Infotainment will switch off automatically.

If the vehicle is fitted with the starter button, Infotainment will switch off automatically after the engine is switched off and the door is opened.

With the ignition off, Infotainment will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

Infotainment turns off automatically under certain circumstances. Infotainment informs of this via a text message on the Infotainment display.

Restart of Infotainment
If Infotainment stops responding (if it “freezes”), it can be restarted by pressing and holding ⏻ for longer than 10 s.

Show time and date on the screen

Standby mode
With the ignition off and infotainment (standbyMode), it is possible to display the time and date in the Infotainment screen.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero
▶ To switch the time and date display on/off, press the MENU sensor field and then tap the function surface → **Screen** **Show clock in standby mode**.

The display mode can be changed by finger motion across the screen sideways.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
▶ To switch the time and date display on/off, press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Screen** → **Show clock in standby mode**.

"Screen off" mode

With the ignition on and functions **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** and **Display clock when screen is off** » page 133 enabled, it is possible to display the time and date when the Infotainment screen is switched off.

The display type depends on the display mode selected in standby mode (does not apply to the Infotainment Swing).

Adjusting the volume

Every change in volume is displayed on the screen.

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

› To **increase the volume**, tap the function surface .
› To **decrease the volume**, tap the function surface .
› To **activate/deactivate the mute setting**, tap the sensor field .

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing

› To **increase the volume**, turn the controller clockwise.
› To **decrease the volume**, turn the controller anticlockwise.
› To **mute**, turn the controller anticlockwise to 0.
› **or:** To **activate/deactivate the mute setting**, press the button MUTE (applies to Infotainment Swing).

The following symbol appears on the screen when the sound is muted .

If, at the time of muting, sound is being played from a source in the *Media* menu, then the playback is stopped.

CAUTION

- High volumes can cause sound resonance in the vehicle.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.

Infotainment menus

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

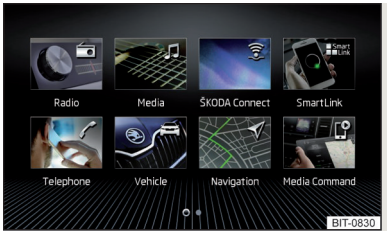

Fig. 173
Overview of Infotainment menus: Grid display

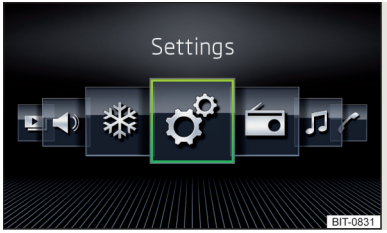

Fig. 174
Overview of Infotainment menus: List

› To **display the overview of Infotainment menus**, press the MENU sensor field.
› To **set the display mode**, press the button MENU sensor field and then tap the function surface → **Screen** → **Menu:**.
› Select the **Grid** » Fig. 173 or **Horizont. Display** » Fig. 174 option.

Overview of Infotainment menus

- *Radio* menu » page 144
- *Media* menu » page 147
- "ŠKODA Connect" Online Services » page 13
- *SmartLink* menu » page 171
  With a connection established to an external device, the actual connection is shown instead of a symbol
  - **Android Auto** » page 172
  - **Apple CarPlay** » page 173
  - **MirrorLink®** » page 174
- *Telephone* menu » page 158

- Vehicle system settings » page 198
- *Navigation* menu » page 176 (Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- List of traffic reports (TMC) (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen) » page 196
- *Media Command* menu (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen) » page 156
- *Images* menu » page 153
- - Sound settings » page 133
- *Air conditioning* menu » page 116
- Infotainment settings » page 133

Main screen “HOME”

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

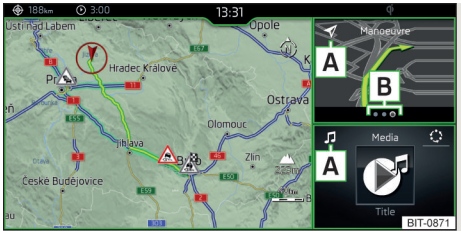

Fig. 175
HOME main screen

› To display the information, tap the HOME sensor field.

The “HOME” main screen contains three windows.

In the left window » Fig. 175 the navigation map is always displayed. By tapping the screen within this window, the *Navigation* main menu is displayed.

The contents of the window to the right can be changed. By holding the function surface A, the list of selectable menus is displayed.

By tapping the function surface A or by double-finger tapping on the screen within each window, the appropriate main menu is displayed.

If there are other pages in the window, then the associated symbols are displayed in area B. By moving your finger across the screen within each window, it is possible to display these pages.

Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard is **automatically displayed** if there are at least two non-selected menu items after turning on Infotainment, or if a new personalisation user account has been selected.

› For **manual display** in Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen and Bolero, tap the MENU sensor field and then tap on the function surface → **Configuration wizard**.
› For **manual display** in Infotainment Swing, press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Configuration wizard**.

The Configuration wizard allows you to set the following menu items in sequence.

- Identification of the personalisation user account » page 57
- Time and date format
- Storing the radio station with the strongest reception signal at present
- Pairing and connecting a phone to Infotainment
- Home address (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- Setting “ŠKODA Connect” online services

The selected menu item is marked with the ✓ symbol.

Operating using an application in the external device

Some Infotainment functions can be operated using an application in the supported external device.

For the complete functionality of the application, data transmission from external devices must be activated and, if necessary, operation of the Infotainment via the application must be approved.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

› Activate data transfer in Infotainment. To do so, tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA Apps**.
› Release Infotainment operation using the application. To do so, tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface Tap→ **Mobile device data transfer** → **Operation via apps:** → **Confirm/Allow** .
› Connect Infotainment to an external device via WLAN» page 169.
› In the external device, launch an application for Infotainment operation (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

Applies to Infotainment Swing

› Activate data transfer in Infotainment. Press the SETUP button and then tap on the function surface **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**.

Note

The description of Infotainment operation ŠKODA Media Command is part of the application.

Voice control

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

The navigation, telephone, radio and media menu can be operated by voice commands.

The voice control system can be used either by the driver or by the front passenger.

Function requirements for voice control

✓ Infotainment is switched on.
✓ There will be no telephone call using a phone connected to Infotainment.
✓ The parking aid is not active.

Requirements for optimum voice command recognition

- The voice commands must only be issued when the symbol is displayed on the Infotainment screen and the input tone has completely faded.
- Speak at your normal volume without intonation and long pauses.
- Avoid bad pronunciation.
- Close the doors and windows in order to avoid disturbing environmental influences on the function of the voice commands.
- You are recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that the sound of your voice is not drowned out by the increased ambient noise.
- During voice control, limit additional noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.

WARNING

The emergency number should be dialled manually. Your voice commands may not be recognised in such situations. The telephone connection may not be established or the connection may take too much time to complete.

CAUTION

- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.
- For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. Infotainment indicates this fact through a text message that is displayed on the screen after setting the Infotainment language.

Note

During voice control, no nav. announcements and traffic announcements are played.

Voice control on / off

Fig. 176
Voice control: Main menu

Switching on

› Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel **or** the VOICE sensor field on the Infotainment (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus).

The **main menu** is displayed » Fig. 176.

Switching off

› Press the button twice on the multifunction steering wheel **or** the VOICE sensor field on the Infotainment twice (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus).
› **or**: Issue the voice command "**End voice control**".

Operation principle

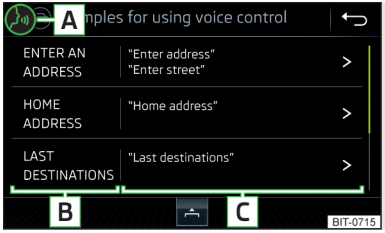

Fig. 177
Example of screen display

In the voice control main menu » Fig. 176 *on page 130* There are basic voice commands for the individual menus.

Other voice commands are displayed by tapping the respective function surface, if required, by issuing the name of respective command (e.g. navigation). The screen shows the following » Fig. 177.

A Context-dependent:
- The system is waiting for a voice command
- The system recognises a voice command
- The system plays a message
- Voice command entry was stopped

B Available list entries

C Possible voice commands

> Display other possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be issued, are indicated in “quotation marks”.

Note

The display of the voice control symbols A » Fig. 177 are dependent of the equipment fitted also on the display of the instrument cluster.

Voice commands

Enter

The voice commands must only be issued when the symbol is displayed on the Infotainment screen and the input tone has completely faded. The input tone can be switched on / off. To do so, tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Voice control**.

It is not necessary to wait for the end of message playback when Infotainment is playing a message. The Infotainment message can be acknowledged by tapping the VOICE sensor field (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus) or pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel. Then a voice command can be issued. The voice control is hereby much faster.

Stop

This allows for more time for input of the voice command (e.g. in the list of visited contacts).

The process for the voice command input can be stopped by moving a finger up/down across the screen or by turning the controller (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus).

When stopping, the symbol changes from to .

Restore

The procedure for voice command input can be restarted in one of the following ways.
- By tapping on the function surface .
- By tapping the VOICE sensor field on the Infotainment (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus).
- By pressing the key on the multifunction steering wheel.

Not recognising a voice command

If a voice command is not detected three times in succession from Infotainment, then the voice control is stopped.

Correction of a voice command input

A voice command can be corrected, modified or re-entered by tapping the VOICE sensor field (does not apply to Infotainment Columbus) or pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel. However, this is only possible as long as the symbol appears on the screen.

You do not have to wait until the voice command is recognised by Infotainment.

Voice commands can be used during voice control

Voice command	Operation
“Back”	Return to the previous menu
“Help”	reproducing and displaying possible voice commands

Voice commands that can be used while browsing the list entries

Voice command	Operation
“Next page”	Browse menu / list / directory
“Previous page”	
“First page”	
“Last page”	

Additional Information

Navigation - applies to Infotainment Columbus
If the set Infotainment language matches with the language of the currently selected country when entering the destination, then the destination address is entered **in one step**.

The voice command **“Navigate”** and immediately the city, street and street number (if it is included in the navigation data) Interest (POI) or a contact with the previously stored address, can be issued.

Navigation - applies to Infotainment Amundsen
To the destination, you are first required to issue the command**“enter address”** and then follow Infotainment instructions.

It is not necessary to spell city and street names if the entered destination is located in a country that has no voice control available for the language.

Online POI search – applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen
When “Infotainment Online” » page 18 services are activated, a POI search can also be carried out online by issuing the voice command **“Find online POI”**.

Radio
In order for a radio station can be selected using voice command, the station must be stored in the list of available stations » page 145 or in the preset list » page 145.

Updating the Infotainment software

Fig. 178
Available software updates on the ŠKODA websites

The software update ensures optimum operation of Infotainment (e.g. Compatibility with new phones).

Information on Infotainment compatibility can be found on the following ŠKODA Internet pages. This is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 178 **or** after entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero
- To **determine the software version**, tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **System information**.
- To **start the software update**, tap the MENU sensor field and then tap the function surface → **System information** → **Update software**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing
- To **determine the software version**, press the SETUP button, then tap on the **System information** function surface.
- To **start the software update**, press the SETUP button, then tap on the **System information** → **Update software** function surface.

Infotainment settings - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Infotainment system settings

sound settings

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface .

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Radio announcements** - Volume adjustment of traffic announcements (TP)
  - **Navigation announcements** - Volume adjustment of navigation announcements (does not apply to infotainment Bolero)
  - **Voice control** - volume setting for voice output
  - **Maximum switch-on volume** - Setting the maximum volume when switching on Infotainment
  - **Speed-dependent volume adjustment** - Increases the volume as speed increases
  - **Bluetooth audio:** - Volume setting of the device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile
    - **Quiet** - Low volume
    - **Medium** - Medium volume
    - **Loud** - High volume
  - **Entertainment fading while parking** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) when the parking aid is activated
  - **Entertainment fading (nav. announcements)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) in the event of a navigation announcement
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equalizer
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **CANTON Equaliser** - Setting the equaliser
  - **Individual**- Adjustment of treble, mid and bass
  - **Profile** - Setting of the profile (e.g. **Rock, Classical** and so on.)
- **CANTON optimisation** -Setting the optimum room sound perception
  - **All areas** - Setting optimised for the whole vehicle interior
  - **Front** - Setting optimised for the front seats
  - **Driver** - Setting optimised for the driver
- **CANTON surround** - Setting the surround sound level (“-9 ”Stereo / “+9”full surround)
- **Subwoofer** - Subwoofer volume settings
- **Sound focus** -Setting the optimum room sound perception
  - **All areas** - Setting optimised for the whole vehicle interior
  - **Driver** - Setting optimised for the driver
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **No navigation sound during call** - Switching on / off the nav. announcements during a telephone call (not applicable to Infotainment Bolero)

Display settings

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface Tap→ **Screen**.

- **Menu:** Setting the Infotainment menu display
  - **Horizont. Display** - Horizontal display » Fig. 174 *on page 128*
  - **Grid display** - Grid display » Fig. 173 *on page 128*
- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable/disable the automatic power off function
- **Display clock when screen is off** - Time and date display when the screen is switched off
- **Brightness:** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **Menu button tone** - Turn on / off the acoustic signal by pressing a button next to the screen
- **Hand gesture** - Enable/disable the gesture control using hand movements via the Infotainment screen (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Visual hand gesture feedback** - Enable/disable the animation when a gesture is recognised (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Audible hand gesture feedback** - Enable/disable acoustic signal when a gesture is recognised (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Animation when finger near screen** - Turn the proximity sensors on/off (When the function is on, e.g.*Navigation* will be shown in the main menu when moving a finger towards the bottom bar with the function surfaces on the screen)
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Time and date**.

- **Clock time source:** Time source settings: manual/GPS (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Summer (DST)** - Switches summer time on/off
- **Automatic summer time** - Switches the automatic switch to summer time on/off
- **Time zone:** - Select the time zone
- **Time format:** - Set the time format

- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Set the date format

Setting the Infotainment language

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

In some languages, after selecting the function surface **Female** and **Male** are displayed for the choice of voice prompts for Infotainment.

Note

- When a language is selected which does not support voice control, Infotainment will indicate this with a message on the screen.
- The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Additional keypad language settings

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Additional keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow characters other than those in the currently selected language to be entered.

Unit settings

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface Tap on→ **Units** .

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Fuel consumption:** - Consumption units
- **CNG consump.:** - CNG consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tyre pressure

Settings for data transfer

Activated data transfer enables data transfer between the Infotainment system and the external device or the operation of some Infotainment functions using the applications of the external device (e.g. ŠKODA Media Command).

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Mobile device data transfer**.

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Turning data transfer on and off
- **Use apps to operate:** - Setting Infotainment operation via the applications of the external device (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
  - **Deactivate** - Deactivation of Infotainment operation via an external device
  - **Confirm** - Infotainment operation with required confirmation
  - **Allow** - Infotainment operation without required confirmation

Voice control settings

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Voice control**.

- **Example commands (Infotainment system)** - Turn on/off display of the menu containing voice commands in the Infotainment screen when voice control is activated
- **Example commands (instrument cluster)** - Turn on/off display of the menu containing basic voice commands when voice control is activated
- **Voice control session start tone** - Switch on/off the audible signal when turning on the voice control
- **Voice control session end tone** - Switch on/off the audible signal when voice control ends
- **Input tone in voice dialogue** - Switch on/off the audible signal for the voice input
- **End tone in voice dialogue** - Switch on/off the audible signal for the voice input

Safe removal of the external device

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface **Remove safely:** and select the external device to be removed.

Reset to factory settings

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Factory settings**.

In this menu, all or only chosen settings can be restored.

Bluetooth® Settings

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch on/off Bluetooth® function
- **Visibility:** Switch the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for other Bluetooth® devices on/off
- **Name:** - Changing the name of the Bluetooth® device
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of paired Bluetooth ® devices
- **Find devices** - Search for available Bluetooth® devices
- **Bluetooth audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Activate/deactivate the ability to connect a Bluetooth® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

Wireless settings

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **WLAN**.

- **WLAN** - List of available hotspots of external devices
  - **WLAN** - Turn on / off Infotainment wireless
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establishing a secure connection to the hotspot of the external device using WPS (applies to Infotainment Amundsen)
  - **Manual settings** - Setting the parameters for search and connection to the hotspot of the external device
    - **Network name** - Enter the Hotspot name
    - **Network key** - Setting the access password
    - **Security level:** Security setting (WPA2 always set)
    - **Connect** - Connection establishment
  - **Search** - Search / Restore the list of available hotspots
- **Mobile hotspot** - Setting Infotainment hotspot (in the function surface the symbol displayed with the number of connected external devices)
  - **Mobile hotspot** - Switching on / off Infotainment hotspot
  - **WPS quick connection (WPS button)** - Establishing a secure connection to the Infotainment hotspot via WPS (applies to Amundsen)
  - **Hotspot (WLAN) settings** - Setting the parameters for the connection to Infotainment hotspot
    - **Security level:** Security setting (WPA2 always set)
    - **Network key** - Input of the access password
    - **SSID: ...** - Name of the infotainment Hotspots
    - **Do not send network name (SSID)** -Turn Infotainment hotspot visibility on/off
    - **Store** - Storage of Infotainment hotspot parameters

Network settings

Applies to the infotainment Columbus with seated in the external module SIM card as well as for the Infotainment Amundsen with the connected Carstick-Device.

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **Network**.

- **Network settings** - Sets the data connection from the associated telephone service provider (APN settings)
  - **Access point name: ...** - Setting of the access point name
  - **User name: ...** - Setting of the user name
  - **Password: ...** - Password setting
  - **Authentication:** Sets the check type
    - **Normal** - Without verification
    - **Safe** - Verification required
  - **Reset Access Point (APN)** - Delete the parameters for the network setting
  - **Store** - Storage of the parameters for the network setting
- **Network provider: ...** - Selection of the network provider (the menu item is visible when the SIM card is inserted in the external module or CarStick device)
- **Data roaming** - Enable / disable the use of data roaming connection
- **Current connection details** - Display of information on data downloaded (by tapping the function button **Reset** the data information is deleted)
- **Data connection:** Usage settings for the data connection (Internet connection) of the SIM card inserted in the external module or CarStick device
  - **Off** - Use of the data connection is not possible
  - **Ask** - Use of the data connection is only possible after it has been confirmed
  - **On** - Use of the data connection is possible at any time

ŠKODA Connect Online Services settings

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **ŠKODA Connect (Online Services)**.

- **Services Management** - Information on licensing of the respective online services and the option to switch them on / off
- **registration** - Enter the registration PIN code for online services (in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal receive)

System information

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → **System information**.

The information available will be displayed, for example regarding the Infotainment hardware and software, the Bluetooth® software version, the navigation database version, etc.

› To **Update** the Infotainment software, Bluetooth® software version, etc., tap on the function surface **Update software**.
› To **Update** the navigation database and the POI categories created in the user profile on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, tap on the function surface **Online update**.

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting ranges

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ .

- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Scan** - Automatic playback of short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range
- **Arrow buttons:** - Setting the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Preset list** - Change between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Station list** - Change between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic programme (TP)** - Switches TP traffic programme on/off
- **Delete presets** - Deletes station buttons
- **Station logos** - Manual management of station logos
- **Radio text** - Switching the text display radio (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Advanced settings** - Other settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range (FM and DAB)

Advanced settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **Auto-save station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **Region for station logo:** - Setting the region for station logo
- **Automatic frequency control (AF)** - Activate/deactivate the search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played
- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - enable/disable RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)
- **RDS Regional:** Switch on/off automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Advanced settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **Auto-save station logos**- Automatic storage of the station logos
- **DAB traffic messages** - Switch on/off DAB traffic messages
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch on/off other announcements (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB - DAB station tracking** - Switch on/off automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Automatic DAB - FM switching** - Switch on/off auto-switching from DAB to the FM broadcasting range if the DAB signal is lost
- **Switch to a similar station** - Activate/deactivate automatic switching to another station with similar content in the event of signal loss (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **L-band** - Activate/deactivate the availability of the L-band

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by (**FM**) while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

L-band
For the DAB radio reception in different countries, different broadcasting ranges are used. In some countries the DAB radio reception is only possible in the what is known as the L-band.

If no L-band DAB radio reception is possible in the country then we recommend turning off the L-band. The channel scan is therefore faster.

Media menu settings

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu ⚙.

- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Manage jukebox** - Managing (record / delete) supported files (audio / video) in the internal Infotainment memory (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Mix/repeat including subfolders** - Switching the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **WLAN** - Wi-Fi settings (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- **Video (DVD) settings** - Setting the parameters of the DVD video (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Remove safely:** - Safe removal of the external device
- **Traffic programme (TP)** - Switches traffic programme on/off

Image menu settings

› In the *Images* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙.

- **Image view:** - Image view settings
  - **Full** - Display the maximum image size while retaining the aspect ratio
  - **Automatic** - Full screen display
- **Display time:** - Set the display time for the slideshow
- **Repeat slideshow** - Switching on/off the slideshow repeat

Video DVD menu settings

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

› In the *Video DVD* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙.

Depending on the DVD, some of the following menu items are displayed.

- **Format:** - Set the screen width/height ratio
- **Audio channel:** - Select the audio channel
- **Subtitles:** - Subtitle selection
- **Enter/change PIN for parental settings** - Management of the PIN code for parental control
- **Parental control:** - Parental control settings

Settings

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙.

- **Hands-free** - Switch a call to the telephone/back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select mobile phone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings » page 134
- **User profile** - User profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - Set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Mailbox number:** - Enter the mailbox phone number
  - **Network selection:** - Select the service provider of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Priority assignment:** - Select the phone service priority of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
    - **Automatic** - Depending on the telephone service provider
    - **Telephone call** - Telephone calls are preferred
    - **Data transfer** - A data connection is preferred
  - **Sort by:** - Arrangement of telephone contact list
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
    - **1st name** - Sort by contact's first name
  - **Profile name:** Rename the profile of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Import contacts:** - Import telephone contacts
  - **Select device contacts** - Open the paired phones menu (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module - if the SIM card is inserted in the external module)
  - **Select ring tone** - Select the ring tone (depending on the connected phone)
  - **Reminder: Remember your mobile** - Turn on/off the warning mode before forgetting the phone in the vehicle (if the phone was connected to the device)
  - **Show pictures for contacts** - Switch on/off the display of the image assigned to the contact
- **Conference call** - Activates/deactivates conference calls

- **Call settings:** - Setting the phone functions of the SIM card inserted in the external module during a call (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Hold call:** - Switch the display of the option for answering an incoming call during a call on/off; determine the current divert setting
    - **On** - Turn on the display
    - **Off** - Turn off the display
    - **Request status** - Check the settings of the SIM card function
  - **Send own number:** - Sets the telephone number display for the call receiver
    - **On** - Turn on the display
    - **Off** - Turn off the display
    - **Network dependent** - Display depending the telephone service provider
    - **Request status** - Check the settings of the SIM card function
- **Delete calls** - Delete the selected call type performed via the SIM card inserted into the external module or via a telephone connected to Infotainment by the Bluetooth® profile rSAP (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **All areas** - Delete all calls
  - **Missed calls** - Delete list of missed calls
  - **Dialled numbers.** - Delete outgoing calls
  - **Received calls** - Delete list of received calls
- **Text message settings** - Text message settings for the sim card inserted in the external module or in the telephone connected to Infotainment by the Bluetooth® profile rSAP (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Standard account** - Setting for the use of text messages (only visible when the SIM card is only used for data services while a telephone is connected to the Infotainment that supports the Bluetooth® profile MAP)
    - **No standard account** - Without priority (selection of the SIM card or the connected telephone required)
    - **SIM** - A list of text messages on the SIM card
    - **MAP** - A list of text messages of the connected telephone
  - **Service centre number:** - Setting the number of SMS services of the telephone service provider
  - **Store sent text messages** - Enable / disable the storage of the text message on the SIM card
  - **Period of validity:** - Adjustment of the period in which the telephone service provider will try to deliver a text message (for example, if the recipient is not available or Infotainment is switched off.)
  - **Delete text message** - Delete the data stored on the SIM card text messages
    - **All** - Delete all text messages
    - **Inbox** - Delete the text messages received
    - **Outbox** - Delete draft text messages
    - **Sent** - Delete sent text messages
- **Telephone interface "Business"** - Turn on / off the phone function of the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
- **Use SIM card only for data connection** - **Switch on** - Activating only the data services / **Switch off** - Activating the data and telephone services of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
- **Network** - Setting of the telephone service provider for the sim card inserted in the external module or in the telephone connected to Infotainment by the Bluetooth® profile rSAP (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)/the SIM card inserted in the CarStick device (applies to Infotainment Amundsen) » page 135
- **PIN settings:** - Setting the PIN code of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **Automatic PIN entry** - Activate/deactivate storage of the SIM card PIN code
  - **Change PIN** - Change the PIN code of the SIM card
  - **Add PIN 2** - Enter the second PIN code of the SIM card (when the function **Automatic PIN entry** is on or when the SIM card supports another telephone service provider)
- **Forward calls** - Setting forwarding of incoming calls (valid for Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
  - **All calls** - Forward all incoming calls
  - **If engaged** - Forwarding incoming calls during a telephone call
  - **Unavailable** - Forwarding the incoming calls when the vehicle is outside the range of the telephone service provider signal
  - **If no answer** - Redirecting incoming calls when the incoming call is not answered

SmartLink+ menu settings

› In the main *SmartLink* menu, tap on function surface ⚙ .

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Activate/deactivate data transfer for ŠKODA applications
- *MirrorLink®* - Settings of the system MirrorLink®
  - **Allow MirrorLink® notification to be shown** - Turn the display of Mirror link® application messages on the Infotainment screen on/off

Navigation menu settings

Route options

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Route options**.

- **Suggest 3 alternative routes** - Switch on/off the menu for alternative routes (economical, fast, short)
- **Route:** - Setting the preferred route
- **Freq. Routes** - Show/hide the menu of the most frequent routes in the split screen
- **Dynamic route** - Switch on/off dynamic route recalculation due to TMC traffic reports or online traffic reports
- **Avoid motorways** - Switch on/off the non-use of motorways in the route calculation
- **Avoid ferries and motorail trains** - Switch on/off the non-use of ferries and motorail trains in the route calculation
- **Avoid toll roads** - Switch on/off use of toll roads for route calculation
- **Avoid tunnels** - Switch on/off use of tunnels for route calculation
- **Avoid routes requiring toll stickers** - Switch use of routes requiring toll stickers on/off for route calculation
  - **Show available toll stickers** - Selection of countries for which a valid toll sticker is required (routes requiring toll stickers are used for route calculation)
- **Include trailer** - Turn on / off the setting to take a trailer into account for route calculation » page 190

Map

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Map**.

- **Show road signs** - Switch on/off the display of traffic signs
- **Lane guidance** - Display of lane guidance on/off
- **Show favourites** - Switch on/off the display of favourites
- **Show POIs** - Switch on/off the display of POIs
  - **Select categories for POIs** - Selection of the displayed category POIs
  - **Show brand logos for POIs** - Switch on/off the company logos available for the POIs shown
- **Map view in the instrument cluster** - Settings of the map display in the digital instrument cluster (applies to vehicles with Infotainment Columbus and the digital instrument cluster)
  - **2D north** - two-dimensional map, aligned towards the north - the map does not rotate
  - **2D heading up** - two-dimensional map display, aligned in relation to direction of travel - the map rotates
  - **3D heading up** - three-dimensional map display
- **Traffic flow settings** - Setting the display of a traffic obstruction received from online traffic
  - **Display free-moving traffic** - Enable / disable the display of routes with free-moving transport
  - **See jam** - Enable / disable the display of routes with heavy traffic
  - **Display traffic events (symbols on map)** - Activate/deactivate the display of routes with a traffic incident

Manage memory

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Manage memory**.

- **Sort contacts:** - Setting the configuration of the phone book
  - **By surname** - Sorting by the contact surname
  - **By first name** - Sorting by the contact first name
- **Define home address** - Enter the home address
- **Delete My POIs** - Deleting own POI categories (Personal POI)
- **Update "My POIs" (SD/USB)** - Import / update your own POI categories (Personal POI)
- **Retrieve "My POIs" (online)** - Online import / update of the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal started own POI categories
- **Import destinations (SD/USB)** - Import destinations in vCard format
- **Delete user data** - Delete user data (by pressing the function surface**Delete** and confirm the deletion)
  - **Last destinations** - Delete the last destinations
  - **Dest. memory** - Delete the stored destinations
  - **Online dests** - Delete the stored online dests
  - **Routes** - Delete saved routes
  - **My points of interest (Personal POI)** - Delete the custom POIs

- **Entered cities** - Delete the history of places already entered via the address
- **Home address** - Delete the stored home address
- **Flagged destination** - Delete the flagged destination
- **Waypoints** - Delete item in the **Waypoint mode** menu (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
- **Freq. Routes** - Delete the most frequently travelled routes

Navigation announcements

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Navigation announcements**.

- **Volume** - Volume control of the nav. announcements
- **Entertainment fading (Navigation)** - Adjust the fading of the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) when navigation announcements are being made
- **Navigation announcements:** - Setting the playback method for navigation announcements (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
  - **Comprehensive** - All nav. announcements
  - **Brief** - Short nav. announcements
  - **Congestion only** - Only nav. announcements when a route is changed
- **No navigation sound during call** - Activate/ deactivate non-playback of nav. announcements during a telephone call
- **Note:"My POIs"** - Activate/deactivate an audible indication when approaching a custom POI (if supported by the imported custom POI)

Top speeds

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Speed limits**.

The maximum speed limits for the current country are displayed.

When the function is switched on **Note:National border crossed** » page 140, *Advanced settings*, display the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

Fuel options

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Fuel options**.

- **Select preferred fuel station** - Select your preferred fuel station brand (the selected station brand will be displayed in the first three positions of the list)
- **Fuel warning** -Turn on- / Off the display of a warning message with the option to visit the nearest petrol station when the fuel level reaches the reserve area

Version information

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Version information** .

A list of countries is displayed that exist for the navigation data, together with the date of the last update.

An update of the navigation data can be carried out by tapping the function surface **Update (SD/USB)** or **Update (online)** (applies to Infotainment Columbus).

The information on updating the navigation data is to be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

Advanced settings

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Advanced settings**.

- **Time display:** - Select the time display in the status line
  - - Estimated arrival time at destination
  - Estimated travelling time to the destination
- **Status line:** - Selection of the destination type, for which the status line, the route and travel time are displayed (this also determines which destination type is displayed on the map after selecting → is displayed on the map)
  - - Route destination
  - - Next waypoint
- **Note:National border crossed** - Switching the display of information on country-specific speed limits when crossing a national border on/off
- **Demo mode** - Switch on/off guidance in demo mode
  - **Define demo mode starting point** - Specifying the start point of the route guidance in the demo mode by entering the address or the current vehicle position

Infotainment settings - Swing

Infotainment system settings

Sound settings

› Press the SOUND or SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Sound**.

- **Volume** - Volume settings
  - **Maximum switch-on volume** - Setting the maximum volume when switching on Infotainment
  - **Announcements** - Adjustment of traffic announcements volume (TP)
  - **Speed-dependent volume adjustment** - Volume increases as speed increases
  - **Entertainment fading (parking)** - Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **Entertainment fading (Navigation)** - Reduction of audio volume (e.g. radio volume) for navigation announcements originating from the SmartLink application
  - **Bluetooth audio:** - Volume setting of the device connected via Bluetooth ® audio profile
- **Balance - Fader** - Sets the balance between left and right, front and rear
- **Bass - Mid - Treble** - Setting the equalizer
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen

Display settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Screen**.

- **Switch off screen (in 10 seconds)** - Enable/disable the automatic power off function
- **Display clock when screen is off** - Time and date display when the screen is switched off
- **Brightness:** - Adjusts the brightness of the screen
- **Touchscreen tone** - Switch on/off audible tone when touching the screen
- **Show clock in standby mode** - Time and date displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched on and Infotainment is switched off

Time and date settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Time and date**.

- **Time:** - Time settings
- **Time format:** - Set the time format
- **Summer (DST)** - Switches summer time on/off
- **Automatic summer time** - Switches the automatic switch to summer time on/off
- **Date:** - Date settings
- **Date format:** - Set the date format

Setting the Infotainment language

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Language**.
› Select the Infotainment language.

Additional keypad language settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Additional keypad languages**.

In this menu, a keyboard language set can be added to allow characters other than those in the currently selected language to be entered.

Unit settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Units**.

- **Distance:** - Distance units
- **Speed:** - Speed units
- **Temperature:** - Temperature units
- **Volume:** - Volume units
- **Fuel consumption:** - Fuel consumption units
- **CNG consump.:** - CNG consumption units
- **Pressure:** - Pressure units for tyre pressure

Setting data transfer

Activated data transfer enables data transfer between the Infotainment and an external device.

› Press the SETUP button and then tap on the function surface **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**.

Safe removal of the data source

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Remove safely** and select the external device to be removed.

Restore factory settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Factory settings**.

In this menu, individual settings or all settings can be restored at the same time.

Bluetooth® settings

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **Bluetooth**.

- **Bluetooth** - Switch on/off Bluetooth® function
- **Visibility:** Switch the visibility of the Bluetooth® device for other Bluetooth® devices on/off
- **1st name** - Change the name of the Bluetooth® unit
- **Paired devices** - Display the list of paired Bluetooth ® devices
- **Find devices** - Search for available Bluetooth® devices
- **Bluetooth audio (A2DP/AVRCP)** - Activate/deactivate the ability to connect a Bluetooth® audio device (e.g. MP3 player, tablet etc...)

Settings of online services ŠKODA Connect

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **ŠKODA Connect (online services)**.

- **Services Management** - Information on licensing of the respective online services and the option to switch them on/off
- **registration** - Enter the registration PIN code for online services (in the user profile on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal receive)

System information

› Press the SETUP button, then tap the function surface **System information**.

The information available will be displayed, for example regarding the Infotainment hardware and software, Bluetooth® software version, etc.

› To **Update** the Infotainment software, Bluetooth® software version, etc., tap on the function surface **Update software**.

The information on available software updates is obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/infotainment

Radio menu settings

Settings for all broadcasting ranges

› In the main *Radio* menu, tap the function surface ⚙ .

- **Scan** - Automatic playback of short portions of all available stations in the current frequency range
- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Arrow buttons:** - Setting the function of the function surfaces ◁ ▷
  - **Presets**- Switch between stations stored under the preset buttons
  - **Stations** - Switch between all available stations of the selected broadcasting range
- **Traffic programme (TP)** - Switches traffic programme on/off
- **Radio text** - Switching the text display radio (FM and DAB) on and off
- **Sort channel list:** - Sort types of radio stations in the station list (FM)
  - **Group** - Sort by transmitted program type
  - **Alphabetically** - Alphabetical sorting according to station name
- **Station logos** - Manual management of station logos
- **Delete presets** - Delete the stations stored under station buttons
- **Advanced settings** - Other settings that are different depending on the selected broadcasting range (FM and DAB)

Advanced settings (FM)

› Select the FM band in the *Radio* main menu and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **RDS Regional:** Switch on/off automatic tracking of related regional stations
  - **Automatic** - Auto-selects the station with the best reception at the moment. If you lose reception in the given the region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.
  - **Fixed** - Maintains the selected regional station continuously. When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
- **Automatic frequency control (AF)** - Activates/deactivates the search for alternative frequencies of the station currently being played
- **Radio Data System (RDS)** - enable/disable RDS function (receiving additional information from the station)
- **Sort channel list:** - Sort types of radio stations in the station list (FM)
  - **Group** - Sort by transmitted program type
  - **Alphabetically** - Alphabetical sorting according to station name

Advanced settings (DAB)

› In the *Radio* main menu, select the DAB range and tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

- **DAB traffic announcements** - Switch on/off DAB announcements
- **Other DAB messages** - Switch on/off other announcements (e.g., warnings, regional weather, sports reports, financial news)
- **DAB - DAB station tracking** - Activate/deactivate automatic DAB station tracking on another frequency or in other station groups
- **Automatic DAB - FM switching** - Enable/disable auto-switching from DAB to the FM frequency band if the DAB signal is lost

DAB program tracking
When a DAB transmitter is a part of several broadcast stations and if the current station group is not available on any other frequency, then when the signal is poor, the same station will be searched in another station group.

Automatic change from DAB to FM
In the event of bad DAB reception, the device tries to find an FM station.

The station name is followed by **(FM)** while the station is being received on the FM band. When the corresponding DAB station is received again, the system automatically switches from FM to DAB.

If a DAB station is also not available in the FM band due to poor reception, Infotainment will be switched to mute.

Media menu settings

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu ⚙ .

- **Sound** - sound settings
- **Mix/repeat including subfolders** - Switching the title display including subfolders
- **Bluetooth** - Settings for the Bluetooth® function
- **Traffic programme (TP)** - Switches traffic programme on/off
- **Remove safely:** - Safe removal of the external device

Import contactsTelephone menu settings

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ .

- **Hands-free** - Switch a call to the telephone/back to Infotainment (the menu item is displayed during a call)
- **Select mobile phone** - Search for available telephones/list of paired telephones/select telephone
  - **Find** - search for available phones
- **Bluetooth** - Bluetooth® settings » page 142
- **User profile** - User profile settings
  - **Manage favourites** - Set the function surfaces for your favourite contacts
  - **Sort by:** - Arrangement of telephone contact list
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
    - **1st name** - Sort by contact's first name
  - **Import contacts** - Import phone contacts
  - **Select ring tone** - Select the ring tone (depending on the connected phone)
- **Reminder: Remember your mobile** - Turn on/off the warning mode before forgetting the phone in the vehicle (if the phone was connected to the device)
- **Simultaneous calls** - Enable/disable the option to hold two concurrent calls

SmartLink+ menu settings

› In the main *SmartLink* menu, tap on function surface ⚙ .

- **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**- Activate/deactivate data transfer for ŠKODA applications
- *MirrorLink®* - Settings of the system MirrorLink®
  - **Connect automatically via Bluetooth** - Activate/deactivate the option of pairing and connecting the external device via Bluetooth®
  - **Allow MirrorLink® notification to be shown** - Turn the display of Mirror link® application messages on the Infotainment screen on/off

Radio

service

Introduction to the subject

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the Infotainment type, analogue radio reception of the FM and AM frequency ranges as well as DAB digital radio reception is possible.

CAUTION

- For vehicles with window antennas do not stick foil or metal coated stickers to the window - Radio signal reception could be affected.
- Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can interfere with the radio signal even causing it to fail completely.

main menu

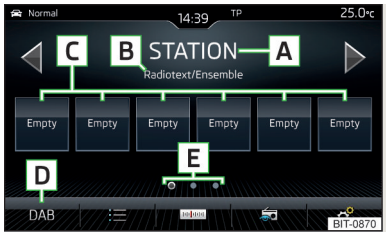

Fig. 179
Radio: Main menu (DAB)

› To **display** the main menu, press the sensor field/the RADIO button.
› **or**: Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 179

A The selected radio station (description or frequency)
B Radio Text (FM) / Description of the group (DAB)
C Preset station buttons for favourite channels
D Choice of radio range (FM / AM / DAB)
E Choice of storage group for the preferred station
◁ ▷ Changing the station
List of available stations
Manual / semi-automatic station search
Radio text display (DAB) / picture presentation (DAB)
Settings of menu *Radio* » page 136 or » page 142

Information symbol in the status line

Symbol	Meaning
TP	Traffic signal is available
no TP	Traffic signal is not available
	Signal is not available (DAB)

If the displayed station name continuously changes (dynamic text), then it is possible to fix the current text by holding your finger on the device screen in the station name area. By holding your finger in the area of the station name again, the station name is displayed in its entirety again.

Search stations and select frequency

Find stations
› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ◁ or ▷ .

Depending on the setting →**Arrow buttons:** will set an available station from the **Stations list** or a station of the current broadcast range on the **Station buttons**.

Select frequency
› To **display the value** of the currently chosen frequency, tap the function surface in the *Radio* main menu .
› To **Set the desired frequency value** in Infotainment Swing, use the slider or the function surfaces ◁ ▷ in the bottom area of the screen, if necessary, turn the controller (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)

Scan through the stations one after the other (scan)
The function scans through all the available stations in the current frequency range in succession, for a few seconds each.

› To **start** automatic scanning of the available stations, go to the main *Radio* menu and tap on the function surface Tap on→ **Scan** .
› To **end** autoplay, tap the function surface SCAN .

List of available stations

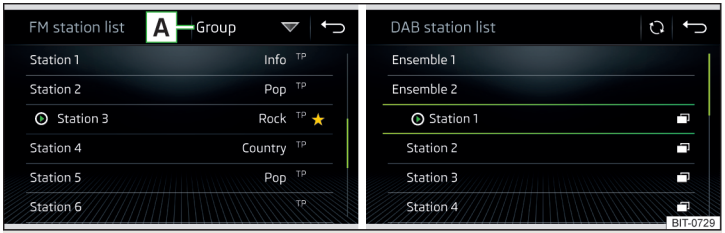

Fig. 180 **Example, the list of available FM/DAB stations**

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting area, tap the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ☰.
› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.
› To **Sort** (FM) the stations in alphabetical order, by group or genre, tap on the function surface A » Fig. 180 » !.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

› To **display** the list of available stations of the currently selected broadcasting area, tap the function surface in the *Radio* main menu ☰.
› To **play**, tap on the function surface of the desired station.
› To **filter** the stations based on the program type (e.g. Music, Sport etc.) in the FM station list (with activated RDS function) and the DAB station list (with alphabetical sorting of the channel list selected), tap the function surface A » Fig. 180.

Information symbols

Symbol	Meaning
★	Radio station, which is stored on a preset button
▶	Currently played stations
TP	Traffic information station
(e.g.) Pop	Type of program being broadcast (FM)
(e.g.) R2	Type the regional broadcast (FM)
	Signal reception is not available (DAB)
	The transmitter reception is not secure (DAB) (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing)
	Stations with image broadcasting (DAB) (does not apply to infotainment Swing)

Refresh list

Depending on Infotainment, the station list update takes place as follows:

Frequency	Columbus	Amundsen, Bolero	Swing
FM	automatically	automatically	automatically
AM	automatically	manually	manually
DAB	automatically	manually	manually

▶ To **manually** update, tap on the function surface ↻ » Fig. 180 .

! CAUTION

To sort the stations according to genre, the RDS and AF functions must be switched on. These functions can be set in the *radio* main menu in the FM band by tapping the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings**.

Preset buttons for your favourite channels

In every broadcasting range, there are station buttons available to store preferred stations C That are split into groups E » Fig. 179 *on page 144* or .

› To **save the station currectly being listen to on the main menu** *Radio*, hold down the desired function surface C until an acoustic signal sounds.
› To **save a station in the list of available stations**, keep the function surface of the desired station held down, select the memory group, and then tap the desired station button.

Station logos - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Station logos are stored in the Infotainment memory which are assigned automatically by the device when storing the stations under preset buttons.

Assign station logo automatically

› to **Disable / Enable** in the *radio* main menu, tap on the function surface ⚙ → **Advanced settings** → **Autostore station logos** .

Assign station logo manually

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Remove channel logo manually

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you wish to remove a logo.

Note

- The following image formats are supported: jpg, gif, png, bmp.
- We recommend a resolution of up to 500x500 pixels.

Station logos - Swing

The station button of a preferred station can contain the name and the station logo.

Assign a station logo

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu → **Station logos**.
› Tap on an occupied station button and select the data carrier (SD card, USB).
› Search for and select the desired station logo on the respective data carrier.

Remove station logo

› Tap on the function surface in the *Radio* main menu → **Station logos**.
› Tap on the station button from which you wish to remove a logo.
› **or**: Tap the function surface **All areas** to delete the logos of all station buttons at the same time.
› Confirm / cancel the removal.

Note

- The following image formats are supported: jpg, png.
- We recommend a resolution of up to 400x240 pixels.

TP Traffic program

› To **switch on/off** traffic monitoring in the main menu *Radio*, tap on the function surface → **Traffic programme (TP)**.

During a traffic announcement, it is possible to cancel the current announcement if necessary by deactivating traffic monitoring.

Note

- If the station that is currently set does not transmit traffic reports or the signal is not available, then Infotainment automatically searches in the background for another TP station.
- During playback in the *Media* menu or a station in the AM radio range, traffic news is received from the previously selected FM radio range.

Media

service

Main menu

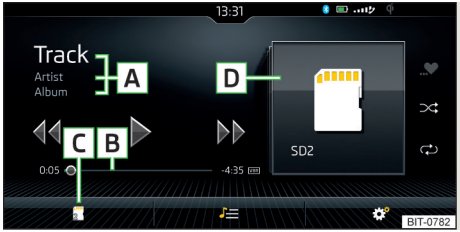

Fig. 181
Media: Main menu display example

› To **display** the main menu, press the sensor field/the MEDIA button.
› **or**: Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface ♫.

Main menu » Fig. 181

A Information on playing track
B Playback timeline with a slider
C Select the audio source
D Selected audio source / album image / album overview
♪≡ Depending on the audio source type:
- ▶ Folder/track list
- ▶ Multimedia Database

Settings of menu *Media* » page 137 or » page 143

Note

▪ Information concerning the track being played appears on the screen, if it is stored as a so-called ID3 Tag on the audio source. If no ID3 tag is available, only the title name is displayed.
▪ The remaining playback time indicated does not correspond to the actual remaining playback time for titles with variable bitrates.
▪ When an audio source is connected or plugged in, the Infotainment Columbus searches the local Gracenote® database for information on the track being played (e.g. album name, artist name, genre, album image etc.). If the information is not available and the “Infotainment Online” » page 18 service is active, Infotainment will search for this information in the Gracenote® online database.

Playback control - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right of the screen area A » Fig. 181 *on page 147* after 3 seconds from the start of track playback
Fast-reverse within the title	Press and hold ◁◁
Fast-forward within the title	Press and hold ▷▷
Play the previous title	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
	Finger movement to the right of the screen area A » Fig. 181 *on page 147* within 3 seconds of the start of track playback
Play back the next title	Tap ▷▷
	Moving your finger to the left of the screen area A » Fig. 181 *on page 147*
Switch on/off the random playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⤮
Switch on/off the repeat playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⟲
Switch on/off repeat playback of specific track	Tap ⟲
Search (applies to sources with displayable multimedia database) (applies to Infotainment Columbus)	Tap 🔎
Turn on / off playback of similar tracks according to information from what is called the ID3-Tag (applies to Infotainment Columbus)	Tap ♡

Movement within the track is possible by touching your finger on the timeline B » Fig. 181 *on page 147*.

Playback control - Swing

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Play the previous title	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
Fast-reverse within the title	Press and hold ◁◁
Fast-forward within the title	Press and hold ▷▷
Play back the next title	Tap ▷▷
Switch on/off the random playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⤮
Switch on/off the repeat playback from the current album or folder	Tap ⟲
Switch on/off repeat playback of specific track	Tap ⟲₁

Movement within the track is possible by touching your finger on the timeline B » Fig. 181 *on page 147*.

Folder / track list

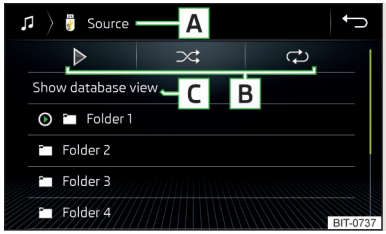

Fig. 182
Folder/Title list

› To **display** the folder / track list on the *Media* main menu, tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).
› To **playback** select a title.

Folder/track list » Fig. 182

A Selected audio source / audio source folder (movement within the folder takes place by pressing the function surface for the folder)
B Options folder/track playback
C Display of multimedia database (only available in the source directory) (not applicable to the Infotainment Swing)
♪ Select the audio source
Folder
Playlist
▷ / ⏸ Currently playing title / track playback stopped
♪ The title cannot be played (tapping on the function surface shows the cause).

Note

▪ In the list, the first 1000 entries (titles, directories etc.) are displayed with the oldest creation date.
▪ The scanning speed of the folder / track list depends on the connection speed and volume of data.

Multimedia database

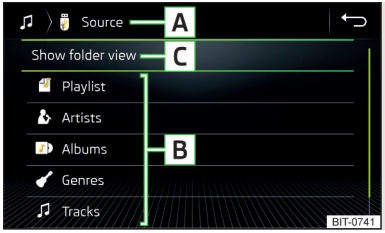

Fig. 183
Multimedia database

› To **display** the multimedia database, in the *Media* main menu tap on the function surface ♪≡ (if this display is supported by the currently selected source).

The audio files are sorted by their properties into individual categories B.

› To **playback**, select the category and then the title.

Multimedia Database » Fig. 183

A Selected audio source / Selected category / folder of the audio source
B Sorting categories

C Display of files/track list (only available in the bibliography)
♫ Select the audio source

Audio sources

Introduction to the subject

CAUTION

- Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- When connecting an external audio source, the external source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and if necessary confirmed (e.g. enabling data transfer etc).

Note

The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

CD / DVD

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

Fig. 184 **CD / DVD slot**

The CD/DVD» Fig. 184 slot is located in an external module in the glove box on the front passenger side.

› To **insert** a CD/DVD, with the labelled side facing up, press into the CD slot until it is automatically drawn in.
› To **eject**, press the button ⏏ The CD/DVD is moved to the starting position.

If the ejected CD/DVD is not removed within 10 seconds, it is retracted again for safety reasons. However, the unit will not change to the CD/DVD source.

WARNING

- The CD/DVD player is a laser product.
- On the manufacturing date, this unit was classified as a class 1 laser product in accordance with the national/international standards DIN EN 60825-1: 2008-05 and DHHS Rules 21 CFR, Subchapter J. The laser used in this class 1 laser product is so weak that there is no risk of danger when operated correctly.
- This product is designed such that the laser is restricted to the inside of Infotainment. However, the installed laser could be classified in a higher class were the housing to be removed. For this reason, never remove the Infotainment housing.

CAUTION

- Be sure to remove the CD/DVD before you try to insert a new CD/DVD. Otherwise you can damage the drive inside Infotainment.
- Only insert in the CD/DVD drive original Audio CDs/video DVDs or standard CD-R/RWs or DVD±R/RWs.
- Do not affix anything to the CD/DVDs!
- If the ambient temperature is too high or too low, the CD / DVD playback may not work.
- Damp (condensation) may affect Infotainment in cold weather or high humidity. This can cause the CD to jump or impair the play function. Once the moisture has dissipated, playback is fully functional again.

Note

- After pressing the button ⏏ it takes a few seconds for the CD / DVD to be ejected.
- On uneven or unpaved roads, playback jumps may occur.
- If the CD/DVD is physically damaged, is not readable or is inserted incorrectly the following message is displayed **Error: CD/DVD**.
- It is possible that CD/DVDs protected by copyright cannot be played back at all or only in certain circumstances.

SD card

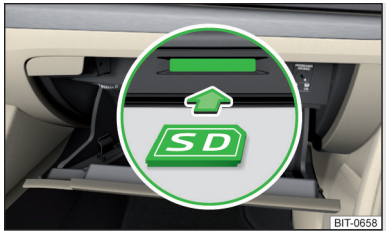

Fig. 185
Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero: Insert the SD card

Fig. 186
Swing: Insert the SD card

Inserting

› **Insert** the SD card in the slot in the direction of arrow (with the cut end facing right), until it “locks” » Fig. 185 or » Fig. 186.

Removing

› Before **removing** the SD card, go to the main *Media* menu and tap function surface → **Remove safely**.
› Press on the inserted SD memory card. The SD card “jumps” into the eject position.

CAUTION

▪ Do not use an SD card with a broken write protection “slide” - there is a risk of damage to the SD card reader!
▪ When using an SD card with an adapter, vehicle vibrations might cause the card to fall out of the adapter.

USB input

Installation location of the USB input and information regarding its use » page 93.

The USB input audio source can be connected directly or via a connecting cable.

› To **connect**, insert the USB audio source into the appropriate input.
› To **disconnect** the USB, tap on the *Media* main menu function surface → **Remove safely**.
› Disconnect the audio source from the corresponding USB input.

Load USB audio source

With the ignition, the charging process starts automatically after the USB audio source is connected (applies to audio sources where charging via the USB connector is possible).

The charging efficiency can differ compared to charging from the usual mains power supply.

Depending on the type of the connected external device and the frequency of use, the charging current may not be sufficient to charge the battery of the connected device.

Some connected audio sources may not be recognised and cannot be charged.

CAUTION

USB extension cords, or reducers may impair the function of the connected audio source.

Note

We recommend that you use extension cords from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Bluetooth® player

Infotainment allows audio files of a connected Bluetooth® player to play using the A2DP and AVRCP audio profile.

With Infotainment, multiple devices can be paired using Bluetooth® , but only one of them can be used as a Bluetooth® player.

Connect / disconnect

› To **connect** the Bluetooth® player with Infotainment- follow the same instructions as for pairing Infotainment with a telephone» page 159.
› To **disconnect** the Bluetooth® player, end the connection in the list of paired external devices » page 162.

Replace Bluetooth® player (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero)

If you would like to replace a Bluetooth®-Player which is connected to Infotainment as a phone at the same time, , then a relevant information message appears on the Infotainment screen.

› End the connection to the currently connected Bluetooth® player and repeat the pairing procedure » page 162, *Managing paired external devices*.

! CAUTION

If an external device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, then it cannot be connected using Bluetooth®.

Jukebox

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

In the Jukebox (in the Infotainment internal memory), supported audio files and » tab. *Supported audio file formats on page 152*video files » tab. *Supported video file formats on page 155*can be imported from connected external devices.

Import files

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Manage jukebox** → **Import**.
› Select the desired source.
› Select the desired folders or files.
› Tap the function surface .

Delete files

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Manage jukebox** → **Delete**.
› Select the desired folder or files in the selected category.
› Tap the function surface → **Delete**.

Show level of Infotainment memory

› Tap the function surface in the *Media* main menu → **Manage jukebox**.

information about the occupied and free space of the Infotainment memory and the number of files that cannot be imported is displayed.

i Note

- Files that have already been copied are recognised and cannot be copied again (shown in grey).
- It is not possible to copy files while simultaneously playing back audio/video files in the CD/DVD drive.

WLAN

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Infotainment allows you to play audio files from one of the external devices connected to the Infotainment WLAN.

› Connect an external device that supports the DLNA (Digital Living Network Alliance), with Infotainment WLAN» page 170.
› If necessary use the UPnP application (Universal Plug and Play) in the connected device, which allows playback to start.
› Select the audio source **WLAN** .

Supported audio sources and file formats - Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); USB devices that support MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
CD/DVD Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.	CD/DVD Drive	Audio CD (Up to 80 min); CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB); DVD±R/RW; DVD-Audio. DVD-Video	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3); UDF 1.x; UDF 2.x	-
Bluetooth® - Player	-	-	Bluetooth logs A2DP and AVRCP (1.0-1.5)	-

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Multi channels[a]	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	no	m3u pls wpl m3u8 asx
WAV	wav	Defined by the format (approx. 1.5 Mbit/s)			
MPEG-1; 2 and 2.5 layer 3	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz		
MPEG-2 and 4	aac; mp4; m4a			yes	
FLAC; Vorbis	flac; ogg	Defined by the format (approx. 5.5 Mbit/s)			

[a] Applies to Infotainment Columbus with the CANTON sound system.

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Supported audio sources and file formats - Swing

Supported audio sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); USB devices that support MSC operation	
		MTP	Devices with the Android operating system or Windows mobile (mobile phone, tablet)	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system (iPhone, iPod, iPad)	
Bluetooth® - Player	-	-	Bluetooth logs A2DP and AVRCP (1.0-1.5)	-

Supported audio file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max bit rate	Maximum sampling rate	Playlists
Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	wma	384 kbit / s	96 kHz	m3u pls wpl asx
MPEG-1; 2 and 2.5 (Layer-3)	mp3	320 kbit / s	48 kHz	

The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured audio sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Files that are protected by Digital Rights Management **(DRM)** technology cannot be played back by Infotainment.

Images

Image viewer

main menu

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

Fig. 187
Images: Main menu

› To **display** the main menu, tap the MENU sensor field and then tap the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 187

A Select the image source
/ Folder / Image List
Display the previous image
Switching on the slideshow
Switching off the slideshow
Display of the next image
Menu settings for *Images* » page 137
Rotate the image 90° anticlockwise
Rotate the image 90° clockwise
Display the initial image size while retaining the aspect ratio
Guidance to GPS coordinates (Amundsen; the display only occurs if the image contains GPS coordinates) (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen) » page 185

Control viewed images

Operation	Action
Display of the next image	Moving your finger across the screen to the left (with initial representation)
	Tap ▷▷
Display the previous image	Moving your finger across the screen to the right (with initial representation)
	Tap ◁◁
Increase the image size	Touch screen using two fingers and pull apart
	Turning the knob to the right (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)
Reduce the image size	Touch screen using two fingers and close together
	Turning the knob to the left (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)
Moving the image with an enlarged display	Drag your finger over the screen in the required direction
Rotate by 90 °	Touch screen using two fingers and move clockwise or counter clockwise (only available with start representation)
	Tap or
Maximum magnification of representation	Double finger tap on the screen
Display the initial image size while retaining the aspect ratio	Double tap on the screen again
	Pressing the knob (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)

CAUTION

Viewing images on the Infotainment screen is not supported by connected Apple devices.

Supported image file formats and sources

Supported image sources

Source	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB stick; HDD (without special software)	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	
CD / DVD (Applies to Infotainment Columbus)	CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB); DVD±R/RW	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3) ; UDF 1.x; UDF 2.x	-

Supported file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. resolution (Megapixels)
BMP	bmp	4
JP (E) G	jpg; jpeg	4; 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

Note

- The max. supported image size is 20 MB.
- The GPT standards (GUID partition table) method structured images sources are not supported by Infotainment.

Video DVD

video player

Main menu

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

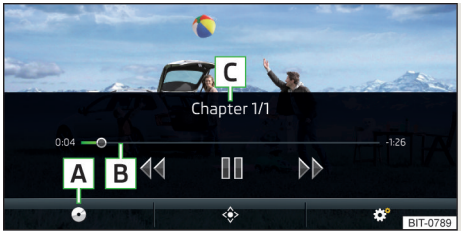

Fig. 188
Video DVD: Main menu

› to **display** the main menu, insert a CD / DVD in the corresponding slot in the external module.
› **or:** In the main menu *Media*, select the video source, display the folder/track list and start the video file.

Main menu » Fig. 188

A Select a video source
B Playback timeline
C Information for the selected video file (e.g., video title, chapter)
Display the Video DVD menu
Video DVD menu settings » page 137

Note

For safety reasons, the image display is switched off at speeds over 5 km/h. Only the sound continues. The respective message appears on the screen.

Control playback

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Play the previous video	Tap ◁◁ within 3 s from the start of the track playback

Operation	Action
Play the current video from the start	Tap ⏮ after 3 s from the start of the playback
Fast rewind	Press and hold ⏮[a]
Play the next video	Tap ⏭
Fast forward	Press and hold ⏭[a]
Forward / rewind the video at the desired time	Tapping the playback time axis B » Fig. 188 *on page 154*

[a] The longer the function surface is held, the faster the fast forward/reverse.

DVD menu

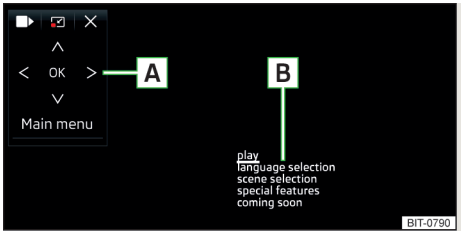

Fig. 189
DVD menu

› To **display** the DVD menu, in the main menu *Video DVD*, tap the function surface ◈ » Fig. 188 *on page 154* .

Description of the DVD menu » Fig. 189

A Operating surface

B Example of the displayed menu

Function surfaces on the operating surface

Symbol	Operation
◀■ / ■▶	Move the operating surface left / right
⊡ / ⊡	Show / hide full screen display of the operating surface
✕	Close the operating surface
< > ∨ ∧	Movement in the EPG/teletext
OK	Confirmation
Main menu	Return to *video DVD* main menu

Supported video sources and file formats

Supported video sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
SD card	SD reader	Standard size	SD, SDHC, SDXC	FAT16 VFAT FAT32 exFAT NTFS
USB devices	USB 1.x; 2.x and 3.x or higher with support of USB 2.x	MSC	USB stick; HDD (without any special software); USB devices that support MSC operation	
CD/DVD	CD/DVD Drive	CD-R / RW (Up to 700 MB); DVD±R/RW; default DVD; DVD-Video;	ISO9660; Joliet (Level 1,2,3); UDF 1.x; UDF 2.x	-

Supported video file formats

Codec type (File formats)	File suffix	Max. frames per second	Max. resolution
MPEG-1	.mpeg	30	352 x 288
MPEG-2		25	720 x 576
MPEG-4	.mp4		
QuickTime	.mov		
Matroska	.mkv		
DivX; XviD	.avi		
MJPEG			

Media Command

Operation

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

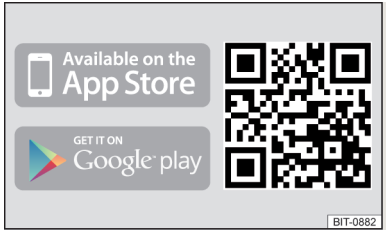

Fig. 190
ŠKODA Media Command application

The Media Commandfunction allows playback of audio files or videos in up to two **Tablets**That are connected to Infotainment via WLAN, **to control Infotainment**.

The function Media Command enables operation of tablets with the Android operating system or iOS.

The prerequisitefor the Media Command function is enabled data transfer, the application installed in the tablet “ŠKODA Media Command” as well as Infotainment control approved using the application » page 129.

“ŠKODA Media Command” application
The application is available in the App Store and Google Play online shops.

After entering the following address into the web browser, the website is opened with information on the ŠKODA mobile applications.

http://go.skoda.eu/service-app

“ŠKODA Media Command” application
› Scan the QR code » Fig. 190 .

Connect tablet with Infotainment
› Switch on the infotainment hotspot (tap on the sensor field MENU and then on the function surface → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**).
› Turn on WLAN in the tablet.
› Establish a WLAN connection in the tablet » page 169, *Connecting via WLAN*.
› In the tablet, start the “ŠKODA Media Command” application.

CAUTION
- If several devices are connected to the Infotainment system by means of WLAN, there is the danger of WLAN overloading and thus also the inability of Media Command to function properly.
- High-definition video playback (e.g. HD) may cause playback problems or problems connecting the tablets to the Infotainment system.

Main menu

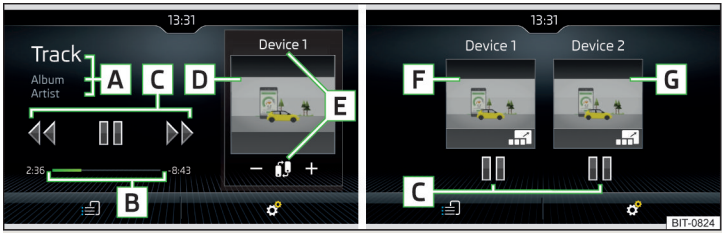

Fig. 191 **One tablet / two tablets**

› To **display** the main *Media Command* menu, tap the MENU sensor field and then tap the function surface .

Main menu » Fig. 191
- A Information on playing track
- B Playback timeline with a slider
- C Playback control
- D Image from the video being played back
- E Name of the tablet used/Switch to main menu of two tablets (when icon displayed)
- – / + Increase/decrease the tablet volume
- F Display of main menu and operation of first tablet (symbol)
- G Display of main menu and operation of second tablet (symbol)
- Selection of the playback source
- Wi-fi settings » page 135

Select source and control playback

› To **select the playback source** tap the function surface in the main menu and select the source tablet.
› To **playback**, select the category and then the title.

If two tablets are connected, the title playback starts in the two tablets at the same time.

Playback can be controlled via Infotainment or on each tablet, and are independent from each other. This means there is an option to playback different titles on the tablets at the same time.

Playback control

Operation	Action
Play / Pause	Tap ▷/▯▯
Plays the current track from the start	Tap ◁◁ after 3 s from the start of the track playback
Play the previous title	Tap ◁◁ within 3 seconds from the start of the track playback
Play back the next title	Tap ▷▷

Movement within the track is possible by touching your finger on the timeline B » Fig. 191 *on page 156*.

i Note

Some tablet types allow playback of audio files or videos by an inserted SD card in the tablet. Playback of these tracks may be limited.

Supported file formats

Type	Format	Operating system Android	Operating system iOS
Video	MPEG-4 Part 2	✓	✓
	MPEG-4 Part 10 (H264)	✓	✓
	XVID	✓	×
Audio	MPEG-1;2 and 2.5 Layer 3 (mp3)	✓	✓
	AAC	✓ (4.1)	✓
	M4A	✓ (4.1)	✓
	OGG	✓	×
	FLAC	✓	×
	WAV	✓ (4.1)	✓

Telephone

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

WARNING

The general binding country-specific regulations for operating mobile phones in the vehicle must be observed.

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

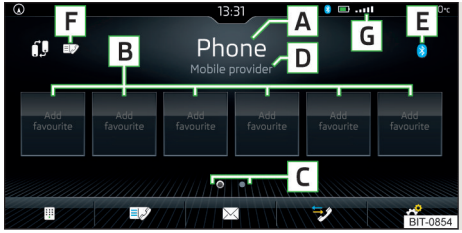

Fig. 192
Telephone: Main menu

The *Telephone* main menu is displayed if a phone or a SIM card with activated phone service on the external module is connected to Infotainment.

› To **display**, tap the sensor field PHONE.
› **or**: Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface.

Main menu » Fig. 192

A Name of the connected telephone (tap to display the list paired telephones)
B Preset station buttons for favourite contacts
C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts
D Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)
E Main telephone icon
- ▶ - a telephone connected via Bluetooth®
- ▶ - a SIM card with activated telephone services, inserted in the external module

F List of connected telephones, which are available as the source of telephone contacts
- ▶ - no telephone is connected for telephone contacts
- ▶ - a telephone is connected for telephone contacts

Change the main phone to the extension telephone
Enter the telephone number
List of contacts
Menu with text messages (SMS)
Call list
Menu settings for *Telephone* » page 137

Symbols in the status bar

G Signal strength of the telephone network, data connection type if required
A telephone connected via Bluetooth® (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
Charge status of the telephone battery
Missed call
Current call
Incoming SMS
ID of the telephone's wireless charging function » page 92 (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
PIN code of the SIM card was not entered

Telephone

Applies to Infotainment Swing.

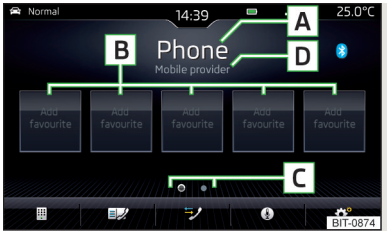

Fig. 193
Telephone: Main menu

The *Telephone* main menu appears when a telephone is connected to Infotainment.

› To **display**, press the PHONE button.

To display the *Telephone* main menu if a different menu is displayed, which was open last, press the PHONE button again.

Main menu » Fig. 193

A Name of the main telephone (tap to display the list of paired telephones)
B Preset station buttons for favourite contacts
C Choice of storage group for the preferred contacts
D Name of the telephone service provider (with active roaming, the symbol appears before the name ▶)

Enter the telephone number
List of contacts » page 164
Call list (missed calls, in addition to the function surface, the number of calls when missed is displayed)
Starting voice control of the connected phone (e.g. Apple Siri, Google Voice)
Menu settings for *Telephone* » page 143

Symbols in the status bar

Signal strength of the telephone service network
Charge status of the telephone battery
Missed call
Current call

Pairing and connecting

Introduction to the subject

To connect a telephone with Infotainment, the two devices must be paired via Bluetooth®.

Depending on the Infotainment model, up to 20 external devices can be paired with the device. After reaching the maximum number, the pairing of the next external device will replace that of the device that has not been used for the longest period of time.

Connection to an already paired telephone is established automatically after the ignition is switched on. Or, it is sufficient to search for the phone in the list of paired devices.

The range of the connection to Infotainment is limited to the passenger compartment.

Compatibility and update

By scanning the QR code » Fig. 162 *on page 122* **or** typing the following address into the web browser, information about the compatibility of phones and available updates for the Infotainment's Bluetooth ®can be displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility

conditions for pairing

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The Bluetooth® function of the infotainment and the telephone is switched on.
✓ The visibility of the infotainment and the telephone is switched on.
✓ The telephone is within range of the Bluetooth® signal of Infotainment.
✓ The telephone is compatible with the infotainment.
✓ There is no external device connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay.

Pairing and connection process

Pair the telephone with Infotainment

› Search available Bluetooth® devices in your telephone.
› Select the name of the Infotainment system.

The name of the Infotainment system can be checked in the *Telephone* main menu if you tap on the function surface → **Bluetooth** in the **Name:** menu item.

› Confirm the PIN code (enter and confirm if necessary).

The phone is either connected to the Infotainment or just linked, depending on the number of already connected external devices and on the use of the SIM card inserted in the external module (applies to Infotainment Columbus) » page 160.

Pair Infotainment with the telephone

› If **no** telephone is connected to the Infotainment system, press the button/sensor field PHONE and then tap the **Find telephone** function surface or press the MENU sensor field, and then tap the function surface → **Find mobile phone**.
› If **one** telephone is connected to the infotainment system, then, in the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the → **Find mobile phone** function surface.

› If **a SIM card** with activated telephone services is inserted in the external module of infotainment Columbus, then, in the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the → **Find mobile phone**.
› Select the desired telephone from the list of visited external Bluetooth® devices.
› Confirm the PIN code (enter and confirm if necessary).

WARNING

Do not pair and connect a telephone to the Infotainment system while driving the vehicle - there is risk of an accident!

Connect phone using the rSAP profile

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module.

A phone that has been connected via the Bluetooth® rSAP profile (remote transfer of SIM data) can be used for **phone and data services**.

Pair the phone with Infotainment

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› In the *Telephone* main menu, switch on the → **Business phone "interface"**.
› Switch on Bluetooth® visibility in the phone and allow the connection via the Bluetooth® rSAP profile.
› Search for a phone and connect to the device » page 159, *Pair Infotainment with the telephone*.

If the Bluetooth® rSAP profile is supported by the telephone to be connected, then the infotainment system tries to connect to the phone using this profile with priority.

Functional impairment

In the following cases, the phonecannot be connected to Infotainment via the Bluetooth® rSAP profile.

▶ The SIM card is plugged into the external module.
▶ An external device is connected to Infotainment using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Note

Vehicle antennas are used to receive the mobile radio signal of the connected phone.

Possible connection types

Depending on the number of connected Bluetooth® devices, connection type, as well as the use of the SIM card in the external module, the following functions are available.

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

Connection version	The first device (main phone)		The second device (additional phone)		Third device	Fourth device
	Telephone	SIM card (In the external module)	Telephone	SIM card (In the external module)		
1.	**rSAP** incoming / outgoing Calls, text messages, telephone contacts, Data connection: Bluetooth® player[a]	-	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a]	-	Bluetooth® player[a]	-
2.	**HFP** (Incoming / outgoing Calls), text messages, telephone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a]	-	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a]	Data connection	Bluetooth® player[a]	-
3.	**HFP** (Incoming / outgoing Calls), text messages, telephone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a]	-	-	Incoming calls, text messages Data connection	Bluetooth® player[a]	-
4.	-	incoming / outgoing Calls, text messages, Phone contacts[b], Data connection	**HFP** (incoming calls), text messages Bluetooth® player[a]	-	Phone contacts[b], Bluetooth® player[a]	Bluetooth® player[a]

[a] In every connection variant, there is an option to only connect an external device as a Bluetooth connection® player with Infotainment.

[b] If phone contacts from the third device are imported into infotainment, the telephone contacts of the SIM card inserted in the external module cannot be used.

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero

The first device (main phone)	The second device (additional phone)
HFP (Incoming / outgoing calls), SMS, telephone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a]	**HFP** (incoming calls), Bluetooth® player[a]

[a] Only an external device can be connected to Infotainment as a Bluetooth® player.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

The first device (main phone)	The second device (additional phone)
HFP (Incoming / outgoing calls), telephone contacts, Bluetooth® player[a]	Bluetooth® player[a]

[a] Only an external device can be connected to Infotainment as a Bluetooth® player.

Managing paired external devices

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface → **Bluetooth** → **Paired devices**.

In the list of paired external devices, the following symbols may appear for the individual external devices.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	Grey	External device can be connected as telephone
	Green	External device is connected as telephone
	Grey	External device can be connected as Bluetooth® player
	White	External device is connected as Bluetooth® player

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with SIM card inserted in external module

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	Grey	External device can be connected to use telephone contacts and the text message function from this external device
	blue	External device is connected and telephone contacts and the text message function from this external device can be used

Applies to Infotainment Swing

Symbol	Symbol colour	Operation
	White	External device can be connected as telephone
	Green	External device is connected as telephone
	White	External device can be connected as Bluetooth® player
	Green	External device is connected as Bluetooth® player

Connection set-up

▶ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▶ Select the desired profile from the list of available Bluetooth® profiles - .

If external Bluetooth® devices are already connected to Infotainment, then during the Infotainment connection process, messages and options for the possible connection type (e.g. replacement of the connected external Bluetooth® device) are displayed.

Disconnection

▶ Select the desired external device from the list of paired external devices.
▶ Select the desired profile from the list of available Bluetooth® profiles - .

Delete the paired external device

▶ To delete, tap on one of the following function surfaces.

Delete all or **All areas** - Delete all external devices

- Delete the desired external device

▶ Confirm the deletion by tapping on the function surface **Delete**.

Use the SIM card in the external module

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module.

Fig. 194 **Insert SIM card in the external module**

A SIM card size “mini” (standard size 25x15 mm) must be used.

The SIM card can be used for **phone and data services**.

The SIM card slot is located in an external module in the storage compartment on the front passenger side » Fig. 194.

Switching SIM card use on / off in the external module

› In the *Telephone* main menu, switch on the → **Business phone "interface"**.

Insert SIM card

› Insert the SIM card into the appropriate slot » Fig. 194 **With the beveled corner on the left and the contacts facing downwards** until it "locks".

Use the SIM card for the first time

When using the SIM card in the external module, select the use type.

Calls too - enabling data and telephone services.

Only data connections - enabling of data services only.

Set the network parameters for Internet connection if required » page 169.

By using the SIM card for phone services, the connection to the connected phones is terminated.

Enter the PIN code and save

› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code by tapping **OK** confirm.
› **or:** Tap the functional surface to save and confirm the PIN code.

Change PIN code

› The PIN code can be changed in the *Telephone* main menu, in the → **PIN setup** → **Change PIN** menu item

Changing SIM card usage

› In the main *Telephone* menu, tap the function surface → **Use SIM card only for data connection** function surface.

Remove SIM card

› Press the inserted SIM card and remove it.

! CAUTION

■ When inserting an incorrectly sized SIM card, there is a risk of damage to the external module.
■ Avoid using an adapter for the SIM card as the SIM card may fall out while driving due to vehicle vibrations - There is the risk of damage to the external module.

Telephone functions

Enter telephone number and select

Enter a telephone number and dial

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface .

Function surfaces of the numerical keyboard

- Enter the last dialled number / dial the telephone number entered
- SOS / SOS Emergency call (Only applies to some countries)
- Breakdown call in case of breakdown
- / Information call (for information regarding the products and services of the brand ŠKODA)
- Choosing the mailbox number (the function is not supported for Infotainment Swing)
- Delete the last number entered
- / Display of function surfaces < > for the movement of the cursor in the input line

Search for a contact using the numeric keypad

The numeric keypad can also be used for a contact search.

For example, if you enter 32, the unit will display contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB, etc. next to the numerical keypad.

Voicemail box (does not apply to Infotainment Swing)

▶ To select the voice mailbox number, tap the function surface .

If not import the voicemail number or was not imported or entered, then this can be entered or changed as follows.

▶ In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on function surface → **User profile** → **Mailbox number:**.
▶ Enter the number of your voice mailbox.

List of telephone contacts

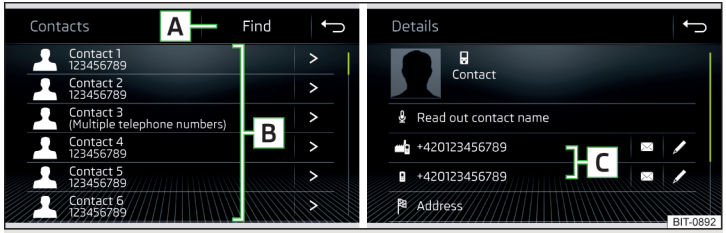

Fig. 195 **List of telephone contacts / contact details**

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface and a list of telephone contacts will be displayed » Fig. 195.

The main telephone is connected to Infotainment, the telephone contacts from the telephone are used.

If a SIM card with activated telephone services is located in the external module of Infotainment Columbus, the SIM card telephone contacts are available. Another external device to import telephone contacts can be selected by tapping the function surface F » Fig. 192 *on page 158*.

Functional surfaces

A Contact search

B Dial a number in the telephone contact list (if a telephone contact contains several telephone numbers, a menu containing the telephone numbers assigned to this contact is displayed after the contact is selected)

> Display the contact details

C Select the telephone number in the contact details

Edit the telephone number of the contact before dialling

Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero:

The contact name can be read out by Infotainment's generated voice

Open the menu for sending a text message (SMS)

Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen:

Start the route guidance to the contact address

Import list

After the primary telephone and/or the SIM card (applies to Infotainment Columbus) connects to the infotainment system for the first time, the import of the telephone contacts to the infotainment memory starts. The import can take several minutes.

In the infotainment phonebook, there are 4000 (applies to Infotainment Columbus) and 2000 (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero, Swing) free storage locations for imported telephone contacts. Each contact can contain up to 5 telephone numbers.

The number of imported contacts can be determined in the menu item → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** or **Import contacts**.

If an error occurs during the import, an appropriate message appears on the screen.

Refresh list

When the telephone reconnects with Infotainment, the list is automatically updated.

The update can be carried out manually as follows.

▶ In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on function surface → **User profile** → **Import contacts:** or **Import contacts**.

Management of preferred contacts (favourites)

Fig. 196
Favourite contacts

Assigning favourites

› In the main menu *Telephone*, **tap on** the desired function surface A » Fig. 196.

› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Connecting to a favourite
The function surfaces of preferred contacts allow the contact telephone numbers to be dialled immediately.

The favourites are available in two storage groups.

› To the **change Storage Group** tap on the functional surface B » Fig. 196.
› To **dial**, tap the assigned function surface A » Fig. 196.

Change allocated favourites
› In the main *Telephone* menu, **press and hold** the desired function surface A » Fig. 196.
› Select the desired contact (if required, one of the contact numbers).

Delete a favourite
› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on function surface → **User profile** → **Manage favourites**.
› Press the desired function surface of the preferred contact and confirm the deletion.

You can delete all contacts by tapping on the function surface **Delete all / All areas** and confirming the delete process.

Function surface for emergency call SOS
If the vehicle is not equipped with the buttons for the Care Connect service » page 17, the position of the last function surface in the first group of favourites will show the function surface for an emergency call SOS is displayed in the status bar. In some countries, this function may not be available.

The function surface can be assigned a different number for the preferred contact.

To restore the emergency number, it is necessary to remove the telephone from the list of paired external devices » page 162 and then to pair and connect again.

Call list

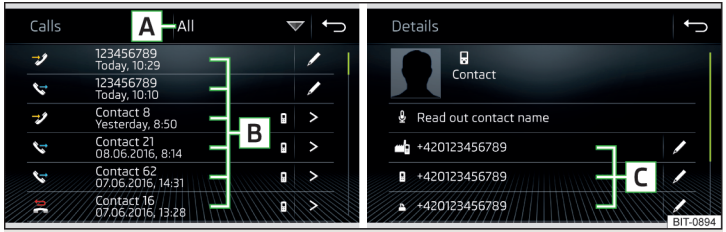

Fig. 197 **Call history / Contact details**

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface and a call list will be displayed » Fig. 197.

The call list can also be displayed during a telephone call.

Functional surfaces

A Setting the display depending on the type of call
- **All areas** - List of all calls
- **Missed calls/Missed calls** - List of missed calls
- **Dialled numbers** - List of dialled numbers
- **Received calls / Received calls** - list of received calls

B Dial the contact number/telephone number
Call type symbols
- - Answered call
- - Outgoing call
- - Missed call

Edit the phone number before dialling (not applicable to Infotainment Swing)

> Display the contact details » Fig. 197
- C - Dial the contact number

Phone call

Depending on the conversation context, the following functions can be carried out.

End dialling / reject incoming call / end call
Accept incoming call / return to held call

Switch on/off ringer
Hold a call
Switch off/on microphone

Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero:

Set up a conference call
Show caller details (if the contact is stored in the list)

Switch on/off hands-free (call to the telephone / switch to Infotainment)

- To switch off the hands-free system, in the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface → Tap on **Hands-free** during a call.
- To switch off the hands-free system, tap on the function surface during a call.

Conference

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

The conference call is a shared call with between three and six participants.

Start a conference call/invite additional participants

› During a call/conference call, carry out the next call.
› **or:** Take the new incoming call by tapping the function surface .
› To **initiate conference call** or **return to the conference call**, tap on the function surface .

Ongoing conference call

During an ongoing conference call, the call duration is displayed on the screen. Depending on the context, the following functions can be selected.

Hold a conference call - leave the conference call temporarily (the conference call continues in your absence)
Return to the held conference call
Switch off/on microphone
End conference call
Display conference call

Conference details

- During the ongoing conference call, press the function surface .

A list of other conference participants is displayed. The following functions can be selected depending on the type of telephone.

Display details of participant
Talk to a participant separately from the conference call
End the call to a conference participant

Text messages (SMS)

Main menu

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero.

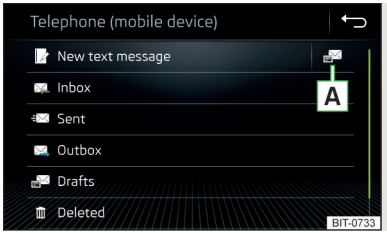

Fig. 198
Main menu text messages

› In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surface The main menu for text messages appears » Fig. 198.
› If required, select whether the SIM card inserted in the external module or the telephone (applies to Infotainment Columbus) is to be used as the source of the text messages.

Depending on your model of connected telephone, you can perform the following functions.

A Opening a list of templates for quick answers
New text message - Creating and sending the message
Inbox- Open a list of received messages
Sent - Open a list of sent messages
Outbox - Open a list of messages not sent
Drafts- Open a list of drafts (messages in progress)
Deleted- Open a list of deleted messages
Send contact details - Send contact details (business card) (applies to Infotainment Columbus)
Select source of text messages (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

Display for the selection of the source of text messages (this applies to the Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module)
If a SIM card used only for data services is located in the external module and if a phone that supports the Bluetooth® profile MAP is connected to Infotainment, then it is possible to adjust the source from which a text message menu will be displayed after tapping on the function surface ✉ in the main *Telephone* menu.

▶ In the *Telephone* main menu, tap on the function surfaces ⚙ → **Text message settings** → **Standard account**.
▶ Select the desired menu item.

New text message

Creating and sending the message
› In the main menu of the text messages, tap on function surface ✎ interface» Fig. 198 *on page 166*.
› Write a text message and confirm. A view of the text message is displayed.
› Tap the function surface ✉ / ✉ .
› Select the recipient of the message from the displayed contact list or tap on the ⠿ and enter the telephone number.
› To add additional recipients, tap on the function surface 👤 / 👤 .
› To send the text message, tap the function surface ✉ .

Viewing the text message
After opening the view message function, the following functions can be executed.

💬 The text can be read out by the device's generated voice
✉ The text can be stored as a draft
✉ Open a list of templates with the option to replace the recorded text with the selected template
✉ / ✉ Open the contact list

The message can be edited, as long as the text range is within the entered view.

Contact list
After the list has been opened the following functions can be executed.

👤 Insert a contact in the recipient list
⠿ Enter the telephone number
⮌ Return to view the message

Tap on the **Find** function surface to open a list of available telephone contacts.

After selecting the contact number or entering the telephone number, the recipient list will be displayed in the screen.

Recipient list
The following functions can be executed by tapping on one of the functional surfaces.

👤 / 👤 Display contact list with the option of adding/removing additional recipients (tap on the function surface to return to the recipient list ⮌ .
🗑 Removal of the contact from the recipient list
✉ Sending the message
⮌ Return to view the message

Received text message

When you receive a new message, the number of new messages received is displayed within the function surface ✉ and at the same time the icon in the status bar ✉ is displayed in the status bar.

› To **open a list of received messages**, go to the *Telephone* main menu and tap on function surface ✉ → ✉ .
› Select a message.

The message content and the following menu is displayed.

💬 The text can be read out by the device's generated voice
... Display a menu with additional options
▶ **Reply with template** - Reply using a template
▶ **Delete current text message** - Distance of displayed text message (applies to Infotainment Columbus, when the SIM card is inserted in the external module or the phone is connected via the Bluetooth® profile RSAP)
▶ **Display numbers** - Recognition of telephone numbers in the message including the contact number (recognised numbers can be dialled directly or edited before dialling, or may be sent to this message)
✉ Forwarding a message with the option to edit the message before sending
✉ Reply to the sender via a message

Data connection

Internet connection

Infotainment Columbus

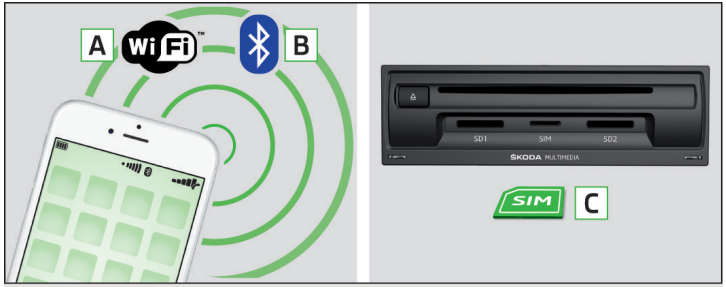

Fig. 199 **WLAN (Wi-Fi) / Bluetooth® / SIM card**

Possible connection types » Fig. 199

A Using WLAN, by connecting the Infotainment system to the hot spot of the external device » page 170, *Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device.*

B By connecting to a mobile phone (it is connected to the Internet) using the **Bluetooth® rSAP profile** » page 169, *Establishing a connection using the Bluetooth® rSAP profile.*

C Using a **SIM** Card with a data tariff » page 169, *Establishing a connection using a SIM card in the external module.*

Connecting Infotainment Amundsen

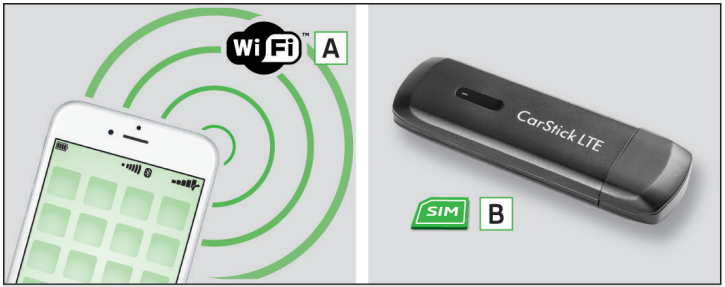

Fig. 200 **WLAN (Wi-Fi) / CarStick**

Possible connection types » Fig. 200

A Using WLAN, by connecting the Infotainment system to the hot spot of the external device » page 170, *Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device.*

B Using the **CarStick** USB device » page 168.

Connecting via the CarStick device

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The **CarStick** USB device can be purchased from the original accessories.

› Insert a SIM card with activated data services into the **CarStick** device.

The required dimensions of the SIM card, as well as the correct procedure during insertion can be found in the instructions enclosed with the CarStick ŠKODA original accessory.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Insert the CarStick into the USB input at the front » Fig. 101 *on page 93*,
› Wait approximately one minute until the red light on Carstick stays continuously lit (if the red lights up, then disconnect and re-insert the Carstick).
› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code by tapping OK confirm.
› **or:** Tap the functional surface to save and confirm the PIN code.

› If necessary, set the required network of the data service provider.

If your data provider is not available in the list, ask your provider whether one of the displayed providers can be used.

The parameters of the telephone service provider network can be set in the menu item MENU → ⚙ → **Network** → **Network settings**.

! CAUTION

If you insert a SIM card of the wrong size or in the wrong direction, there is a risk of damage to the CarStick device.

Establishing a connection using a SIM card in the external module

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module.

A SIM card size “mini” (standard size 25x15 mm) mit enabled data services must be used.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› In the *Telephone* main menu, switch on the ⚙ → **Business phone “interface”**.
› Insert a SIM card into the corresponding slot into the external module in the storage compartment on the passenger's side » Fig. 194 *on page 162*.

Insert the SIM card **with the bevelled corner on the left and the contacts facing downwards** until it “locks”.

› Select the SIM card usage type:

Calls too - enabling data and telephone services.

Only data connections - enabling of data services only.

› If the SIM card is protected by a PIN code, then the PIN code of the SIM card must be entered.
› Confirm the entered PIN code by tapping **OK** confirm.
› **or:** Tap the functional surface ⍓ to save and confirm the PIN code.
› Set the data service provider’s required network and confirm the Internet connection.

If your data provider is not available in the list, ask your provider whether one of the displayed providers can be used.

The parameters of the telephone service provider network can be set in the menu item MENU → ⚙ → **Network** → **Network settings**.

The data connection setting using the SIM card can be configured in the menu item MENU → ⚙ → **Network** → **Data connection:**.

! CAUTION

When inserting an incorrectly sized SIM card or in the wrong direction, there is a risk of damage to the external module.

Establishing a connection using the Bluetooth® rSAP profile

Applies to Infotainment Columbus with the SIM card slot in the external module.

The prerequisite for establishing an Internet connection is using a telephone with a SIM card with active data services.

› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› Switch on the “Business” function in Infotainment, and tap on the sensor field MENU and then the function surface ✆ → ⚙ → **Phone interface “Business”**.
› Switch on Bluetooth®, tap on the sensor field MENU and then the function surface ⚙ → **Bluetooth** → **Bluetooth**.
› Turn on Infotainment visibility (tap on the sensor field MENU and then tap the function surface ⚙ → **Bluetooth** → **Visibility:** → **Visible**.
› Switch on Bluetooth® and its visibility in the phone.
› Connect and pair the phone with Infotainment » page 159.

Connecting via WLAN

Introduction to the subject

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

WLAN can be used to connect to the Internet, to playback audio files in the menu *media* or for operating the Infotainment system using an application in the external device (e.g. “ŠKODA Media Command”).

It is possible to connect up to 8 external devices to the Infotainment hotspot **and at the same time** to connect Infotainment to another hotspot.

Switching the Infotainment hotspot on/off

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch the hotspot on/off in menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**.

Setting the Infotainment hotspot

The Infotainment hotspot is factory set.

The setting can be changed in menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Hotspot (WLAN) settings**.

- **Security level:** - Type of access protection (always set to WPA2)
- **Network key** - Access password
- **SSID: ...** - Hotspot name
- **Do not send network name (SSID)** - Switch the visibility of the hotspot on/off

▶ To save the configured parameters, tap the **Store** function surface.

Connecting an external device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on WLAN in the external device and search for the infotainment hotspot.
› Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.
› Confirm the connection.

Note

The name of the infotainment hotspot (SSID) and the access password can be found in menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Hotspot (WLAN) settings**.

Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device

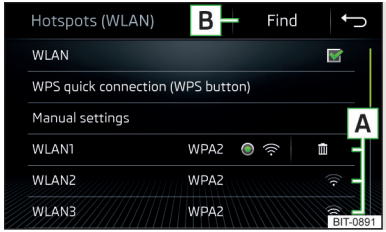

Fig. 201
Main menu of the Infotainment WLAN

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

› Switch on the ignition.
› If the Infotainment WLAN is not activated, activate it in the menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **WLAN**.

In area A » Fig. 201, a list of available or previously connected hotspots is displayed.

The hotspot list can be updated by tapping the function surface B.

› Select the hotspot and enter the password.

If the hotspot is not visible, you can establish the connection to it manually.

› Tap the function surface **Manual settings**.
› Set the required hotspot parameters.
› Tap the function surface **Connect**.

Icons and function surfaces in the list of available hotspots A » Fig. 201

- Connected hotspot
- Signal strength of the connected hotspot
- Delete the hotspot

Hotspot connection recommendations

▶ Only leave the hotspot to be connected switched on, switch off the other hotspot.
▶ On some hotspots, the connection setup takes longer, wait for the end of the connection setup.
▶ If the connection is interrupted, search for available hotspots again and repeat connection setup.
▶ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required for connection setup.

Note

- It is not possible to connect Infotainment Columbus to the hotspot of the external device as long as a SIM card with enabled data services is in the external module of Infotainment or a phone connected to Infotainment via the Bluetooth® rSAP profile.
- An Infotainment Amundsen connection with external device hotspot is not possible, as long as there is an active connection using the Carstickdevice.

Connect via WPS

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

It is not necessary to enter the access password when connecting via WPS. ▶

Connecting the Infotainment system to the hotspot of the external device

› Switch on the ignition.
› In the external device, switch on the hotspot, its visibility, and the WPS connection option.
› In the Infotainment system, switch on WLAN in menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **WLAN** → **WLAN**.
› Tap the function surface **WPS quick connection (WPS button)**.

Connecting the external device to the Infotainment hotspot

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Infotainment hotspot in menu item MENU → ⚙ → **WLAN** → **Mobile hotspot** → **Mobile hotspot**.
› Tap the function surface **WPS quick connection (WPS button)**.
› In the external device, switch on the WPS connection option.

SmartLink

Introductory information

Introduction to the subject

Fig. 202
Information on SmartLink on the ŠKODA websites

SmartLink offers the option to display certified applications on an external device equipped with a USB device on the Infotainment screen and to operate them.

SmartLink supports the following communication systems.

▶ “Android Auto”
▶ “Apple CarPlay”
▶ “MirrorLink®”

Using the applications in the connected external device, you can use navigation to make a call and to listen to music.

For reasons of safety, the operation of some applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Read in the QR code» Fig. 202**or**enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with information on the SmartLink system.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity-smartlink

Depending on the model of the connected external device, some applications can be operated via the Infotainment system, using your voice or using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

To activate voice control for the connected external device, hold down VOICE or APP/ or hold down the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

CAUTION

To establish the connection, it is necessary that the date and time in Infotainment are set correctly. If the date and time setting is based on the GPS signal, then problems may arise with establishing a connection with a poor GPS signal reception.

Note

▪ We recommend that you use extension cables from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
▪ With some connected external devices, it is necessary for the connected external device to be “unlocked” for trouble-free functioning of the SmartLink function.

Main menu

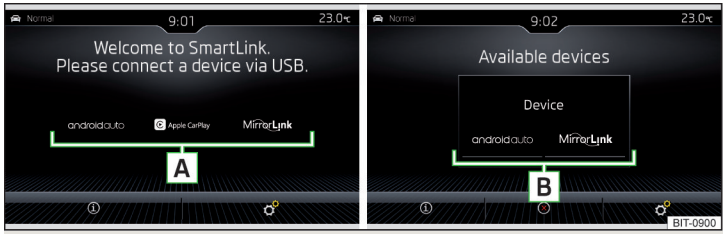

Fig. 203 **Supported communication systems / Example of available communication systems of the connected external device**

› to **display** the SmartLink main menu, tap on the sensor field APP or press the APP button.
› **or**: Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface .

If no external device is connected, then a menu with supported communication systems SmartLink is displayed A » Fig. 203,

Main menu » Fig. 203

A Supported communication systems
B Available communication systems of the connected external device
ⓘ Display of information about SmartLink
⊗ Disconnection of the active connection
Settings of the SmartLink » page 138 menu or » page 143

Android Auto

Connection set-up / disconnection

Prerequisites for establishing a connection

✓ The external device to be connected must support the “Android Auto” communication system.
✓ In the external device to be connected, the “Android Auto” application must be installed.
✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected external device to be switched on.

A list external of devices, supported regions and applications that the “Android Auto” connection supports can be found on the websites of Google Inc..

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Infotainment system.
› Switch on the external device.
› Connect the external device to the USB input using a cable » page 93.
› Select the connection using “Android Auto” B » Fig. 203 *on page 172*.

Disconnection of the active connection

› In the “Android Auto” main menu, tap the function surface .
› Tap the “ŠKODA” function surface to go back to the main menu SmartLink.
› Tap the function surface ⊗ .
› **or**: Disconnect the cable from the USB input. When reconnected, the external device is automatically connected.

Function restriction of Infotainment

For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

By connecting the external device with “Android Auto”, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the external device will automatically be connected as the main telephone.

For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth devices can be connected to the infotainment system. The SIM card inserted in the external module can only be used for data connection.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment in Infotainment, then there is the option to start the route guidance in the “Android Auto” application. And vice versa, if **route guidance is currently taking place** in the “Android Auto” application, then there is the possibility that this will be **terminated** by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

main menu

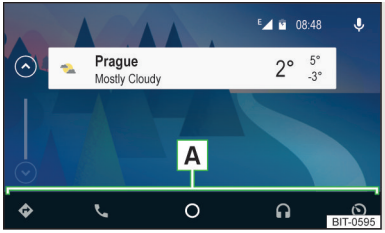

Fig. 204
Android Auto: Main menu

Main menu » Fig. 204

- Navigation applications
- Telephone applications
- Overview regarding current applications, telephone calls, accepted text messages, tasks in the working directory, weather or similar.
- Music applications
- Display of other available applications as well as the option of returning to the SmartLink main menu
- Switching on voice control (Google Voice)

The symbol appears next to the function surface in the area A, Then, by tapping on this function surface again, a list of new applications is displayed.

Apple CarPlay

Connection set-up / disconnection

Prerequisites for establishing a connection

✓ The external device to be connected must support the “Apple CarPlay” communication system.
✓ The data connection of the external device to be connected must be active.
✓ The voice control (Siri) of the external device to be connected must be active.

A list external of devices, supported regions and applications that the “Apple CarPlay” connection supports can be found on the websites of Apple Inc..

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Infotainment system.
› Switch on the external device.
› Connect the external device to the USB input using a cable » page 93.
› Select the connection using “Apple CarPlay” B » Fig. 203 *on page 172*.

Disconnection of the active connection

› In the main menu “Apple CarPlay”, tap the function surface of the “ŠKODA” application, the main menu SmartLink is displayed.
› Tap the function surface ⊗ .
› **or**: Disconnect the cable from the USB input. When reconnected, the external device is automatically connected.

Function restriction of Infotainment

For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

By connecting the external device with “Apple CarPlay”, all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected.

For the duration of the connection, no Bluetooth devices can be connected to the infotainment system. The SIM card inserted in the external module can only be used for data services.

If route guidance is taking place at this moment using Infotainment, then this is terminated by starting the route guidance in the “Apple CarPlay” application. And vice versa, if **route guidance is currently taking place** in the “Apple CarPlay” application, then this will be **terminated** by the start of route guidance by the Infotainment system.

Note

Some **phone features** of the connected external device can be operated in the display of the instrument cluster » page 55.

main menu

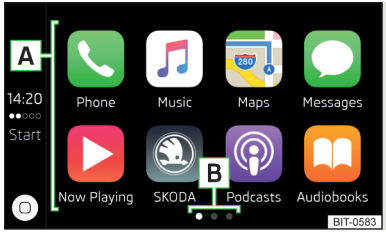

Fig. 205
Apple CarPlay: Main menu

Main menu » Fig. 205

A List of available applications

B More pages with applications

⊙ Depending on how long the function surface is pressed for:
- **Tap** - Return to “Apple Carplay” main menu
- **Hold** - Switch on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink®

Connection set-up / disconnection

Prerequisites for establishing a connection

✓ The external device to be connected must support the communication system “MirrorLink®”.

✓ The external device to be connected must have at least one “MirrorLink®”application installed.

✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected external device to be switched on.

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on the Infotainment system.
› Switch on the external device.
› Connect the external device to the USB input using a cable » page 93.
› Select the connection using “MirrorLink®” B » Fig. 203 *on page 172*.

Disconnection of the active connection

› In the main menu of “MirrorLink ®”, tap the function surface The SmartLink main menu is displayed.
› Tap the functional surface ⊗ .
› **or**: Disconnect the cable from the USB input. When reconnected, the external device is automatically connected.

Function restriction of Infotainment

applies to Infotainment **Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero**: If you wish to use the device to be connected in the *Telephone* menu, the external device must be paired with and connected to the Infotainment system before establishing the connection» page 159.

Applies to Infotainment **Swing**. By connecting the external device to all currently connected Bluetooth® devices will be disconnected and the external device will automatically be connected as the main telephone. Depending on the device to be connected, a connection confirmation may be required.

For the duration of the connection, the external device cannot be used as an audio source in the *Media* menu.

main menu

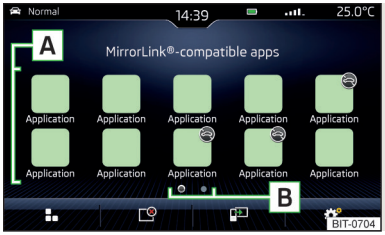

Fig. 206
MirrorLink®: Main menu

Main menu » Fig. 206

- Return to SmartLink main menu » page 172
- List of running applications
- Display of the last running application in the connected external device
- Settings of the SmartLink » page 138 menu or » page 143
- A List of applications
- B More pages with applications
- Applications cannot be operated while driving

Display of the function surfaces during the running application

- Return to “MirrorLink ®” main menu
- / Show function surfaces at the top/bottom (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero)
- < / > / ∨ / ∧ Move the functional surfaces in the desired corner of the screen (applies to the infotainment Swing)

To show/hide the function surfaces, press the controller (applies to Infotainment Amundsen, Bolero).

function problems

If problems occur with the “MirrorLink ®”connection, then one of the following messages may occur on the screen.

- **Fault: transfer** - Disconnect and reconnect the external device
- **MirrorLink® audio is not available.** - Disconnect and reconnect the external device
- **MirrorLink® availability on this mobile device is restricted.** - it is not possible to use the connected device during the journey or the device only has limited availability (applies to Infotainment swing)
- **The mobile device is locked. Please unlock the mobile device to use MirrorLink®** - “unlock” the connected external device
- **Unable to start app or app not working.** - Disconnect and reconnect the external device

Application“ŠKODA OneApp”

Introductory information

Fig. 207
Information on the ŠKODA OneApp application on the ŠKODA websites

A mobile telephone connected to the Infotainment system allows you to edit and evaluate journey data in the “ŠKODA One App” application.

After entering the following address into the web browser, the website is opened with information on the ŠKODA mobile applications.

http://go.skoda.eu/service-app

The “ŠKODA OneApp” application is available in the App Store and Google Play online shops.

“ŠKODA OneApp” application

› Scan the QR code » Fig. 207 .

For the full functionality of the “ŠKODA One App” application, data transfer from external devices must be activated.

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen, Bolero

▶ To **activate data transfer from external devices**, tap the MENU sensor field and then tap on function surface → → **Mobile device data transfer** → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA Apps**.

Applies to Infotainment Swing

▶ To **activate data from external devices**, press the SETUP button, then tap on function surface → **Activate data transfer for ŠKODA apps**.

Note

Some functions of the application are not available in all countries or there is a function restriction during the journey » page 122, *Mobile devices and applications*.

Connecting to Infotainment

The mobile telephone can be connected to the Infotainment system using the SmartLink function or via WLAN.

Connection by SmartLink

› Switch on the ignition.
› Establish the connection via SmartLink (eg “MirrorLink®”)» page 171.
› In the list of available applications, select the “ŠKODA One App” application.

Depending on the model of the connected external device, some applications can be started using voice activation, via the Infotainment screen, using the operating elements on Infotainment, or using the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel.

Once connected, the contents of the application in the infotainment screen may be displayed.

A possible connection between the mobile telephone and the Infotainment system via WLAN will be terminated after a connection is established using SmartLink.

Connection via WLAN (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)

› Switch on the ignition.
› Establish the WLAN connection » page 169.
› In the mobile telephone, start the “ŠKODA OneApp” application.

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the “ŠKODA OneApp” application.
› Disconnect the mobile telephone from the USB port or terminate the WLAN connection.

Navigation

Introductory information

Navigation - function sequence

Applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen.

Route guidance is started as follows.

› Search for/ enter a new destination **or** Select one of the stored destinations.
› Confirm the route calculation in the destination details or if necessary, adjust the route options.
› Select the preferred route type, if this is requested by Infotainment.

A route calculation occurs and route guidance starts.

The route guidance is provided by graphical driving recommendations and nav. announcements.

The is an option to add additional destinations during route guidance, or to adapt the route.

If a traffic radio station is available, information concerning traffic delays is evaluated by Infotainment and, if necessary, an alternative route is offered.

If you deviate from the route, then a new route calculation is carried out.

GPS satellite signal

Infotainment uses the GPS (Global Positioning System) satellite signal for route guidance.

Outside the range of the GPS satellite signal (e.g. in dense vegetation, in tunnels, parking garages, etc.), Infotainment navigates only with restrictions using vehicle sensors.

The unit offers the possibility to show in the split screen display the following **Position** » Fig. 210 *on page 179* information about the current geographical position of the vehicle and the satellite signal.

- Geographical latitude
- Geographical longitude
- Elevation
- Number of received/available satellites

If no GPS satellite signal is available, no values are displayed.

Navigation data

Navigation data source Columbus
The navigation data is stored in the Infotainment memory.

Navigation data source Amundsen
The navigation data is stored on an **Original** SD Card.

In order to ensure the function of the navigation, the Original SD card, with the navigation data, must be inserted in the respective slot in the external module » page 124.

If the original SD card is damaged or lost, a new original SD card can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

With a **Non-original** SD Card, navigation does **not work**.

Determining the version of the navigation data
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Version information** .

Update navigation data
We recommend that you update the navigation data on a regular basis.

The Infotainment can give incorrect driving recommendations if the road condition or the traffic situation does not match the navigation data. This can lead to route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street. Therefore, observe the respective traffic signs while driving, which always have priority over the driving recommendations.

The information on updating the navigation data is to be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or on the following ŠKODA Internet pages.

http://go.skoda.eu/updateportal

When activated online services “Infotainment online” » page 14 can the navigation data for the Infotainment **Columbus** Updating online » page 177, *Navigation data and POI categories Import / Update online*,

Navigation data and POI categories Import / Update online

Manual update
When “Infotainment Online” » page 14 online services are activated, there is the option of downloading/updating navigation data (applies to Infotainment Columbus) or of downloading POI categories created in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website.

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the function surface → **Version information** → **Update (online)** → **Retrieve**.
▶ **or:** Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → .

A menu for importing/updating the navigation data and POI categories is displayed.

▶ Tap the functional surface ▼ and select one of the following menu items.

- **All** - Import all the available navigation data
- **Favourites** - Import of navigation data preferably countries / regions (applies to the infotainment Columbus)
- **POIs** - Import of the POI category created in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website » page 185
- **Maps** - Import of the navigation data available for the respective countries/regions (applies to Infotainment Columbus)

▶ Select the desired list entries.
▶ Tap on function surface **Retrieve** and confirm the deletion.

Automatic update
Applies to vehicles with the **Infotainment Columbus**: if the online services “Infotainment Online” » page 14 are activated and an update of the navigation data for the current vehicle position or the route destination is available, the infotainment will issue this **automatic** note and offer an update option.

During the upgrade process, infotainment is usable without limitation.

To complete the update of the navigation data, the ignition and Infotainment must be switched off for at least 30 min.

Main menu

Fig. 208 **Navigation: Main menu**

› To **display**, tap the sensor field NAV.
› **or:** Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface ⮜.

Description of the function interfaces A » Fig. 208

- Context-dependent:
  Route guidance is deactivated - Search / enter a new destination
  Route guidance is enabled - The following menu is displayed:
  - **Route details** - Displays the route details » page 192
  - **Change route in map** - Displays a menu for the route change in the map (valid for Infotainment Columbus) » page 193
  - **Congestion ahead** - Manual adjusts traffic conditions » page 197
  - **Enter destination** - Search / enter a new destination / stopover » page 179
  - **Stop route guidance** - Stops route guidance » page 191
- The following menu is displayed:
  - **Curr. current position** - Store the current vehicle position as the flagged destination » page 183
  - **Routes** - Displays the list of saved routes » page 193
  - **Destinations** - Display the list of stored destinations » page 182
  - **Last destinations** - Display the list of recent destinations to which route guidance was carried out » page 182
  - **Home address** - Route guidance to your home address » page 183
- Search for POIs in categories, and
- Map display options » page 186
- / Playback Control *Media/Radio* (does not apply to vehicles with Infundainment Amundsen and the digital instrument cluster)
- Display for the volume setting of the navigation announcements/repetition of the navigation announcement » page 191
- *Navigation* settings » page 139

B Change the map display between the digital instrument cluster and the Infotainment screen (applies to vehicles with the Infundainment Amundsen and the digital instrument cluster)

Map

Fig. 209
Card description

The following information and function surfaces can be displayed in the map. » Fig. 209

- A Vehicle position
- B Route
- C Function interfaces for card use » page 186
- D Function surface of the POI
- E Function surface for the POI list
- F Function surface for displaying a traffic incident » page 197
- G Information on the maximum permitted speed
- Destination position
- Intermediate destination position
- Destination position **Home address**
- Favourite position

Information in the status line

- Street name / street number of the current vehicle position
- Distance to destination
- Route to the stopover
- Estimated travelling time to the destination

Estimated travel time to the stopover

Estimated time of arrival at destination / stopover

additional window

Fig. 210
Split screen

Applies to vehicles with **Infotainment Amundsen and the digital instrument cluster**: when the map display is displayed in the digital instrument cluster, the split screen is always shown and cannot be dimmed.

› To **switch on/off** in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Split screen**.

› To **select content** of the additional window A » Fig. 210 tap the function surface ▼ Tap and select one of the following menus, depending on the context.

- **Audio** - Operation of **Radio/Media** playback
- **Compass** - Displays the current vehicle location in relation to the compass directions
- **Freq. Routes** - Displays the three most frequently travelled routes (if route guidance is disabled) » page 191
- **Manoeuvre** - Display graphical driving recommendations (if route guidance is enabled) » page 191
- **Position** - Displays the geographical coordinates of the current vehicle location
- **Map** - Preview card display (applies to vehicles with Infotainment Columbus, without the digital instrument cluster) » page 188

Search for destination and enter

Selecting the type of destination search/destination entry

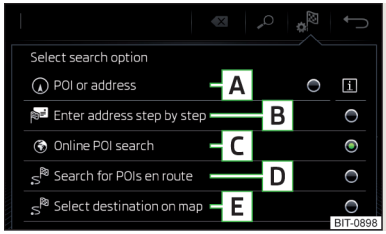

Fig. 211
Selecting the type of destination search/destination entry

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface → .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Enter destination** → .

Function surfaces » Fig. 211

A Search for a destination or POI (point of interest) by name » page 179

B Destination entry by address » page 180

C Online POI search » page 179

D Search for a point along the route (only works with active route guidance) » page 179

E Destination input via the map point or using the GPS coordinates » page 181

Search POI destination /

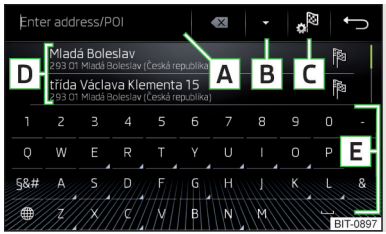

Fig. 212
Menu for the destination search

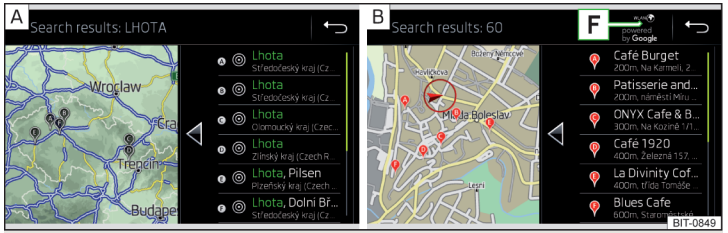

Fig. 213 **List of destinations visited: in the navigation data / online**

The feature allows a full text search of locations or points of interest (POI) by entering keywords.

Show menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface → .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → Tap **Enter destination**

› Then tap the function surface of one of the menu items for the destination search A, C or D » Fig. 211 *on page 179*.

Function surfaces » Fig. 212 and » Fig. 213

A Input line

B Depending on the search mode, the following symbols are displayed
▽ - Display the map as well as the list of the destinations listed in the navigation database
- Display the map as well as the list of online destinations

C - Select the destination search/destination entry » page 179

D List of last destinations (if no character is entered) / List of visited destinations

E Keypad

F Status of online services

Find destination

▶ Enter the POI name or the POI category (POI) and, **if required**, the place and street name or house number/postal code.

A list of the destinations found is displayed in area D » Fig. 212.

▶ Select the desired destination and the destination details will be displayed.

▶ **or:** Tap the B » Fig. 212 function surface.

A map with the following symbols and a list of the destinations found is displayed.

Destinations found in the navigation data » Fig. 213 - A.

Destinations found online » Fig. 213 - B.

▶ Select the desired destination and the destination details will be displayed.

Enter destination using the address

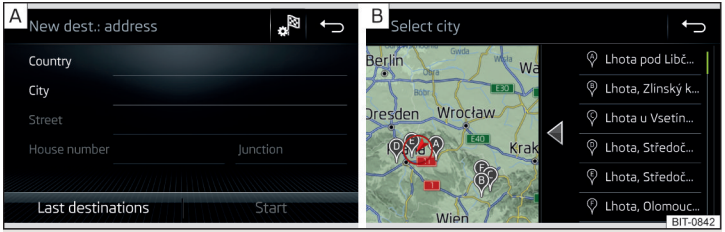

Fig. 214 **Enter destination using the address: Main menu / List of visited destinations**

Show menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → Tap **Enter destination**

› Then tap the function surface → B » page 179

Enter dest.

› Enter the destination address and then confirm » Fig. 214 - A.

› Tap the function surface **OK** to see the destination details.

Relevant names (e.g. Place/street names) are offered in the entry line during entry, depending on the context. The location of the proposed destination can be displayed by tapping the function surface **Map**.

Depending on the number of places visited, a map with a list of visited places can be displayed automatically » Fig. 214 - B.

The map with the list of visited locations can be accessed manually by tapping the function surface .

Entering a destination via the map point and using GPS coordinates

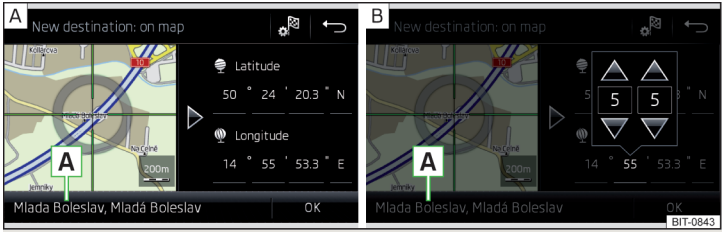

Fig. 215 **Enter destination: via the map point / using the GPS coordinates**

Show menu

› **Route guidance is disabled** - From the *navigation* main menu, the function surface .

› **Route guidance is enabled** - From the main menu *navigation*, tap on the function surface → Tap **Enter destination**

› Then tap the function surface → E » Fig. 211 *on page 179*.

Enter destination via map point

› Touch the screen to move the desired destination into the cross-hair » Fig. 215 - A.

› Tap the function surface **OK** to see the destination details.

through via coordinates

› Tap in the values of the GPS coordinates one at a time and adjust » Fig. 215 - B,

› Tap the function surface **OK** to see the destination details.

If information about the point entered is available in the Infotainment system's navigation data, this will be displayed instead of the GPS coordinates (e.g. address A » Fig. 215).

Entering a destination via the map point

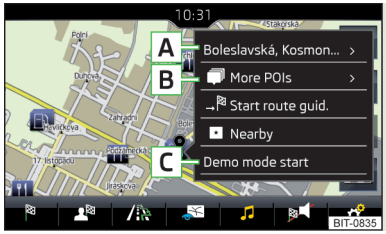

Fig. 216 **Menu after tapping the map point**

Tap on the map to display the symbol and a menu with the following menu items (depending on the context) » Fig. 216.

A Display the destination details » page 189

B Display the POI details/display the POI list (function surface)

Start route guidance to the selected point

Paste the selected point as the next destination in the current route guidance

Start route guidance to the favourite

Start route guidance to the home address

Destination search in the vicinity of the selected point » page 179

C Define the starting point for demo mode (if it is turned on) » page 190

Find petrol station, restaurant or car park

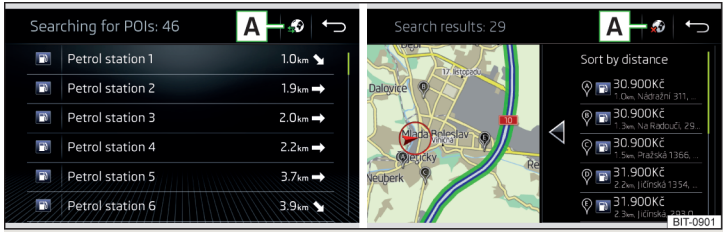

Fig. 217 **List of petrol stations visited: in the navigation data / online**

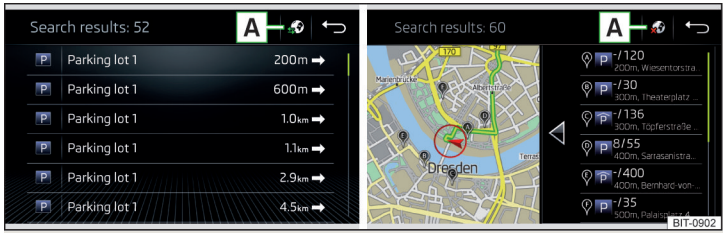

Fig. 218 **List of car parks visited: in the navigation data / online**

The Infotainment allows you to find petrol stations, restaurants or car parks quickly in the navigation data as well as online.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface /.
› The function surface of the desired category button.
› **or:** Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → or P .

Search destination in the navigation data
Depending on the context below a list be examined POIs in the selected category is displayed.

- **No route guidance is taking place** - The nearest destinations in a radius of 200 km from the current vehicle position are displayed.
- **Route guidance is taking place** - Destinations on the route or near the route are displayed.

Find Target online
When “Infotainment Online” » page 14 services are activated, a list of POIs from the selected category in a radius around the current vehicle position is displayed, regardless of whether or not route guidance is taking place.

After performing destination search, it is possible to switch between the list of visited in the navigation data or online goals by one of the following functional areas on the position A » Fig. 217 or. » Fig. 218 is tapped.

Displays the list of destinations visited in the navigation data.
Displays list of last destinations

Note
With activated function → **Fuel options** → **Select preferred fuel station** function activated, the preferred fuel stations are displayed in the first three positions during the fuel station search.

Saved destinations

Last destinations

List of last destinations
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Last destinations**.

Details of the last destination (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)
› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the NAV sensor field.

If route guide is disabled, then the details of the last destination are displayed to where the route guidance was carried out. **If route guidance is enabled**, Then the details of the final destinations are displayed.

Last destinations menu for destination / POI search
In the destination search menu, a short list of recent destinations is show in area D » page 179.

Function surfaces in the list of last destinations
Search - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed with more than 5 entries available)
› - Display the details of the selected destination » page 189

target memory

Fig. 219 **Select list of stored destinations / categories of saved destinations**

List of stored destinations

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Destinations**.
› Tap on function surface **A** » Fig. 219 and select one of the following categories of saved destinations **B** » Fig. 219.

All saved destinations
- ▶ - Flagged destination (vehicle position at the time of storage)
- ▶ - Stored destination (manually saved destination/destination imported in vCard format)
- ▶ - Favourite (destination with additional favourite property)

Favourites (the favourite location is shown on the map by the ★ symbol).

Telephone contact addresses of the connected phone or the inserted SIM card.

Online destinations created in the user profile on the "ŠKODA Connect Portal" website or in the "ŠKODA Connect" application » page 185

Function surfaces in the list of stored destinations

Search - Destination search by name (the function surface is displayed if there are several entries on the next page of the list)

> - Display the destination details » page 189

Store target

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the functional surface → **Last destinations**.
▶ Tap the functional surface > Tap on the desired destination, the destination details are displayed.
▶ Tap on the function surface **Store** .
▶ Rename the destination if necessary and confirm storage.

"Flagged destination" Save (current vehicle position)

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Store** → **Store current position**.
▶ By then tapping on function surface **Rename**, you can rename the flagged destination and store it as a destination in the dest. memory.

By storing the next flagged destination, the last flagged destination will be overwritten. To maintain the existing flagged destination, this destination must be stored in the Infotainment memory.

Save as a favourite / cancel

It is not possible to store a contact, a vCard or target image as a favourite.

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations**.
▶ Tap the functional surface ▼ and select the desired list of destinations.
▶ Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.
▶ Tap the function surface **Edit** .
▶ Tap the function surface **Favourite**.

Delete destination

▶ In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations**.
▶ Tap the functional surface ▼ and select the desired list of destinations.
▶ Show the destination details by tapping on the function surface > at the desired destination.
▶ Tap the function surface **Edit** .
▶ Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Home address

Define home address

When your home address is not entered, then proceed as follows.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Home address**.
› Defining the home address using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Change the home address

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Define home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Edit** .
› Edit the home address or set one up using the current vehicle position or by entering the address.

Delete home address

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Home address**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

Import your own goals

Introduction to the subject

Fig. 220
MyDestination application on the ŠKODA websites

Fig. 221
Websites ŠKODA Connect

Your own destinations can be created using the ŠKODAapplication “MyDestination”, in the user profile on the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” or in the application “ŠKODA Connect”

By reading the QR code » Fig. 220 **or** after typing the following address in the web browser, more information on the “MyDestination”application is displayed.

http://go.skoda.eu/my-destination

For the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” refer to the website of “ŠKODA Connect”. This is carried out by reading the QR code » Fig. 221 **or** after entering the following address into the web browser.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity

Goals in vCard format

In the Infotainment memory, a custom destination can be imported in the vCard format (*.vcf) from an SD card or a USB source.

Import

› Insert the SD card into the external module or connect a USB source with the file of the custom destination.
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Import destinations (SD/USB)**.
› Select the source and confirm the import.

Route guidance

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → .
› Search for and select the desired imported destination.

Delete own destination

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → .
› Tap the functional surface > Tap on the desired own destination.
› In the destination details, tap the function surface **Edit** → **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

In the application “MyDestination” created POI categories

Import / update

› Insert the SD card into the external module or connect a USB source with the POI categories.
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory**→ **Update "My POIs" (SD/USB)** Tap.

If there is already the same POI category name in the Infotainment memory, then it will be overwritten during the import.

Show POIs in the map

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** → **My points of interest (Personal POI)**.
› Select the imported POI category.

Guidance to the POI

› Tip on the traffic obstruction icon in the map.

Details of the selected destination will be displayed » page 189.

Clear all own POI categories

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete "My POIs"**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

In user profile “ŠKODA Connect Portal” created POI categories

Your own POI categories created in the user profile on the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” can be imported into the Infotainment memory.

The requirement for importing a POI category is that “Infotainment Online” » page 14 services are activated.

Import POI categories

In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Version information** → **Update (online)**.

› **or:** Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → .

A menu for importing/updating the navigation data and POI categories is displayed.

› Tap the functional surface → **POIs (online services)** → **Retrieve**.

Are new POI categories available, their number and the file size is displayed on the Infotainment.

› Tap the function surface **Start**to start route guidance.
› To complete the import, tap the function surface **Next** and confirm the import.

Show POIs in the map

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** → **My points of interest (Personal POI)**.
› Select the imported POI category.

Route guidance to a destination of imported POI category

› Tip on the traffic obstruction icon in the map.

Details of the selected destination will be displayed » page 189.

Clear all own POI categories

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete "My POIs"**.
› Tap the function surface **Delete** and confirm the deletion.

In user profile “ŠKODA Connect Portal” objectives created

The destinations you have created in the user profile on the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” or in the application “ŠKODA Connect” can be imported to the Infotainment memory.

The requirement for importing the destinations is that “Infotainment Online” » page 14 services are activated.

import goals

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → .
› **or:** Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → .
› Tap on the function surface **Store** .
› Are new targets available, then confirm the import.

If the user profile on the website “ŠKODA Connect Portal” or in the application “ŠKODA Connect” creates an object and sent to the Infotainment, after switching on the ignition in the Infotainment screen displays a message regarding a new destination with the option to import this displayed.

Guidance to an online destination

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → .
› In the list of online dests to visit and select the desired destination.

Delete Online dests

› to delete **all** Online destinations in the main menu *navigation* the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Online destinations**.
› To delete **one** online destination, go to the *navigation* main menu and tap on function surface → **Destinations** → → → > → **Edit** → **Delete**.

Image with GPS coordinates

Fig. 222
Image with GPS coordinates

Infotainment enables guidance to the GPScoordinate data stored in the image.

› Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface **Images**.
› Select the connected source and open the image with GPS coordinates.
› Tap the function surface » Fig. 222 Surface in the image, a menu opens with the option to start route guidance.

The image can be obtained from an external device in which GPS coordinates are stored during the imaging process. This can be created and imported in the“MyDestination” application » Fig. 220 *on page 184*.

Map

Map display options

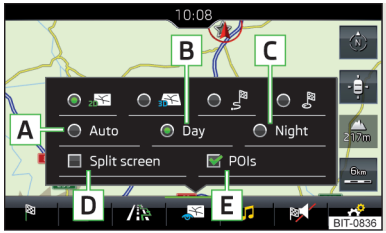

Fig. 223
Map options

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface .

The following function surfaces are displayed » Fig. 223.

- 2D - Two-dimensional map display
- 3D - Three-dimensional map display
- Display of the route from the current vehicle location to the destination
- Presentation of the destination or the next interim destination in the map (depending on the menu item setting) → **Advanced settings** → **Status line:**)

A Automatic map display in day or night mode (depending on the currently active vehicle lighting)
B Daytime map display
C Night-time map display
D Turns the split screen display on / off » page 179 (does not apply to vehicles with the infotainment Amundsen when the map is displayed in the digital instrument cluster)
E Switching on/ off of the selected POI categories display » page 181, *Entering a destination via the map point*

If the map scale of the 2D Map or 3D Map is greater than 10 km, then the map is automatically displayed as 2D and aligned in the direction of north. If the scale is increased beyond this value, then the map is switched back to the original representation.

Map scale

Fig. 224
Function surfaces for changing the map scale: Infotainment Columbus

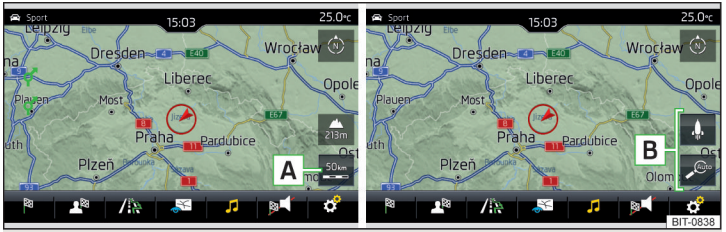

Fig. 225 **Function surfaces for changing the map scale: Infotainment Amundsen**

It is possible to change the map scale manually or to turn on the automatic change of scale.

› Tap on function surface A » Fig. 224 or» Fig. 225.

In area B » Fig. 224 or » Fig. 225, function surfaces for changing the map scale are displayed.

Types of manual scale change

- Touch the screen with two fingers and pull them apart or close them together.
- Turn the control knob (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus)
- Tap the function surface A » Fig. 224 and use the slider or tap the function surface / in area B » Fig. 224 (applies to Columbus Infotainment).

Switch on/off the automatic change of scale

If the automatic scale is active, the map scale will change automatically depending on the type of roads travelled (motorway - smaller map scale / town larger map scale) and from the manoeuvre to be carried out.

- To **switch on** the automatic scale change, go to the *Navigation* main menu and tap on function surface → .

Tap the functional surface is highlighted in green.

The automatic scale is only active as long as the map is centred on the vehicle position (the function surface is hidden).

- To **switch off** the automatic scale change, go to the *Navigation* main menu and tap on function surface → .

Tap the functional surface is highlighted in white.

The turning off occurs likewise when the map is moved or the map scale is changed manually.

Map view in reduced scale

- In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface A → .

The map scale is reduced for a few seconds and then restored.

Change map orientation

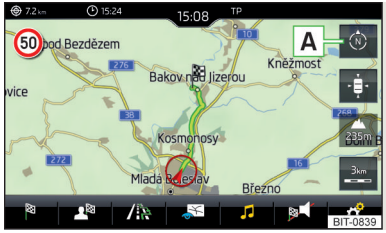

Fig. 226
Change the map orientation

Changing map orientation is possible under the following conditions.

✓ The map is in the 2D display.
✓ The map is centred (the function surface is hidden).
✓ The map scale is max. 10 km away.

› To **change the map orientation**, go to the *Navigation* main menu and tap on function surface A » Fig. 226.

The map is oriented to the north

The symbol the vehicle position rotates, the map and the Polar Star Symbol do not rotate.

With a map scale greater than 10 km, the map is automatically oriented towards north.

Map oriented to the direction of travel

The map and the Polar Star Symbol rotate, the vehicle position symbol does not rotate.

Map alignment

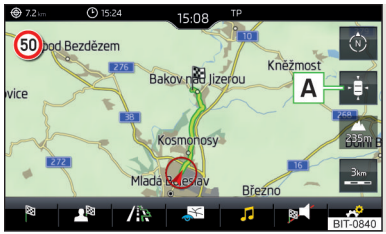

Fig. 227
Map centring

The moved map can be centred/aligned to the vehicle, destination or route position.

› To **centre the map**, tap on function surface A » Fig. 227.

Options for map display in the split screen

Applies to vehicles with Infotainment Columbus, without the digital instrument cluster.

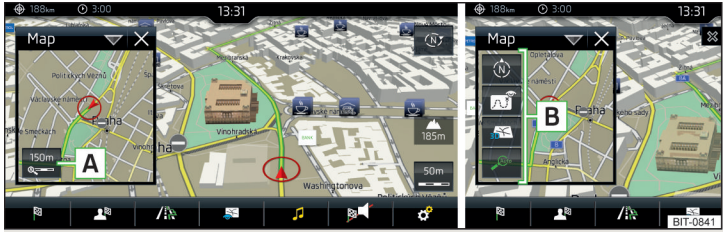

Fig. 228 **Map in split screen**

› In the split screen, tap on function surface A » Fig. 228.

Depending on the context, some of the following function surfaces will be displayed in area B.

- Map display with the route from the current vehicle location to the destination
- Change the map orientation
- 2D - Two-dimensional map display
- 3D - Three-dimensional map display
- Switch on/off the automatic change of scale

Map display options in the digital instrument cluster

Applies to vehicles with Infotainment Columbus, with the digital instrument cluster.

The ignition must be switched on for the map to be displayed in the digital instrument cluster.

Only applies to Infotainment Columbus
The map can be displayed in the digital instrument cluster and in infotainment at the same time.

The type of map shown in the digital instrument cluster can be selected from the main menu *Navigation* in the menu item → **Map** → **Map view in instrum. cluster:**.

The map scale can be adjusted with the dial A on the multifunction steering wheel » page 39,

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen
The map can be displayed in the digital instrument cluster or on the Infotainment display.

▶ To change the display, tap on function surface B » Fig. 208 *on page 178* in the main menu *Navigation*

The type of map shown in the digital instrument cluster is changed via the main menu *Navigation* in the menu item .

The map scale can be changed in one of the following ways.

▶ With the function surfaces in Infotainment » page 186,
▶ By turning the dial .
▶ With the dial A on the multifunctional steering wheel » page 39,

POIs display

The Infotainment system offers the possibility of displaying POI symbols on the map on the Infotainment screen.

› To **activate/deactivate the display**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **POIs**.
› To **select the POIs to be displayed**, go to the main *Navigation* menu and tap on the function surface → **Map** → **Select categories for POIs** and select the desired categories (max. 10).

Road sign display

Infotainment offers the option of displaying the traffic signs stored in the navigation data or detected by the front camera during guidance on the Infotainment screen G » Fig. 209 *on page 178*.

› To **switch on/off** the road sign display in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Map** → **Show road signs**.

For some vehicles it is possible to set an **alert when exceeding the permitted** speed limited set by a **road sign**.

› Tap the CAR sensor field and then the function surface → **Driver assistance** → **Speed warning:**.

For **trailer towing**, we recommend that you activate recognition of road signs relevant to trailers.

› Tap the CAR sensor field and then the function surface → **Driver assistance** → **Show road signs relevant to trailers.**

Route guidance

Introduction to the subject

A **route** is created by starting route guidance to a destination. Additional **intermediate destinations** can be added to the route.

The route guidance takes place as follows

- Through graphical driving instructions on the Infotainment screen and in the display of the instrument cluster.
- With nav. announcements.

Infotainment tries to allow for continued guidance even if the navigation data is incomplete or there is no data at all for the given area.

The route is recalculated each time if you ignore driving recommendations or change the route.

CAUTION

The nav. announcements provided may vary from the actual situations, e.g. due to out-of-date navigation data.

Destination details

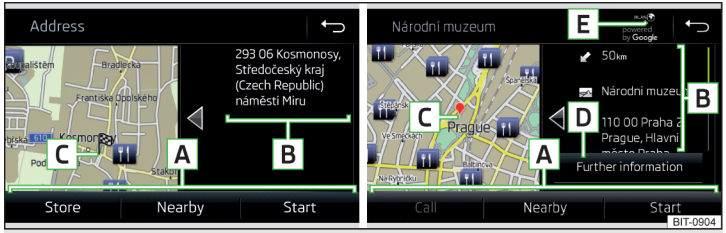

Fig. 229 **Details of the: in the navigation data / destination searched for online**

The following menu items and information are displayed in the destination details » Fig. 229.

A	Area with function surfaces
B	Detailed destination information
C	Destination position in the map
D	Detailed target information (if available)
E	Status of online services

Display the destination details

The destination details can be displayed in one of the following ways.

- While entering a destination.
- By tapping on the function surface > in the destination list.
- By tapping the NAV sensor field in the *Navigation* main menu (not applicable to Infotainment Columbus), the details of the last destination are displayed.

Function surfaces

Using function surfaces in the field A the following functions can be performed, depending on the context.

- Start / stop route guidance.
- Search for a nearby destination » page 179.
- Setting route options.
- Store destination.

▸ Edit destination (the object can be deleted, renamed or saved).
▸ Dial the POI phone number (if Infotainment is connected to a phone» page 159, *Pairing and connecting*).

Route calculation and start route guidance

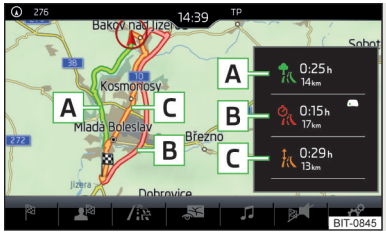

Fig. 230
Alternative routes

Route calculation is done on the basis of the set route options. The route options can be set: → **Route options**.

Alternative routes
With selection of alternative routes turned on, the following menu is displayed after the calculation of a new route » Fig. 230.

A Calculate the most economical route with shortest travelling time and distance travelled – the route is highlighted green
B Calculate the fastest route to the destination, even if a detour is necessary - the route is highlighted in red
C Calculate the shortest route to the destination, even if a longer travelling time is required - the route is highlighted in orange

In the function surfaces of the alternative routes, information on the route length and the estimated travel time and the following symbols are displayed (applies to Infotainment Columbus).

- Use of a toll motorway
- Use of a train / ferry
- Using a tunnel
- Use of a toll road
- Using a vignette duty highway

It is possible to select an already calculated alternative route before the calculation of the remaining routes is completed.

Selecting the type of route will start the route guidance.

If no route selection is made within 30 s after the calculation of all routes, the route guidance is automatically started according to the preferred route type.

Route calculation for the trailer

When driving with a trailer or any other accessory connected to the trailer socket, we recommend that you switch on the trailer recognition, if necessary to set the maximum speed for towing a trailer.

› For calculating the route for towing a trailer, tap the function surface in the main *navigation* menu → **Route options** → .
› To set the maximum speed for towing a trailer, tap the CAR sensor field and then the function surface → **Driver assistance** → *Trailer recognition* → **Maximum speed for trailer**.

Demo mode

The Demo mode provides a travel simulation to the entered destination. The function offers the option to travel through the calculated route “virtually”.

When the Demo mode is turned on, a menu for route guidance in the Demo mode or in normal operation is displayed before the start of route guidance.

› To **switch on/off**in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Demo mode**.

When the Demo mode is switched on, the route starting point can be defined.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface Tap→ **Advanced settings** → **Define demo mode starting point**.
› Define the starting point by entering the address or the current vehicle position.
› The demo mode starting point can also be set provided demo mode is turned on by tapping on the desired map location and selecting the menu item **Start Demo Mode** » page 181, *Entering a destination via the map point*.

Graphical driving recommendations

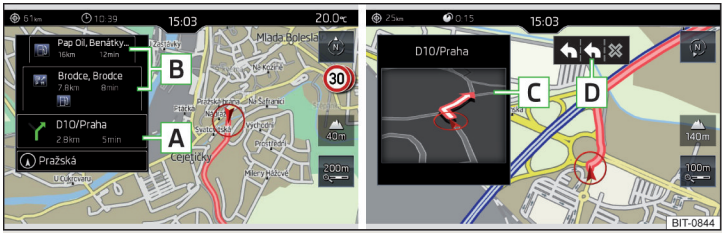

Fig. 231 **Driving recommendations / travel recommendation detail**

The display of the graphical driving recommendations is carried out in the split screen **Manoeuvre** as well as the display of the instrument cluster.

In the split screen **Manoeuvre** the following driving recommendations are shown » Fig. 231.

- **A** Street name / street number of the current vehicle position
- **B** Driving recommendations with street names / road numbers, with the route and the travel time to the manoeuvre location
- **C** Details of driving recommendation (is displayed near the manoeuvre)
- **D** Lane guidance

In the split screen **Manoeuvre**, Infotainment also announces TMC traffic obstructions and on motorways, car parks, petrol stations or restaurants.

Speed limits

With activated function → **Advanced settings** → **Note:**National border crossed , display the country-specific speed limits when crossing international borders.

These speed limits can be displayed by tapping on function surface → **Top speed** in the main menu *navigation*.

Navigation announcements

Infotainment issues nav. announcements during route guidance.

The nav. announcements are generated by the instrument system. Flawless clarity of the message (e.g., road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

The last navigation announcement can be repeated in the main *Navigation* menu by tapping on the function surface → .

The timing of the navigation announcement is dependent on the type of road and on the driving speed.

The type of nav. announcements can be set: → **Navigation announcements**.

Note

Route guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without navigation announcements.

Most common routes

The most frequently travelled routes are automatically saved by Infotainment. Of these, up to 3 routes can be offered, which best match the current time, day of the week as well as the vehicle position.

A route guidance to one of the routes used most frequently can be started as long as **no route guidance** takes place.

› To display the menu with the most frequently travelled routes, in the split screen, tap on tje function surface **Freq. routes** → **Show on map**.
› Select the desired route.

Then a selected route is calculated and the route guidance starts.

The menu display in the split screen can be turned on/off in the main menu *navigation* by tapping the function surface → **Route options** → **Freq. Routes** .

The stored most frequent routes can be deleted in the main menu *navigation* by tapping the function surface → **Manage memory** → **Delete user data** → **Freq. Routes** .

Note

Route guidance on the most frequently travelled route takes place without navigation announcements.

Finish route guidance

The route guidance can be finished in one of the following ways.

› The final destination is reached.
› In the main menu *Navigation* by tapping the function surface → **Stop route guidance**.

› By turning off the ignition for longer than 120 minutes.

Abort route guidance

If the ignition is switched off and on again, then the route guidance is continued depending on the stop time in one of the following ways.

- Within 15 min. - route guidance continues to take the calculated route into account.
- From 15 min to 120 min - after confirming the message on the infotainment screen, the route guidance continues, taking into account the calculated route.
- After 120 min - the route guidance is cancelled.

Route

Route details

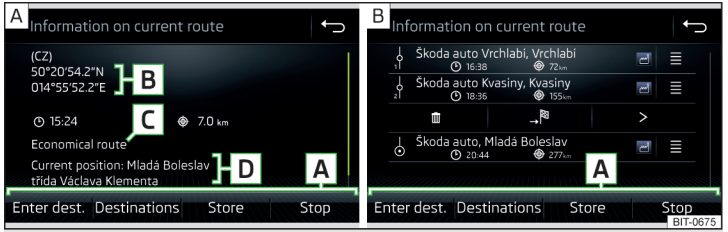

Fig. 232 **Route details: a route destination / several route destinations**

During route guidance, the **Route details** (Information about the current route) can be displayed.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Route details**.

A route destination
In the route plan, the following information is displayed at the destination» Fig. 232 - A.

- A Area with function surfaces
- B Destination information
- Estimated time of arrival at destination / remaining driving time to destination
- Remaining distance to the destination
- C Chosen route type (economic, fastest, shortest)
- D Current vehicle position (address / GPS coordinates)

The display of the arrival time or the remaining driving time can be adjusted as follows.

- In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Advanced settings** → **Time display:**.

Several route destinations
In the route plan, the following information is displayed at the respective destinations» Fig. 232 - B.

- A Area with function surfaces
- Stopover (with sequential number)
- Final destination
- Estimated time of arrival at destination / stopover
- Driving distance to destination / stopover
- Change destinations with each other
- Delete the destination
- Continuation of the route guidance from the selected target (previous waypoints are skipped)
- > Display the destination details » page 189

Insert destination into the route
- In the area A, tap on the function surface **Enter destination** and enter a new destination.
- **or:** Tap on the area A the function surface **destinations** and select an object in the list of stored destinations.

Each additional destination is added to the list as the first subsequent destination route.

Change positions of destinations with each other
- The relevant function surface and move the destination to the desired position.

With destinations on the route already reached the note **Dest. reached** is displayed below the destination name. It is not possible to change the position of these destinations with each other.

Store route

▶ In the area A, tap the function surface **Save**.
▶ Save the edited route as a new route or replace the existing saved route.

The route is saved in the route list » page 193.

Stop route guidance

▶ In the area A, tap the function surface **stop** .

Route change in the map

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

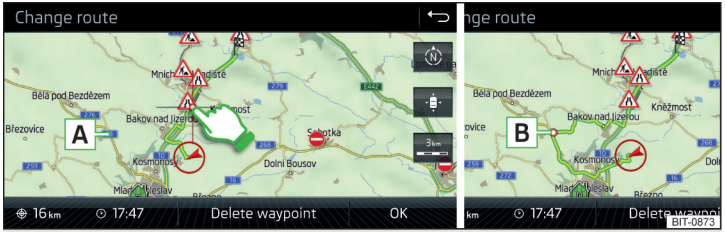

Fig. 233 **Route change in the map / route transit point**

A route in which no waypoints are contained, can be changed during route guidance by adding a transit point.

Add a transit point

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Change route in map**.
› Touch the screen in the route field and move the cross-point to the desired location on the map, e.g. A, move » Fig. 233).

The transit point B is added to the route » Fig. 233.

› Tap on the function surface **OK** .

Then a route is recalculated and the route guidance starts.

Customise transit point

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Change route in map**.
› Touch the transit point B and move to a different location on the map.
› Tap on the function surface **OK** .

Then a route is recalculated and the route guidance starts.

Remove transit point

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Change route in map**.
› Tap on function surface **Delete waypoint**.
› Tap on the function surface **OK** .

Then a route is recalculated and the route guidance starts.

route list

In the route list, it is possible to create routes, save, delete, or start navigation.

New route

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Routes** → **New route**.

Insert a route destination in one of the following ways.

› Tap on the function surface **Enter destination** and enter a new destination.
› **or:** Tap on the function surface **Destinations** and select a destination from the list of saved destinations.
› To save the created route, tap the function surface **Store**.
› Tap the function surface **Start**to start route guidance.

route import

A prerequisite for importing the route is that “Infotainment Online” » page 14 services are activated.

A route that has been created in the user profile on the “ŠKODA Connect Portal” website and sent to the Infotainment system can be imported into the Infotainment memory even **before switching on the ignition** .

If the route was created when the ignition was switched on and sent to Infotainment, Infotainment is not imported until after switching off (for at least 15 minutes) and after switching the ignition back on again.

› Switch on the ignition. When a new route is available, a message regarding the option to import this route appears in the Infotainment screen **automatically**.

If the user opts not to import the route immediately, the route can be imported **manually** later, as follows.

› In the main *Navigation* menu, tap the function surface → **Routes** Tap to check if a new route is available.
› **or:** Tap the MENU sensor field and then the function surface → .
› The function surface **import routes** Tap.

If a new route available, then a message is displayed on the Infotainment.

› Tap the function surface **Retrieve** to start route guidance.

After being successfully imported, the route is displayed in the list of saved routes.

Managing saved routes

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **routes** .

› Choose the desired route, and then select one of the following functions.

Delete Clear saved route

Edit - Edit the route » page 192, *Route details*

Start - Calculate route and start route guidance » page 190, *Route calculation and start route guidance*

Waypoint mode

Introduction to the subject

Only valid for Infotainment Columbus.

This mode is suitable for off-road navigation or for areas where maps are not available.

Infotainment allows the recording of waypoint tours driven using automatic of manually entered waypoints.

Then there is the possibility to start route guidance to the stored waypoint tour or to save the waypoint tour on the SD card.

Main menu

Fig. 234
Waypoint mode: Main menu

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap the function surface → **Waypoint mode**.

The main menu is displayed » Fig. 234.

Any **ongoing route guidance** is terminated after the selection of this **waypoint mode** menu.

Description of the function interfaces A » Fig. 234

- Context-dependent:
  - **No route guidance is taking place** - Start recording a waypoint tour/display saved waypoint tour management/exit menu
  - **A waypoint tour is being recorded** - Stop recording a waypoint tour/manually adjust waypoint/exit menu
  - **Route guidance is taking place** - Stop route guidance/skip the next waypoint/exit menu
- Setting the map display / show/hide the additional window / activate/de-activate the display of POIs on the map
- Operation of **Radio/Media** playback
- Setting *Navigation* is not available in the **Waypoint mode** menu

Record waypoints

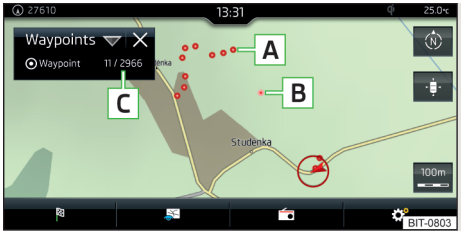

Fig. 235
Recording a waypoint tour

Start recording a waypoint tour

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on the function surface → **Record waypoint tour**.

Select one of the following recording types.

- **Select on map** - Enter destination on the map and start recording waypoints
- **Start recording** - Start recording waypoints without entering a destination

Recording a waypoint tour

After starting the recording of a waypoint tour the following contextual information may be displayed » Fig. 235.

A Automatically set waypoints
B Manually set waypoints
C Split screen **Waypoints** with the number of already set waypoints / maximum number of waypoints

Add waypoint manually

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on function surface → **Add waypoint manually**.

Stop recording

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on the function surface → **Stop recording**.

The recording also stops when the **waypoint mode** menu is exited.

The recorded waypoints are merged to a waypoint tour and stored in the waypoint memory after completion of the recording.

The recording cannot be continued once it has been stopped. A new recording must be started.

Guide along a saved waypoint tour

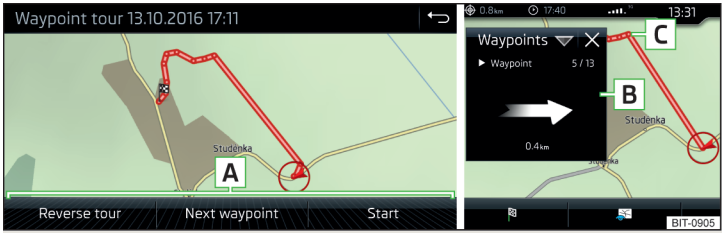

Fig. 236 **Display a waypoint / Guide along a waypoint tour**

Start guidance

› In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on the function surface → **Waypoint memory**.
› Select the desired route from the displayed list.
› Tap on the function surface > .
› Select one of the following menus A » Fig. 236.

- **Reverse tour** - Reverse the order of waypoints (suitable for guiding along a waypoint tour in the reverse direction)
- **Next. Waypoint.** - Skip to the next waypoint
- **Start** - starts route guidance

Route guidance

During the guidance along a waypoint tour, no nav. announcements are made by Infotainment.

When driving along the waypoint tour shown, follow as closely as possible the information shown on the Infotainment screen.

While driving along a waypoint tour, the split screen shows the **Waypoints** and the direction to drive as well as the distance to the next waypoint, the sequence number of the next waypoint and the total number of waypoints B » Fig. 236.

The waypoint tour from the vehicle position to the next waypoint “reduces” continuously while driving “ ” C » Fig. 236 .

If you drive past but very close to the next waypoint, the route guidance will continue with the next waypoint.

If you drive past a waypoint and this does “not disappear” from the waypoint tour (e.g. because the distance to this waypoint is too large), then there is the possibility to “skip” over this waypoint and continue the guidance to the next waypoint.

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on function surface → **Skip waypoint**.

Stop route guidance

▶ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on function surface → **Stop route guidance**.

The guidance also stops when **waypoint mode** is exited.

Manage waypoint tour memory

› to **display a list of saved and imported waypoint tours,** from main menu **Waypoint mode**, tap the function surface → **Waypoint memory**.

The name of the waypoint tour, the date and time of storage and the number of waypoints appears in the function surface for the waypoint tour.

› Choose the desired waypoint tour, and then select one of the following menu items.

- Store the waypoint tour on the SD card
- Delete the waypoint tour
- Rename the waypoint tour
- Display the waypoint tour » Fig. 236 *on page 195*

Import waypoint tour from the SD card

▸ In the **Waypoint mode** main menu, tap on the function surface → **Waypoint memory** → **Import**.

▸ Select the source of the waypoint tour recording and confirm the import.

Traffic reports

List of traffic reports

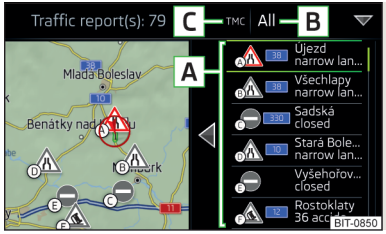

Fig. 237
List of traffic reports

The Infotainment system enables the reception of traffic reports, which include information regarding traffic congestion, using TMC (Traffic Message Channel) or online (when “Infotainment Online”» page 14 services are activated).

ŠKODA AUTO does not accept responsibility for the availability, content, up-to-dateness or evaluation of TMC traffic reports or other data provided by third parties. ŠKODA AUTO is not entitled to examine or adapt this data in any way. The data can only be edited by Infotainment in areas where it is available.

› To **display the list of traffic reports**, tap on the MENU sensor field and then tap the function surface .

In the list of traffic messages and the map, a max. of 6 messages are displayed, that are provided with a letter and a traffic obstruction symbol (e.g. ⚠, ⚠, ⛔) A » Fig. 237.

At present on the route traffic information is taken by using a nav. announcement.

Source of Traffic Information

On the position C » Fig. 237 can the following symbols are displayed.

TMC TMC Traffic Information (with strikethrough icon, the Infotainment is out of range of any traffic information provider)

Online traffic information

Display options

▸ **Route guidance is disabled** - All traffic messages are displayed.

▸ **Route guidance is taking place** - After tapping function surface B » Fig. 237 in the displayed menu, you can select all traffic messages by tapping the function surface **All areas**, **or** you can select only the traffic messages present on the route by tapping the function surface **Route**.

A traffic report may contain some of the following information.

- Symbol of the traffic obstruction
- Number of road affected
- Name of the location affected
- Description of the traffic obstruction

Distinguish the importance of a TMC message traffic obstruction using colour

The symbol for traffic obstruction (e.g. ⚠, ⚠, ⛔) precedes the obstruction and the length of the obstruction is shown in the map on the right along the route.

Depending on the context, the symbol for the obstruction is displayed in one of the following ways.

No route guidance is taking place

▸ **Red** - All traffic obstructions

Route guidance is not taking place

▸ **Grey** - The traffic obstruction is not on the route

▸ **Red** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route will not be recalculated and the route passes through the traffic obstruction

▸ **Orange** - The traffic obstruction is on the route, the route is recalculated and an alternative route is available

Distinguish the importance of a TMC message traffic obstruction using colour

The colour differentiation of traffic conditions on the provider of the online traffic reports depends.

To change the map orientation, go to the *Navigation* main menu and tap on function surface → **Map** → **Traffic flow settings**.

Update
The list of traffic reports will be updated by Infotainment on a continuous basis.

Detail of the traffic report

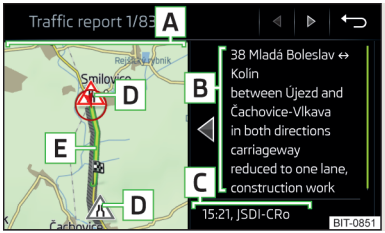

Fig. 238
Details of the traffic report

The details of the traffic message depends on the source of the traffic message.

› To **display** this, select the desired traffic report from the list of traffic reports.
› **or:** Tap on the traffic obstruction icon in the map.

Depending on the context, the following information and function surfaces are displayed » Fig. 238.

A Map of the affected location
B Description of the traffic obstruction
C Reception timing and information relating to the traffic report provider (if "ŠKODA Connect" is the provider, it is an online traffic report)
D Symbol of the traffic obstruction
E Length of the traffic obstruction

Dynamic route

Infotainment allows an evaluation of the traffic reports received during the route guidance. In fulfilling the following conditions, a bypass route is calculated, and the appropriate announcement is issued.

✓ The dynamic route function is turned on.
✓ The traffic congestion included in the traffic information is on the route.
✓ The traffic obstruction will be evaluated by Infotainment as of great importance.

› To **switch on/off** in the main menu *Navigation*, tap on the function surface → **Route options** → **Dynamic route**.

Entering/removing a traffic obstruction on the route manually

If a traffic obstruction is detected during route guidance (e.g. traffic jam), this traffic obstruction be manually entered into the route.

After entering, Infotainment calculates and provides an alternative route.

Enter traffic obstruction
› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Congestion ahead**.
› Adjust the length of the traffic obstruction.

The traffic obstruction will be displayed in red in the map to the right along the route.

Remove traffic obstruction
The traffic obstruction is removed from the route after completion of the route guidance or can manually be removed as follows.

› In the *Navigation* main menu, tap on function surface → **Delete "congestion ahead"**.

Vehicle systems

CAR - Vehicle settings

Introduction to the subject

In the menu CAR , journey data and vehicle information can be displayed and some vehicle systems can be set.

Reset to factory settings
You can reset to factory settings in the infotainment system in menu CAR / → → **Factory settings** menu.

Note
Settings relating to the vehicle systems can only be made when the ignition is switched on.

Main menu

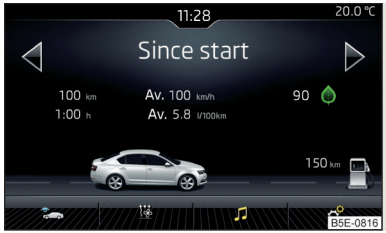

Fig. 239
Function surfaces in the main menu

› Tap on the button/sensor field CAR / MENU → to display the main menu with the following function surfaces » Fig. 239.

Selecting the following menu points
- **Dig. Instrument panel**
- **Sport** (applies to Infotainment Columbus, Amundsen)
- **Convenience consumers**
- **Journey data**
- **DriveGreen**
- **Vehicle status**

Operating playback - Radio / Media

Depending on the vehicle equipment with manual air conditioning: Setting the auxiliary heating and ventilation / operating the heated windscreen

Operation of the steering wheel heating

Vehicle system settings

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

Depending on equipment fitted, it is possible to switch the ignition on/off and start/stop the engine with the **key in the ignition** or using the **starter button**.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- The ignition must always be switched during the journey when the engine is idling. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 204, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never run the engine in an enclosed space (e.g. in garages) - there is the danger of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a push-start aid.
- On vehicles with the starter button, pay attention to where the key is located. The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. The engine will reach its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

The electronic immobiliser (hereinafter referred to as immobiliser) makes it more difficult for someone to attempt to steal or use your vehicle without authorisation.

Immobilizer
The immobilizer allows the engine to be started only with the original car key.

Malfunction of the immobilizer
If the immobiliser in the key fails, it is not possible to start the engine. A message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain that the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock - lock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until the steering lock engages.
› On vehicles with a **starter button**, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked automatically after the vehicle has been locked.

Steering lock - unlock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, insert the key into the ignition and turn on the ignition. If this is not possible, move the steering wheel slightly back and forth and thereby unlock the steering lock.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, get into the car and close the driver's door. Under certain circumstances, the steering lock can be unlocked only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Switching the ignition on/off

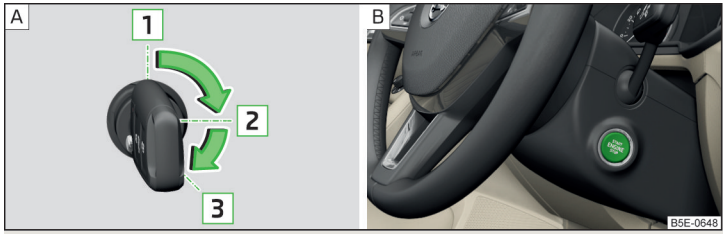

Fig. 240 **Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock / starter button**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 240 - A

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching on /off ignition in vehicles with starter button

› Press the » Fig. 240 - B button, the ignition is turned on / off.

On vehicles with **manual transmission** the pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

Starting engine / Stopping

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

Before starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and » !depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Starting engine

› On vehicles with **Ignition lock**, turn the key to position 3 and the engine starts» Fig. 240 *on page 200* A. Release the key, the engine will start automatically.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the starting process after 30 seconds.

› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button briefly » Fig. 240 *on page 200* - B, the motor will start automatically.

In vehicles with **diesel engines**, the glow plug warning light lights up after the ignition is switched on. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Stopping the engine

› Stop the vehicle.
› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, turn the key to position 1 » Fig. 240 *on page 200* A.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button » Fig. 240 *on page 200* - B, The engine and the ignition will be switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running for a prolonged period at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Emergency shutdown of the engine in vehicles with starter button

The system is equipped with a protective device against accidental switching off, the engine can only be shut off while driving in the event of an emergency.

› Keep the knob pressed » Fig. 240 *on page 200* - B or press it twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

! CAUTION

When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.

Note

- The engine running noises may be louder at first for a short time after starting the cold engine.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period, otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to run for approx. 10 minutes (also continuously).

Problems with the engine start - vehicles with starter button

Fig. 241
Starting the engine - press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 199 first.

If no engine start is possible and the display of the instrument cluster shows a message that the key could not be detected by the system or there is a system fault, then try to start the engine as follows.

› Press the starter button with the key » Fig. 241.

If the engine does not start, the help of a specialist garage is required.

! CAUTION

The key may not be detected by the system if the battery in the key is running out of charge or the signal fails.

START-STOPsystem

Introduction

The START-STOPsystem (hereinafter referred to as the system) reduces CO_2emissions and harmful emissions, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops or is at a standstill (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them are down to the driver, while others are systemic and can neither be influenced nor identified.

For this reason, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every** time the ignition is switched on (even when it has previously been manually deactivated with the A OFF button).

Note

If the engine has stopped due to the system, the ignition remains switched on.

Operation

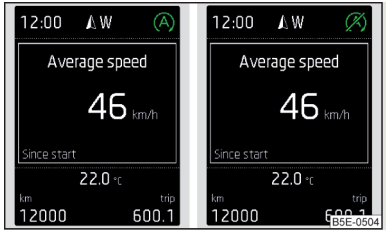

Fig. 242
Display

Vehicles with manual transmission

The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is moved into neutral and the clutch pedal is released.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission

The engine is automatically **switched off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt and the brake pedal is operated.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Conditions for the system function

The following conditions must be met for the system to function correctly.

✓ The driver's door is closed.

✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.

✓ The driving speed after the last stop was higher than 4 km/h.

System status

The system status is shown in the display when the vehicle comes to a halt » Fig. 242.

Ⓐ The engine is switched off automatically; when moving off, the ignition process will be initiated automatically.

Ⓐ The engine is not switched off automatically.

When stopping, the engine will not switch off for the following reasons, among others.

- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air conditioning or heating output (high blower speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

If the engine is shut down automatically and the system detects that the engine is required, such as when the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly, then the system automatically starts the engine.

More information about the current system status can be displayed in the infotainment screen in menu CAR / → → → **display Vehicle status**.

If there is a **system fault**, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during automatic stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
- No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shut-down takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

manually activate/deactivate system

Fig. 243
Button for the START-STOP system

› To **deactivate/activate**, press the Ⓐ OFF button » Fig. 243.

When the system is deactivated, the Ⓐ OFF symbol lights up in the button.

If the system is deactivated, it will be reactivated automatically after the ignition has been switched off and on.

Note

If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Brakes and Parking

Introduction

The **wear** of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. Under difficult conditions (e.g. urban, sporty driving style) the condition of the brakes should also be checked by a specialist garage between the service intervals.

The performance of the brakes can be delayed if the brakes are **damp, iced up in winter or if covered in a layer of salt**. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times » !.

Before travelling a **long distance with a steep gradient**, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. If you do have to brake, this should be carried out at intervals.

Emergency braking display - when an emergency braking is performed, the automatic flashing of the brake lights are used to alert the traffic behind.

New brake pads must first be “worn in” because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect. Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

A too low **brake fluid level** can cause **faults in the braking system**, and the warning light (!) lights up in the instrument cluster» page 41, (!) *Brake system*. If the warning light does not illuminate and an extended stopping distance is required, the driving style should be adapted according to the unknown cause of fault and restricted braking effect - seek the assistance of a specialist garage immediately.

The **brake booster** increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

! WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- Do not press the brake pedal if braking is now required. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear - risk of accident!
- Braking for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs should be carried out only if the traffic conditions permit. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- Recommendations for new brake pads have to be observed.
- When stopping and parking, the parking brake should always be applied firmly, otherwise the vehicle could move off - There is a risk of an accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

Handbrake

Fig. 244
Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 203 first.

The handbrake secures the vehicle against unwanted movement when stopping and parking.

Apply

› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release

› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 244.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) lights up in the instrument cluster when the handbrake is applied and the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied. The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of over 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Disengage the handbrake completely. A handbrake which is only partially disengaged can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake» page 87.

Parking

Read and observe ! on page 203 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » ! .

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select **1st gear** or **reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

▪ The exhaust system components can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!
▪ When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who could, for example, lock the vehicle or release the brake, unattended in the vehicle - risk of accident and injury!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

CAUTION

When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Manual gear changing

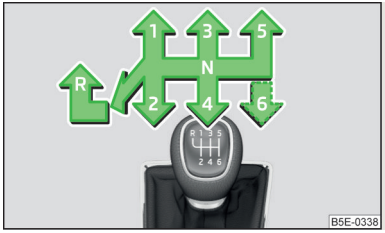

Fig. 245
The shift pattern

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

The gearshift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown on the gear lever » Fig. 245.

The gear shift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 50.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged

› Stop the vehicle.

› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Push the shift lever downwards fully to the left and then forward into **R**» Fig. 245.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gear shift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gear shift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

Read and observe ! on page 204 first.

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's footwell, only a footmat (supplied by the factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories) which is secured on the respective attachment points should be used.

WARNING

No objects should be located in the driver's footwell, otherwise the pedal operation could be disabled - risk of accident!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

The automatic transmission performs an automatic gear change irrespective of the engine load, the operation of the accelerator, the vehicle speed and the selected driving mode.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- Do not use the throttle if the forwards mode has been set using the selector lever prior to starting up - risk of accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of accident!
- If the vehicle stalls with the engine running, in the **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic mode, then the vehicle must be prevented from rolling away by means of the brake pedal. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever must always be set to **P** . Otherwise, the vehicle could start to move - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- If you want to move the selector lever from position **N** to position **D** / **S** whilst driving, the engine must be running at idling speed.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to hold the vehicle using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Select selector lever position

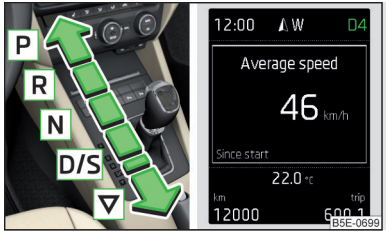

Fig. 246
Selector lever settings / display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 205 first.

Move the selector lever to change to the following positions » Fig. 246. In some positions you have to push the locking button » page 206, *Selector lever lock*.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 246.

P **Park** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill. The drive wheels are mechanically locked.

R **Reverse gear** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill and the engine is at idling speed.

N **Neutral (idle position)** - the power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted.

D/S **Forward mode / sports programme** - the gear change takes place in the position **S at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**

▽ (Sprung position) - choice between positions **D** and **S**

If the Sport driving mode is selected with the engine running » page 241, *Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)* , the transmission is automatically set in the **S** mode.

E – Economical driving mode

If the driving mode Eco or Individual (engine - Eco) » page 241 is selected and the selection lever is in the setting **D/S**, the transmission is automatically set to mode **E**. This mode cannot be selected with the selector lever.

The forwards mode is switched up or down automatically in mode **E at lower engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Selector lever lock

Fig. 247
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 205 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

Disengage selector lever from P mode or N

› Press the brake pedal and, at the same time, push the lock button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 247.

To move the selector lever from mode **N** to **D / S** only the brake pedal is pressed.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D/S**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

If it is not possible to release the gear selector from mode **P** in the usual manner, then this can be emergency unlocked » page 295.

Note

If you want to switch the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

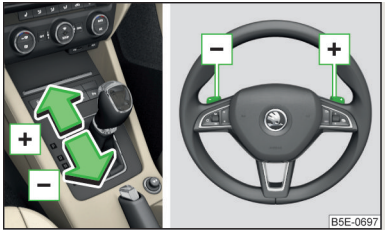

Fig. 248
Selector lever/multi function steering wheel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 205 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears with the selector lever or multifunction steering wheel.

Switching to manual shifting using the selector lever

› Push the gear selector from position **D/S** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle. The current gear is maintained.

Switching to manual shifting by using the rocker switches under the multifunction steering wheel

› To **change gear**, pull one of the rocker switches - / + briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 248.
› To **cancel** manual shift, pull the rocker switch + towards the steering wheel for more than 1 s.

If you do not pull one of the rocker switches - / + for a certain time, manual shifting of the gears is deactivated automatically.

Changing gear

› To **shift up**, tap the selector lever forwards + or pull the rocker switch + briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 248.
› To **shift down**, tap the selector lever backwards - or pull the rocker switch - briefly towards the steering wheel » Fig. 248.

The currently selected gear is marked with the letter **M** in the instrument cluster display.

The gear shift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 50.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached. If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine over revving.

Note

It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes.

Start and drive

Read and observe ! and ! on page 205 first.

Starting and temporarily pausing

› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Start the engine.
› Press the locking button and move the selector lever to the desired position » page 205.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected if stopping for a short time, such as at cross roads. However, you must apply the brake pedal in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

Accelerate to max. speed during the journey (kickdown function)

The kickdown function is applied when the accelerator pedal is pressed down in the forward mode.

The gear change is adjusted accordingly to reach the maximum acceleration.

Accelerate to maximum speed when starting (launch control function)

The launch control function is available in mode **S** or Tiptronic.

› Disable the TCS » page 210, *Braking and stabilisation systems*.
› START STOP deactivate » page 202, *manually activate/deactivate system*.
› Fully depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
› Fully depress the accelerator pedal with your right foot.
› Release the brake pedal - the vehicle is running at maximum acceleration.

Driving in neutral (“coasting”)

When releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

Operating conditions

▶ The selector lever is in the **D/S** position.
▶ Driving mode Eco or Individual (Drive: - Eco) is selected » page 241, *Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)*.
▶ The vehicle speed is 20-130 km/h.
▶ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

The gear is selected again automatically, when you depress the accelerator or brake pedal or pull one of the rocker switches - / + towards the steering wheel » page 206, *Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)*.

! WARNING

Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of control of the vehicle – risk of accident!

Running in the engine and economical driving

Run in engine

During the first 1,500 km, the driving manner determines the quality of the running in process on a new engine.

During the first 1,000 km, the engine should not be charged with more than 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine revs and without the trailer.

In the area of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres**, the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

Tips for economical driving

The fuel consumption depends on the driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

For an economical driving style, the following instructions must be observed.

- Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- Observe the recommended gear » page 50.
- Avoid full throttle and high speeds.
- Reduce idling.
- Avoid short distances.
- Ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure is maintained» page 279.
- Avoid unnecessary ballast.
- Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- Only switch on electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating) for as long as they are needed. In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ → → → **Fuel consumption:**, it is possible to display up to three consumers that are currently making up the largest share of fuel consumption.
- Before switching on, ventilate the cooling system briefly and do not use the cooling system with open windows.
- Do not leave windows open at high speed.

DriveGreen function

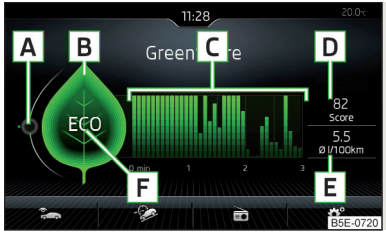

Fig. 249
Display in Infotainment screen

The DriveGreen function (hereinafter referred to as DriveGreen) evaluates the driving efficiency based on the information respecting the driving style.

DriveGreen can be displayed in the infotainment screen in menu CAR/ → → → **DriveGreen**.

A driving liquid display
With the driving is fluid, the display is located in the middle (near the green dot). When accelerating, the display moves down, and upwards when braking.

B "Green leaf"
The greener the leaf, the more economic the driving style. With less economical driving, the leaf is presented without any green colouring or it can be completely hidden.

C bar graph
The higher the green bars, the more economical the driving style. Each bar shows the driving efficiency in 5-second steps, the current bar is on the left.

D scoring (0 - 100)
The higher the indicated value, the more economical the driving style. When you tap the function surface D, a detailed assessment showing the driving efficiency during the last 30 minutes is displayed.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the assessment from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

E the average fuel consumption from the start
When you tap the E function surface, a detailed overview of the average fuel consumption during the last 30 minutes is shown.

If the trip lasts less than 30 minutes from the start, then the overview will add the overview of the average fuel consumption from the previous journey (the bars are shown in dark green).

F symbols
The display may show the following four symbols, which give information on the current driving style.

ECO Economical driving style

The current speed has a negative effect on fuel consumption.

The journey does not take place in a free-flowing manner, avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking

3▸4 Recommended gear

Tips for economical driving
Tap on the B leave to display tips for economical driving.

Note

When resetting the single-trip memory “from start”; the average consumption E, the driving assessment D, and the diagram C are also reset.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Driving Tips

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain that match the vehicle parameters » page 305, *Technical data* as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

When travelling off paved roads, we recommend activating Offroad mode » page 213.

WARNING

- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Too high a speed or an erroneous manoeuvre may cause serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These items can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. on parts of the fuel system or the brake system).

Driving through water

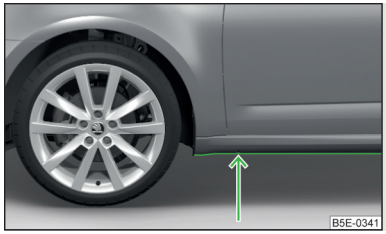

Fig. 250
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water. The water level must not reach above the lower edge of the lower brace » Fig. 250.
› Drive at a maximum speed of walking pace, otherwise a shaft may form in front of the vehicle which could enable water to enter the vehicle system (e.g. in the air induction system of the engine).
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- Water entering the vehicle systems (e.g. the air induction system of the engine) can cause serious damage to the vehicle!
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

Introduction

WARNING

- The assistance systems only serve to support the driver and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
- The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Only enable, disable or set the assistance systems when you have the car fully under control, in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Radar sensor

Fig. 251
Installation location of the radar sensor

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

The radar sensor (hereinafter referred to only sensor) uses electromagnetic waves to capture the traffic situation ahead of the vehicle. The radar is located under a cover » Fig. 251.

The sensor is part of the ACC » page 234 and Front Assist » page 239systems.

The sensor function may be impaired in the event of one of the following situations arising.

- The sensor cover is soiled (e.g. with mud, snow and the like).
- The area in front of and around the sensor cover is obscured (e.g. by labels, auxiliary headlights and the like(.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- In exceptional cases, the sensor may be covered in the area beneath the cover, e.g. due to snow.

If the sensor cover or the sensor is dirty or covered, a message to that effect from the ACC system » page 238, *Malfunctions* or Front Assist » page 241, *Malfunctions* system appears in the instrument cluster display.

WARNING

- If you suspect that the sensor is damaged, deactivate the ACC system and Front Assist system» page 236, » page 241. Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- A collision or damage in the front or lower area of the vehicle could affect the sensor function - there is risk of accident! Have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the area in front of and around the sensor cover. This can lead to impaired function of the sensor - risk of accident!

CAUTION

Remove snow with a brush and ice with a solvent-free de-icer from the sensor cover.

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

The error display is in Chapter » page 39, *Warning lights*.

WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

ESC improves vehicle stability in critical driving situations (e.g. if the vehicle starts to skid) by the braking the individual wheels to maintain the direction.

During an ECS intervention, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

ESC Sport

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

ESC Sport allows for a sportier driving style. With ESC Sport activated, no ESC intervention takes place when the vehicle slightly oversteers and understeers, and ASR is so limited that the drive wheels can be spun.

Activation

› Press and hold down the » Fig. 252 *on page 211* button.
› **or:** In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **ESC system: → ESC Sport**.

When **activated**, warning light **lights up** in the instrument cluster and a corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Deactivation

› Press the » Fig. 252 *on page 211* button.
› **or:** In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **ESC system: → Activated**.

When **deactivated**, the warning light in the instrument cluster goes out and a corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

An ABS intervention can be noticed through **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** and distinct noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

The MSR prevents the blocking tendency of the drive wheels when shifting down or with an abrupt deceleration (e.g. on icy or otherwise slippery road surfaces).

If the drive wheels lock, the engine speed is automatically increased. This reduces the braking effect of the engine, and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Traction control (ASR)

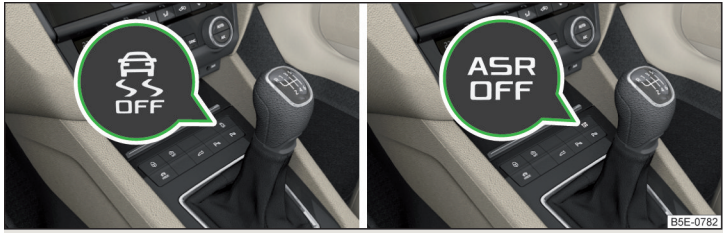

Fig. 252 **System button: Vehicle with ESC / vehicle without ESC**

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

The TCS prevents spinning of the drive wheels. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During TCS intervention, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Deactivation

› Press the » Fig. 252 button.
› **or:** Press the ASR OFF » Fig. 252 button.
› **or:** In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **ESC system: → ASR off**.

When **deactivated**, warning light **lights up** in the instrument cluster and a corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Activation

› Press the » Fig. 252 button.
› **or:** Press the » Fig. 252 button.
› **or:** In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **ESC system: → Activated**.

When **activated**, the warning light in the instrument cluster goes out and a corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

▶ When driving with snow chains.
▶ When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
▶ When it is necessary to “rock” a car free when it has become stuck.

Note

On vehicles without the ESC system, warning light **does not light up** upon deactivation of the TCS system, but only a message is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL and XDS)

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

XDS+ is an extension to the electronic differential lock (EDL). The XDS+ responds to the release of pressure on the wheels during fast cornering by means of a braking intervention on the wheel on the inside of the corner on the driven axle. By decelerating the individual wheels, this prevents the vehicle from over-steering or understeering. This has a positive effect on the driving stability and steerability of the vehicle.

Active steering assist (DSR)

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

When driving on slopes, Hill Start Assist (hereinafter referred to simply as the system) allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without the vehicle rolling downhill on its own.

The vehicle is braked by the system for about 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal.

The system is active as of a 5% slope, if the driver door is closed. The system is only ever active on slopes when starting off in forward or reverse.

Multicollision brake (MCB)

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

MCB helps to decrease speed after a collision by means of automatic braking interventions and to stabilise the vehicle. This reduces the risk of a subsequent crash due to uncontrolled vehicle movement. ▶

The automatic brake interventions can take place only if the following conditions are met.

✓ A **head-on** or **side** collision occurred.
✓ The impact speed was greater than approx. 10 km/h.
✓ The brakes, the ESL and other required electrical systems remain functional after impact.
✓ The accelerator pedal is not actuated.

Trailer stabilisation system (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 210 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
✓ The parking aid is activated.
✓ The speed is greater than 60 km/h.

Further information » page 250, *Towing device and trailer*.

Offroadmode

Introduction

Offroad mode includes functions that help to overcome routes that are difficult to navigate when travelling on non-paved roads.

But even with offroad mode activated, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

! WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.

! CAUTION

- Offroad mode is not designed for use on common roads.
- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by ŠKODA AUTO to ensure Offroad mode operates correctly.

Operation

Fig. 253 **Button for selecting the driving mode / function surface on the Infotainment screen**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 213 first.

Offroad mode intervenes at a speed up to 30 km/h.

We recommend that you activate the Offroad mode for every trip on non-paved roads.

› To **activate**, press the MODE » Fig. 253button.

In the Infotainment screen, a running mode menu » Fig. 253 appears.

› Press the**Offroad** function surface on the Infotainment screen. Warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.
› To **deactivate**, press the MODE » Fig. 253 button and, in the infotainment screen, choose mode other than the **Offroad** mode.

The following functions are integrated into Offroad mode.

- Hill descent assistant » page 214
- ESC Offroad » page 214
- ASR Offroad » page 214
- EDS Offroad » page 214
- ABS Offroad » page 214

Note

If the engine is “stalled” while travelling in Offroad mode, you should check after engine re-start to see if Offroad mode is still enabled. It may need to be activated again.

Hill Descent Assist

Read and observe and on page 213 first.

The hill descent assistant (hereinafter referred to as assist system), with its automatic braking action on all wheels, ensures a constant speed is maintained on a steep slope when driving forwards and reversing.

During an intervention, the **white** warning light in the instrument cluster lights up.

The assist system is automatically engaged under the following conditions.

- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ For vehicles with **Manual transmission** the shift lever is in the neutral position and or the 1st, 2nd, 3rd gear, or reverse gear is engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the R, N, D/S position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The downhill gradient is at least 10 % (when driving over sleepers, the limit can briefly drop to 8 %).
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.

Driving speed

Initiate the downhill descent at a reasonable speed of approx. 2 - 30 km/h, the assist system constantly maintains this speed as you travel downhill.

If a forwards or reverse gear is engaged on vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the speed must be high enough to avoid “stalling the engine”.

The driving speed can be changed by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal. This is true even if the shift lever is in the neutral position and the selector lever in the N position. Engagement of the assist system is resumed after the pedal is released.

WARNING

For the correct operation of the assistant the road surface must be sufficiently adherent. The assistant cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil due to physical reasons (e.g. ice or mud). - there is a risk of an accident!

ESC Offroad

Read and observe and on page 213 first.

ESC Offroad makes driving on dirt roads easier, as no ESC interventions occur when the vehicle is slightly over or under steered.

ASR Offroad

Read and observe and on page 213 first.

TCS Offroad makes starting and driving on an unpaved surface easier as it partially allows wheel-spin.

Note

When disabled, TCS » page 211 Offroad mode works without the support of TCS Offroad.

EDS Offroad

Read and observe and on page 213 first.

EDS Offroad supports the driver when driving on a surface with different grip under the drive wheels or when driving over bumps.

A spinning wheel or wheels are braked earlier and with more force than with the intervention of the standard EDS system.

ABS Offroad

Read and observe and on page 213 first.

ABS Offroad supports the driver when braking on an unpaved surface (e.g. gravel, snow etc.).

The system generated by a controlled locking of the wheels braked wheel before a “wedge” of piled material, which shortens the braking distance.

Maximum system efficiency is achieved when the front wheels are in the straight ahead position.

Parking aid (ParkPilot)

Introduction

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to as system) uses acoustic signals or the Infotainment screen when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, in section *Introduction*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. There is a danger that such objects or people may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. There is a danger that obstacles may not be detected by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, make sure that there are is not any small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post etc., in front of or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 254 *on page 215* clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - “incorrect recognition of obstacle”.
- Accessories fitted to the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe and on page 215 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR / tap on function surface → **Parking and manoeuvring**.

- *ParkPilot* - Settings for the parking aid
  - **Activate automatically** - Activate/deactivate the compact parking aid display (when driving forward)
  - **Front volume** - Adjust the volume of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Front tone setting** - Setting the pitch of the beeps for obstacle detection in front
  - **Rear volume** - Set the volume level of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Rear tone setting** - Setting the pitch of the beeps for the rear obstacle detection
  - **Entertainment fading while parking** – Lowers the audio volume (e.g. radio volume) with activated parking aid
  - **Manoeuvre braking** - Activation / deactivation of the automatic emergency braking

Operation

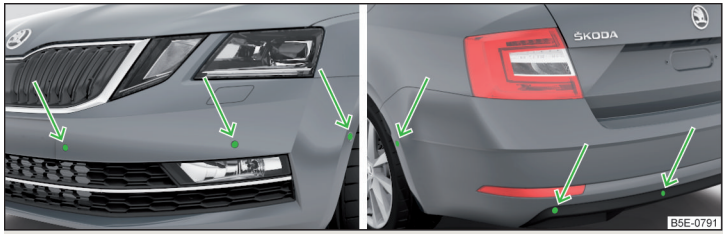

Fig. 254 **Installation location of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front/rear**

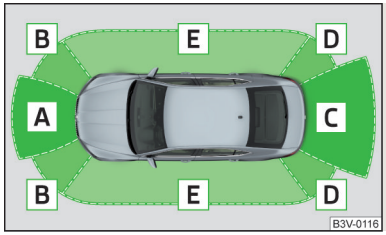

Fig. 255
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 215 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment,, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 254.

Depending on the equipment, the following system versions are possible » Fig. 255.

- Variant 1: warns of obstacles in areas C, D.
- Variant 2: warns of obstacles in areas A, B, C, D.
- Variant 3: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 255	Variant 1 (4 sensors)	Variant 2 (8 sensors)	Variant 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	90
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	90
E	-	-	90

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of approx. 30 cm a continuous tone starts to sound - danger area.

The acoustic signals can be set in Infotainment » page 215.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, only the areas A and B » Fig. 255 are active in the system.

Note

- If with **Version 3** vehicles not all fields around the vehicle silhouette are active after activation, the vehicle should be moved forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- The setting of the acoustic signals is stored (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Display Infotainment screen

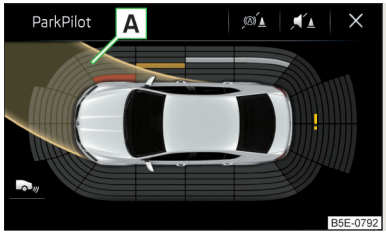

Fig. 256
Screen display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 215 first.

Function surfaces and warnings » Fig. 256

A	Road display.
✕ / ⮌	Depending on the Infotainment type: Switching off park assistant display.
	Switching audible parking signals on/off.
	Disable / enable the automatic emergency braking.
	Change to rear-view camera display .
	There is an obstacle in the collision area (the distance to the obstacle is less than 30 cm). STOP Stop moving in the direction of the obstacle!
	There is an obstacle in the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
	An obstacle is located outside of the road (the distance to the obstacle is greater than 30 cm).
!	System failure (there is no indication of obstacles).

Road display
The road display A » Fig. 256 indicates the road on which the vehicle would take the current steering wheel and shift / selector lever position.

The shift lever is in the neutral position and the gear selector is in mode **N**. the road display is at the front.

Activation / deactivation

Fig. 257
System key (option 2, 3)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 215 first.

Activation
To activate the system, engage reverse gear and, on vehicles with **version 2 and 3**, also press the P button » Fig. 257 button.

During activation, an alarm sounds and the P symbol lights up in the button.

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **version 2 and 3**, the system is deactivated when you press the P button, or automatically at a speed of more than 15 km/h (the P symbol in the button goes out).

Fault display
Vehicles with **Variant 1**
- After system activation an acoustic signal sounds for approx. 3 seconds (there is no obstacle near the vehicle).

Vehicles with the **Variants 2 and 3**
- After system activation, the P symbol flashes in the button.
- In the display of the instrument cluster a message about an error of the Park-Pilot system appears (at the same time there is an audible signal).

Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the P button at a speed of below 15 km/h.

Automatic system activation when moving forward

Fig. 258
Infotainment screen: Display with automatic activation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 215 first.

Automatic system activation occurs when moving forward at a speed below 10 km/h when the vehicle approaches an obstacle.

After activation, the following is shown in the left pane of Infotainment display » Fig. 258.

Acoustic signals are sounded as of a distance from the obstacle of around 50 cm.

The automatic display can be activated / deactivated in Infotainment » page 215.

Note
The setting (activate / deactivate) of the automatic display is stored (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Automatic emergency braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 215 first.

If the system detects a collision risk when travelling forwards or reversing at a speed up to 8 km/h, there is an automatic emergency braking to reduce the impact consequences.

Disable / Enable
The brake function can be enabled / disabled in the Infotainment in the menu **Parking and manoeuvring** » page 215.

After switching the ignition on and off, the systems remains activated / deactivated depending on the setting prior to switching off the ignition.

The brake function can also be deactivated once with the function surface » Fig. 256 *on page 216*.

CAUTION
Automatic emergency braking will only work if the system is engaged by engaging reverse gear or pressing the button P has been activated.

Rear traffic alert and wizard for “Blind spot”Monitoring

Introduction

Fig. 259
Installation location of the radar sensors

The Rear Traffic Alert and Wizard for “blind spot” monitoring works based on the information from the radar sensors in the rear bumper » Fig. 259. The radar sensors are not visible from the outside.

Rear Traffic Alert
The Rear Traffic Alert (hereinafter referred to as system) warns when leaving a parking space from a transverse parking space about any approaching vehicles.

If necessary, the system tries to avoid a collision with automatic braking, or at least to mitigate the consequences.

Wizard for “blind spot”monitoring
The wizard for“blind spot monitoring” (hereafter referred to as system) draws attention to vehicles travelling in the same direction in the next lane in the so-called blind spots.

The “blind spot” is an area that is not easily visible in a rear-view mirror or even directly from the vehicle.

WARNING
Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, in section *Introduction*.

WARNING
- In the case of a collision or damage to the rear of the vehicle, the function of the systems may be affected - risk of accident! Have the vehicle checked by a specialist garage.
- Do not cover the sensor area - the function of the systems could be limited.
  - Remove snow, ice and such obstacles from the sensor environment immediately.

WARNING
The wizard for “blind spot”monitoring is limited by physical and system-related limits. Therefore, in the following situations the system can be delayed in drawing attention (or not at all) to a vehicle in the next land.
- When a vehicle is approaching at a very high speed.
- When passing through a very sharp curve or a roundabout.

CAUTION
- If a trailer or other accessory is to be connected to the trailer socket, then the two systems are not available.
- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the system function may be limited - “failure to recognise a vehicle”.
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Rear Traffic Alert- Operation

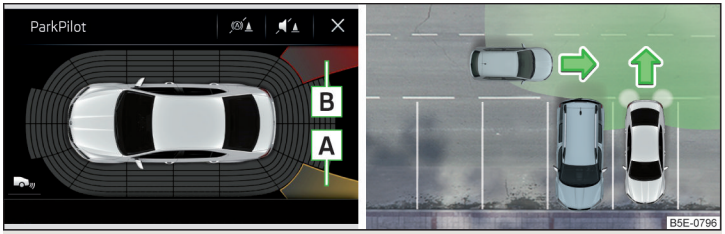

Fig. 260 **Infotainment screen: warning indicator / driving situation**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 218 first.

With the ignition switched on, the area next to and behind the vehicle is monitored by the radar sensors of the system. If an approaching vehicle is detected from the rear of the vehicle » Fig. 260, the system warns of this fact.

Warning - vehicles with parking aid
You will hear a continuous tone and one of the following warning levels appears on the Infotainment screen » Fig. 260.

A An oncoming vehicle is detected. Do not continue driving backwards and check around the vehicle.

B A vehicle is detected in the collision zone. Do not continue reversing STOP.

Warning - vehicles without parking aid
An acoustic signal is sounded and information asking the driver to observe the traffic behind is shown in the instrument cluster.

Automatic emergency braking
If the driver does not react to the warning and the system detects an impending collision, then this can trigger an automatic braking at a speed up to 10 km/h. A corresponding message is shown in the information cluster display.

Wizard for “Blind Spot”Monitoring - Operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 218 first.

At a speed of more than 15 km/h, the area alongside and behind the vehicle is monitored by the system. At the same time, the distance and the difference in speed between your vehicle and other vehicles in the monitored area are measured.

When driving, the system monitors an area the size of a normal lane width to the left and right.

If a vehicle is detected in the “blind spot” area, the system indicates this vehicle by the warning light in the exterior mirror.

System constraint
The system is unable to recognise the specific lane width by means of sensors. Therefore it may respond to a vehicle in a lane further away in the following scenarios, for example.
- When driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
- Driving around a bend.

The system may also respond to objects on the roadside such as crash barriers, noise barriers or similar objects.

Wizard for “Blind Spot”Monitoring - driving situations and warnings

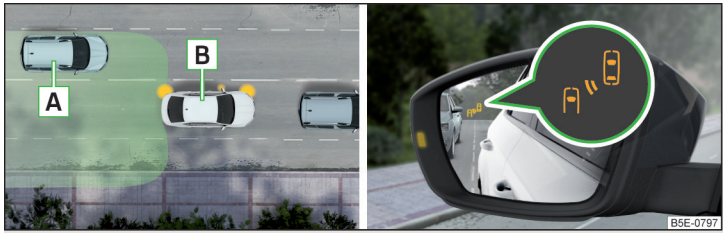

Fig. 261 **Driving situation / indicator light in the left outside mirror indicates the driving situation**

Fig. 262 **Driving situation / indicator light in the right outside mirror indicates the driving situation**

Read and observe and on page 218 first.

In the following situations, the indicator light in the outside mirror indicates a vehicle detected in the “blind spot”.

- Your vehicle B is being overtaken by vehicle A» Fig. 261.
- Your vehicle C is overtaking vehicle D at a speed of max. 10 km higher» Fig. 262. If the speed during the overtaking is even higher, then there is no warning by the warning light.

The warning is always displayed in the exterior mirror on the side of the vehicle where a vehicle is detected in the “blind spot”.

The greater the speed difference between the two vehicles, the earlier the warning of the vehicle overtaking you is provided (by means of the warning light).

Two warning levels

light ups - a vehicle has been detected in the “blind spot”.

flashes - a vehicle has been detected in the “blind spot” and **the turn signal is switched on**.

An advanced warning for vehicles with Lane Assist

flash also if **the steering wheel** is turned in the direction of the vehicle in the “blind spot” . Therefore the Lane Assist » page 244 must be enabled and the boundary line between the vehicles detected.

If in this case your vehicle indicates crossing the boundary line, with a short vibration of the steering wheel.

Note

The brightness of warning light is dependent on the vehicle lighting setting. With the low or high beam on the brightness of the light will be lower.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe and on page 218 first.

The activation or deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of the following ways.

- In the instrument cluster display » page 55, **Assist systems** *menu item*.
- In the infotainment system, in menu CAR / → → → **Driver assistance** (applies to the wizard for “blind spot” monitoring).
- In the infotainment system, in menu CAR / → → → **Parking and manoeuvring** (Applies to Rear Traffic Alerts).

After switching off and switching on the ignition, depending on the setting prior to switching off the ignition, the systems remains activated / deactivated.

Note

During activation of the “blind spot” monitoring wizard, the warning lights light up in the two exterior mirrors.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 218 first.

If the systems are not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty

If the sensor is dirty or covered, a message indicating that there is no sensor view appears. Clean or remove the obstructing object from the sensor environment » Fig. 259 *on page 218*.

Systems unavailable

If the systems are unavailable, a message regarding unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the systems are still not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

System fault

In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear View Camera

Introduction

The rear view camera (following as system) helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by displaying the area behind the vehicle on Infotainment screen (hereinafter only known as screen).

There are four modes available for different situations during the park and manoeuvring action. The mode change is carried out using the function surfaces on the screen » page 222.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The system displays auxiliary boxes and lines regardless of the current vehicle environment. The driver is responsible for checking that there is no obstacle in the selected parking space and that the vehicle can safely park in this space.
- The camera may not be soiled or obscured, otherwise the system function will be significantly affected - there is a risk of accident. For information on cleaning » page 262.

CAUTION

- The camera image is distorted by contrast with eyesight. For this reason, the screen display is only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin posts, chain link fences, grilles or uneven road surfaces may not be properly displayed in terms of screen resolution.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

Note

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Spraying takes place automatically, together with spraying the rear or windscreen.

Operation

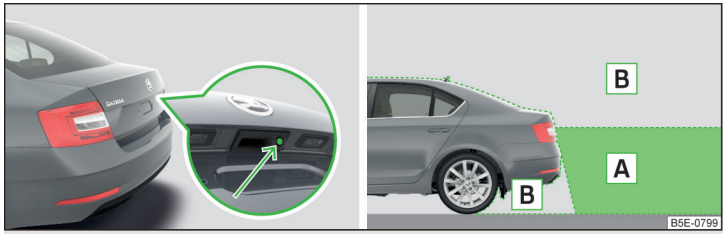

Fig. 263 **Installation location of the camera / scanned area behind the vehicle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the grip of the boot lid » Fig. 263.

Area behind the vehicle » Fig. 263

A Detection range of the camera
B Area outside the detection range of the camera

The system can assist the driver when parking and manoeuvring under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The system is activated.
✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 15 km/h.
✓ The area behind the vehicle is clearly visible.
✓ The selected parking / manoeuvring area is clear and even.

Activation/deactivation

Fig. 264
Button for activation / deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

Activation
The system is activated by selecting reverse gear or pressing the symbol P button» Fig. 264.

During activation, an alarm sounds and the P symbol lights up in the button.

The mode for traverse parking is displayed on the screen.

Deactivation
The system is deactivated when you press button P, switch off the ignition, put the selector lever in position **P**, or when you drive forwards at a speed of more than 15 km/h (the P symbol in the button goes out).

Function surfaces

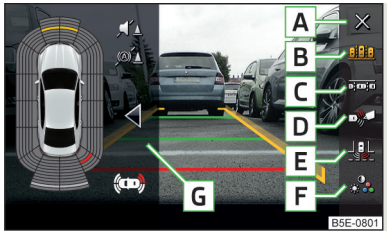

Fig. 265
Function surfaces

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

It is possible to adjust the parking and manoeuvring mode by means of the function surfaces.

Function surfaces » Fig. 265

- A Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle
- B Mode - traverse parking
- C Mode - parallel parking
- D Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring
- E Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle (wide view)
- F Screen settings - brightness, contrast, colour
- G Parking aid (thumbnail display)
  ◀ / ▶ Switch thumbnail display on/off
  Switch to full screen display

Orientation lines and lane

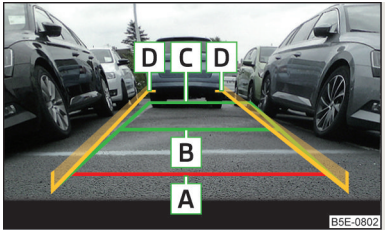

Fig. 266
Orientation and lane lines

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

In the modes for transverse and parallel parking guidance, orientation lines for the assessment of distance and lane lines are displayed on the screen.

Screen display » Fig. 266

- A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
- B The distance is about 100 cm.
- C The distance is about 200 cm.
- D The lane lines terminate approximately 300 cm behind the vehicle.

The distance may vary slightly depending on the load of the vehicle and the road inclination.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Lane

The lane lines D » Fig. 266 change depending on the steering angle and indicate the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position.

! CAUTION

The objects shown on the screen can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.

- Protruding objects, such as the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Mode - traverse parking

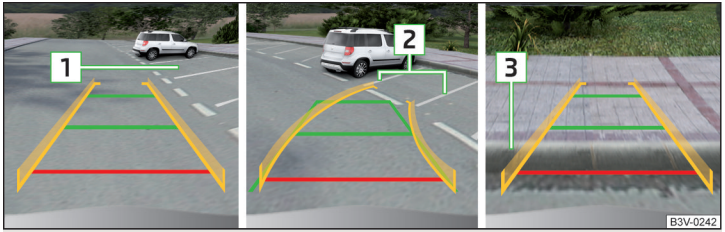

Fig. 267 **Screen display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

This mode supports the driver when reverse parking in a parking space that is transverse to the road.

Parking manoeuvre

› Select a suitable parking space.
› Press the P button » Fig. 264 *on page 222* button.
› At the selected parking space 1 » Fig. 267 slowly drive past and stop the vehicle.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the steering wheel so that the lane lines lead into the parking space 2.
› Carefully move backward and steer so that the yellow lines are still leading into the parking space.
› At the latest when the red line of the back of the parking space (for example, curb) 3 is touched, stop the vehicle.

Mode - parallel parking

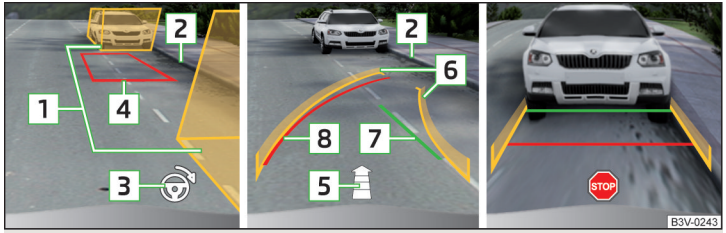

Fig. 268 **Screen display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

This mode supports the driver when reverse parking in a parking space that is parallel to the road.

Parking manoeuvre

› When driving past a parking space push the button P » Fig. 264 *on page 222*.
› Tap the function surface C » Fig. 265 *on page 222*.

The screen shows auxiliary boxes for both road sides.

› Switch on the indicator for the side on which you want to park.

The auxiliary boxes for the opposite side will be hidden.

› Stop the vehicle stop so that there are no obstructions in the gap between the auxiliary boxes 1 » Fig. 268 and the rear box does not extend over the side of the parking space 2 (e.g. kerb).
› Turn the steering wheel in the direction recommended 3 until the colour of the trapezoidal frame 4 is green. Hold the steering wheel in this position.
› Once the arrow 5 appears on the screen, reverse (when reversing in the parking space the arrow will get shorter).

The screen shows the yellow lane lines 6 and the green line 7.

If the steering angle is corrected while reversing then the red line 8 appears (required roadway alignment).

› In this case, adjust the steering wheel so that the yellow lines 6 the red line 8 fade into each other.
› Carefully reverse until STOP appears on the screen or the green line 7 is congruent with the lateral boundary of the parking space (e.g. kerb) 2.
› Stop the vehicle and steer opposite until the yellow lines 6 the red line 8 fade into each other (required roadway alignment). Hold the steering wheel in this position.

Orientation lines are displayed » Fig. 266 *on page 222* on the screen.

› Carefully move backwards.
› Stop the vehicle when STOP appears on the screen, or at a safe distance from the obstacle situated behind the vehicle.

Note

The guidance in the parking space is cancelled due to the system when the steering wheel is set for a period of time against the required road direction. The parking is to be started again.

Mode - driving up to a trailer / distance monitoring

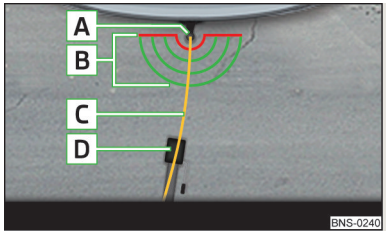

Fig. 269
Screen display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

In this mode, the area behind the vehicle is shown at the top of the screen.

Vehicles with towing hitch
If your vehicle is factory fitted with a tow-bar, this mode supports the driver when the vehicle approaches a trailer draw bar.

Screen display » Fig. 269
A Ball head of the towing device
B Lines for the distance estimation (at a distance of about 10 cm)
C Line for approaching a trailer draw bar
D Trailer draw bar

The line C moves depending on the steering angle and indicate the roadway on which the vehicle would take with the current steering wheel position.

Vehicles without towing hitch
If your vehicle is not factory equipped with a towing hitch, a red line for monitoring the distance to obstacles is displayed on the screen at a distance of 40 cm behind the vehicle.

Mode - monitor the area behind the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 221 first.

In this mode, the area behind the vehicle is shown on the screen.

The mode is suited for the entire view of the situation behind the vehicle.

Park Assist

Introduction

Park Assist (following referred to system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places or also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements **only** when entering or leaving a parking space. The driver operates the brake, accelerator or clutch pedal and the shift / selector lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The Park Assist is an extension of the parking aid » page 215 and operates on the basis of data collected by the ultrasonic sensors.

For this reason, the chapter on the parking aid is to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During parking manoeuvres on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) it is possible to stray from the calculated road. It is therefore recommended that you do not use the system in such situations.

CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by ŠKODA AUTO.
- Do not use the system if snow chains or an emergency wheel are fitted.
- If wheels other than those approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If other vehicles are parked behind or on the curb, the system can drive your vehicle over the kerb or up to the kerb - there is a risk of damage to the wheels. Intervene in time if necessary.

Note

- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed of up to about 5 km/h.
- The parking procedure can be stopped at any time by pressing the P button » Fig. 270 *on page 225* button or by a steering intervention.

Operation

Fig. 270
System button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- While the parking space search is going on, a measurement and evaluation of the parking space size is completed.
- The display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only display) shows suitable parking spaces and a parking mode is recommended.
- The display shows instructions and information before the start and during the parking.
- Based on the calculated road surface, the front wheels will be automatically rotated during the parking.

Conditions for the system function

The system can look for a parking space only if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 20 km/h.
- ✓ The distance to a number of parked vehicles is approximately 0.5 - 1.5 m.
- ✓ TCS is activated » page 211.

The system can only carry out the parking procedure if the following basic conditions are met.

- ✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 7 km/h.
- ✓ The parking procedure takes less than 6 minutes.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
- ✓ TCS is activated » page 211.

✓ The TCS does not engage.
✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Activation/deactivation
The system can be activated/deactivated by pressing the P button» Fig. 270.

When the system is activated, the P symbol lights up in the button.

Search for parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

The system searches for a parking space in a number of parallel and transverse parked vehicles on the passenger or driver's side.

Process with the parking space search
› Slowly drive past a row of parked vehicles.
› Activate the system with the P button» Fig. 270 *on page 225*.

The system will automatically search for a parking space on the passenger side.

If the system finds a parking space, the recommended parking mode is displayed » Fig. 272 *on page 227* A or » Fig. 273 *on page 227* - A.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to look for a parking space on this side of the road. The display changes and the system searches for a parking space on the driver's side.

Note
If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display while you are looking for a parking space, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking).

Switch to park mode

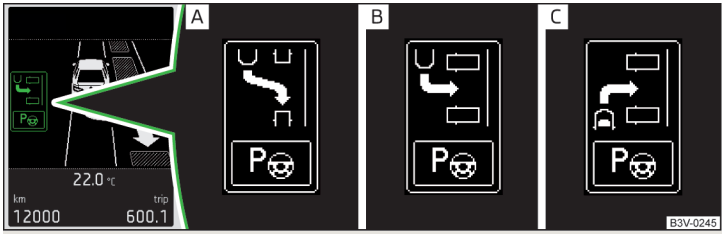

Fig. 271 **Menus with the parking modes: Display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

While the parking space search is going on and before the start of the parking, a menu may appear showing other suitable parking modes.

Parking modes » Fig. 271
A To park backwards in a parallel parking space
B To park backwards in a traverse parking space
C To park forwards in a traverse parking space

The parking mode can be changed by pressing the P » Fig. 270 *on page 225* button.

After switching through all parking modes offered, an additional press of the P button deactivates the system.

If you want to return to the originally recommended parking mode, press the P button again.

Parking

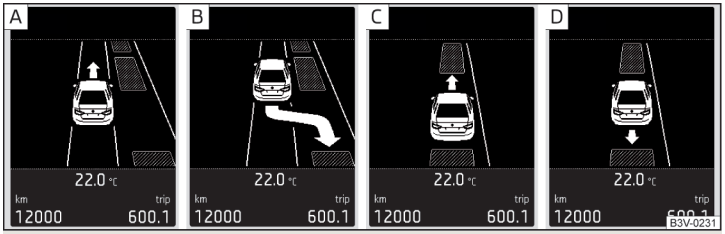

Fig. 272 **To park in a parallel parking space: Display**

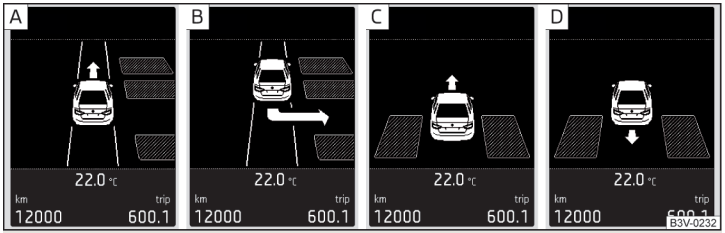

Fig. 273 **To park in a traverse parking space: Display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

The system helps the driver to reverse park in a parking space found in a row of traverse and parallel parked vehicles.

Display view » Fig. 272 or » Fig. 273

A Parking space detected with the indication to drive on
B Parking space recognised with the indication to reverse
C Note to drive on to the parking space
D Note to reverse to the parking space

Process for reverse parking
The parking space found is shown in the display » Fig. 272 - A or » Fig. 273 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until B appears in the display.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Observe your surroundings**, let go of the steering wheel and the steering is taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the arrow in the information display is flashing to the front C, engage 1st gear or move the selector lever into the position **D/S**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

Parking forwards

Fig. 274
To park forwards in a traverse parking space: Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

The system helps the driver to drive into a parking space found in a row of parallel parked vehicles.

As soon as the system finds a parking space, select the P » Fig. 270 *on page 225* button for forwards parking mode » Fig. 271 *on page 226* - C. The display shows the following » Fig. 274.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

The system is activated by pressing the P button and this is also possible if the vehicle has already been partially moved to a suitable parking space.

Leaving a parallel parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

The system supports the driver when leaving a parking space of a parallel parking space.

Leaving a parking space process

› Press the P » Fig. 270 *on page 225* button.

The following message is displayed: **Please indicate and engage reverse gear.**

› Activate the turn signal for the side of the road you will drive onto after exiting the parking space.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the system to leave the parking space. A corresponding message is shown in the information cluster display.

Automatic brake assist

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

Automatic brake assist when speeding
If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic emergency braking
If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION
The automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system when the parking process stops due to the speed of 7 km / hr being exceeded!

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 225 first.

If the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

System unavailable
If the system is not available because the vehicle has a fault, a message appears concerning the unavailability. Seek help from a specialist garage.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Trailer manoeuvring assistant (Trailer Assist)

Introduction

The trailer manoeuvring assistant (below only system) helps the driver when reversing with a trailer.

When manoeuvring, the system **only** undertakes the steering movement. The driver operates the brake, accelerator or clutch pedal and the shift / selector lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, in section *Introduction*.
- The system is not oriented to the area around the vehicle, there is no obstacle detection.
- During manoeuvring, always observe the movement of the trailer and if necessary cancel the manoeuvring autonomously to prevent accidents or damage to the vehicle and the trailer.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During parking manoeuvres on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) it is possible to stray from the calculated road. Therefore, use the system with extreme caution in such situations.

CAUTION

- The trailer position is evaluated by the rear camera based on the bending angle of the drawbar and the steering movement carried out by the system. For this reason, the drawbar must not be obstructed by external influences.
- The rear camera lens must not be contaminated, otherwise the system may be unavailable or the system function my be significantly impaired.

Note

- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed of up to about 5 km/h.
- The parking process can be terminated at any time by pressing the button » Fig. 275 *on page 229* or by a steering intervention.
- The correct system function can only be ensured if a one- or two-axle trailer is hitched without steered axle.

Operating principle

Fig. 275
System button

Read and observe and on page 229 first.

The trailer position is detected by the system based on the information of the rear camera. Trailer is steered in the direction set by the driver using steering wheel movements.

Conditions for the system function

✓ The engine is running.
✓ The system is activated.
✓ The parking aid is activated.
✓ The driver's door and the boot lid are fully closed.
✓ The trailer is plugged into the trailer socket.
✓ The trailer is not veering too much.

Determining the drawbar length

The system must know the drawbar length in order that the driver is offered the maximum possible setting angle with respect to the target position of the trailer.

The system needs some turning manoeuvres or cornering with a hitched trailer in order to determine the drawbar length.

The manoeuvring dimensions are shown in the display 5 » Fig. 276 *on page 230*.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 229 first.

The system is **activated** by engaging reverse gear and pressing P » Fig. 275 *on page 229*.

When the system is activated, the P symbol lights up in the button.

The system is **deactivated** by pressing the button P (the P symbol in the button is no longer illuminated).

Manoeuvring trailer

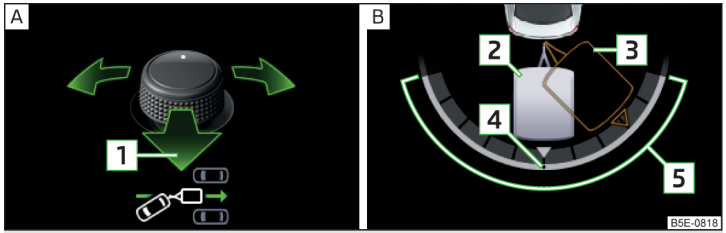

Fig. 276 **Instrument cluster display: Trailer manoeuvring**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 229 first.

Trailer manoeuvring

› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› Ensure that the vehicle/trailer combination is at a standstill.
› Release the steering wheel and press the button P .

The steering is taken over by the system.

The symbol of the control button for the exterior mirror is shown in the display » Fig. 276 - A.

› Tilt the adjusting knob for the exterior mirror » page 83, *Exterior mirrors* to left or right according to the required direction of travel of trailer.

The display shows the silhouette of the vehicle rear with trailer in top view » Fig. 276 - B.

The actual position of the trailer is indicated by the silhouette 2.

The target position of the trailer is indicated by the contour 3.

› Tilt the knob for the adjusting exterior mirror to adjust the trailer contour 3 to the target position.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

The set angle of articulation can be further corrected while reversing by tilting the adjusting knob for the side mirrors.

› Stop the vehicle/trailer combination in the required position.

If a forward gear is engaged or the **D / S** mode set, the system is deactivated.

To align the vehicle/trailer combination (trailer and vehicle in a line), tilt the adjusting knob for the exterior mirror in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 276. The trailer contour 3 pivots to the position 4.

› Carefully reverse and drive forwards until the desired position of the vehicle combination is achieved.

Note

The outer mirror surfaces cannot be adjusted while the system is active.

Automatic brake intervention

Read and observe ! and ! on page 229 first.

The systems is deactivated and an automatic braking intervention takes place in the following situations.

- If, during the manoeuvring, P the button is pressed, the driver's door is opened or the steering wheel is gripped.
- If the angle between the vehicle and trailer is assessed by the system as too large during the manoeuvring procedure.
- If a specific speed is assessed by the system as too high during the manoeuvring procedure due to the current angle between the vehicle and trailer and the driver does not react to the warning braking intervention.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal. The state where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.
- After pressing the clutch pedal, no interrupted control occurs! For example, if a different gear is engaged and the clutch pedal is released, control is continued.

Operation

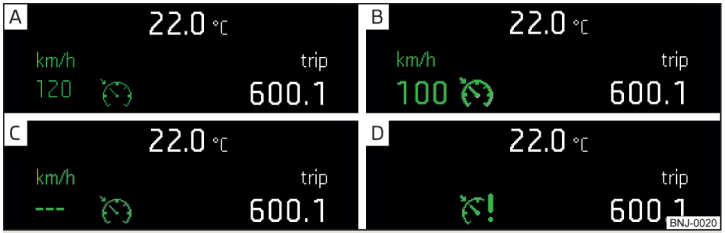

Fig. 277 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of status displays the CCS**

Read and observe ! on page 231 first.

CCS status displays » Fig. 277

A Speed is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).

B Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

C No speed set.

D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

✓ The CCS is activated.

✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.

✓ On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.

✓ The current speed is greater than approx. 20 km/h.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

WARNING

If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient in order to maintain the set speed, the acceleration and brake pedals must be taken over!

operation description

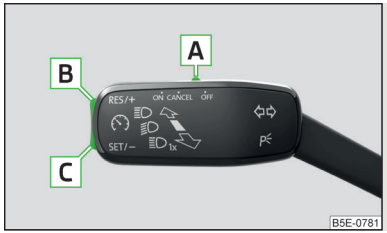

Fig. 278 **Cruise control system controls**

Read and observe ! on page 231 first.

Overview of the control elements of the CCS » Fig. 278

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (spring-tensioned position)
	OFF	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Launch control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

After the start of the regulation, the CCS regulates the vehicle to the current speed and warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The **automatic control interruption** occurs if any of the following conditions are met.

- The brake pedal is operated.
- When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- Through an airbag deployment.

WARNING

- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- The control does not resume if the set speed for the existing traffic conditions is too high.

Note

During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Speed limiter

Introduction

The Speed Limiter limits the maximum driving speed to the set speed limit.

The speed limit can only be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The condition in which the Speed Limiter prevents a potential set speed limit excess is referred to as **Regulation**.

WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, in section *Introduction*.

Operation

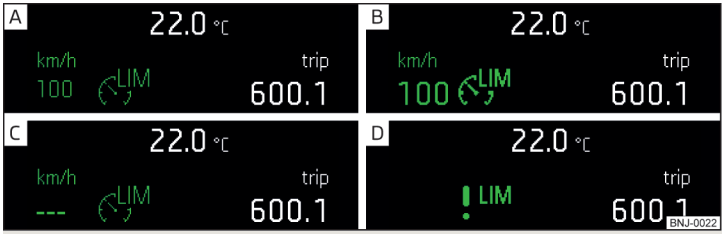

Fig. 279 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of Speed Limiter status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 232 first.

Speed limiter status displays » Fig. 279

- A Speed limit is set, control is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
- B Control active (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
- C No speed limit set.
- D System fault - seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ The Speed Limiter is activated.
- ✓ The current speed is greater than approx. 30 km/h.

After starting the system, the current speed is set as the speed limit and the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

Exceeding the speed limit during the regulation

If, during the control, it is necessary to exceed the speed limit (e.g. to overtake), the accelerator pedal must be pressed fully.

When the speed limit is exceeded (e.g. driving down a hill), an acoustic signal sounds and warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Regulation resumes once the speed has fallen below the set limit.

Operation description - variant with GRA

Fig. 280 **Operating elements of the speed limiter: Lever / multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 232 first.

Overview of the control elements of the speed limiter » Fig. 280

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (required condition for the subsequent activation of the speed limiter)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (spring-tensioned position)
	OFF	From the menu displayed in the instrument cluster, select the menu item **Speed limited**
B	**RES/+**	Take control again [a] / increase speed limit - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
C	**SET/–**	Start control/ reduce speed limit - press (in increments of 1 km/h), hold (in increments of 10 km/h)
D		Display assistance systems menu - possibility to switch between GRA and speed limiter

[a] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Activate speed limiters

- Put switch A in position **ON** » Fig. 280.
- Press button D.
- In the instrument cluster select the menu item **Speed limited**.

Operating Instructions - Variant with ACC

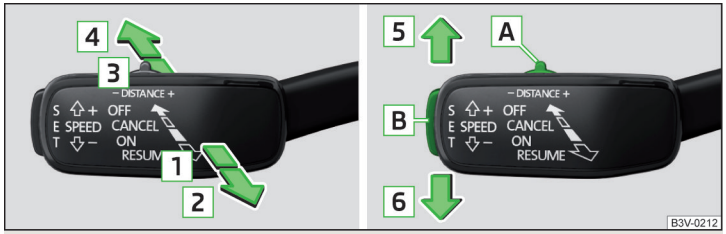

Fig. 281 **Operating elements of the speed limiter**

Read and observe ! on page 232 first.

Overview of the control elements of the speed limiter » Fig. 281

1	**ON**	Activate ACC (required condition for the subsequent activation of the speed limiter)
2	**RESUME**	Resume control[a] / increase speed limit by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	**CANCEL**	Stop control (sprung position)
4	**OFF**	Deactivate speed limiter (delete set limit)
5	**SPEED +**	Increase speed limit by 10 km/h at a time
6	**SPEED –**	Decrease speed limit by 10 km/h at a time
A	**SET**	Start control / reduce speed limit in increments of 1 km/h

[a] If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Activate speed limiters

- Put the ACC operating lever in position **ON** » Fig. 281.
- Press button D » Fig. 280 *on page 233*.
- In the instrument cluster select the menu item **Speed limited**.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Introduction

The Adaptive Cruise Control (hereinafter referred to as ACC) maintains the set speed and at the same time the distance to the vehicle ahead without the accelerator or brake pedal being pressed.

The front of the vehicle and the distance to the vehicle ahead is monitored by a radar sensor » page 210.

The state in which the ACC maintains the speed or the proximity is described as **control** from here on.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.
- The driver must always be ready to take over the operation of the accelerator and brake pedal.
- The ACC does not react when approaching a stationary obstacle, such as traffic jams, vehicle breakdowns or vehicles waiting at a traffic light.
- The ACC does not respond to crossing or oncoming objects.
- If the ACC does not decelerate fast enough, immediately apply the vehicle's foot brake.

WARNING

For safety reasons, do not use the ACC under the following conditions.

- When driving in turning lanes, motorway exits or construction sites, to avoid an unwanted acceleration to the stored speed.
- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When road conditions are poor (e.g. ice, slippery road, gravel, dirt road).
- Driving in “sharp” corners or in steep gradients / on steep inclines.
- When driving through places where metal objects (such as metal buildings, railway tracks, etc.) can be found.
- When driving through very divided and enclosed spaces (such as large-capacity garages, car ferries, tunnels and the like.).

Note

- The ACC is designed primarily for use on motorways.
- The ACC reduces the speed by automatically releasing the accelerator or by means of a braking procedure as appropriate. If the brakes are used for an automatic speed reduction at any moments, then the brake light illuminates.
- In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the connected trailer, the ACC becomes unavailable.
- The control automatically cancels the engagement of the brake supportive assistance systems (e.g. ESC) or when the maximum permitted engine speed is exceeded.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *ACC (adaptive cruise control)* - Setting for the ACC
  - **Driving progr.:** - Adjustment of vehicle acceleration when ACC is activated (this setting is made for vehicles with driving mode selection » page 241)
  - **Last distance selected** - Last selected distance level on/off
  - **Distance:** - Set the distance to the vehicles ahead

Operation

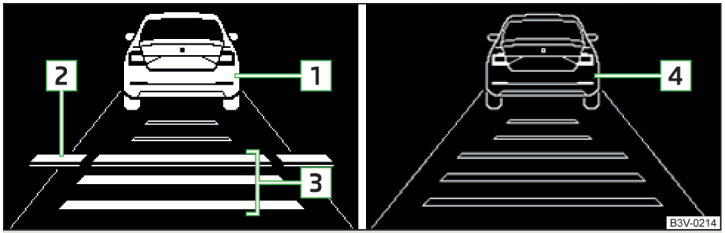

Fig. 282 **Display in the instrument cluster: Examples of ACC displays**

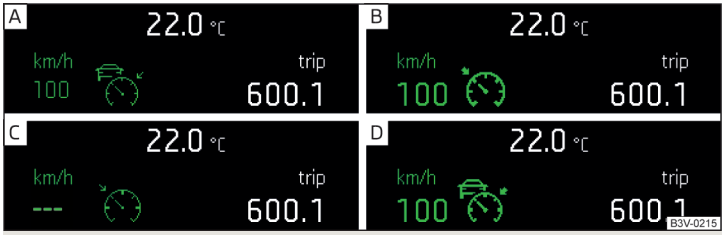

Fig. 283 **Instrument cluster display: Examples of ACC status displays**

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

The ACC makes it possible to set a speed of 30-160 or 30-210 km/h (depending on equipment fitted) as well as the distance to preceding vehicles.

The ACC can detect a vehicle that is up to approx. 120 m ahead using the radar sensor.

ACC displays » Fig. 282

1 Vehicle detected (control active)
2 Line showing the displacement of the distance when setting » page 237, *Setting the distance*
3 Set distance to the vehicle ahead
4 Vehicle detected (control deactivated)

Status conditions of the ACC » Fig. 283

A Regulation is inactive (in the colour display the digits of speed limits is shown in grey).
B Regulation active - no vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).
C Regulation deactivated - no speed stored.
D Regulation active - vehicle detected (in the colour display the digits of the speed limits are highlighted).

Note to reduce speed
If the ACC's deceleration is insufficient in relation to the vehicle in front, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and the display shows a message to engage the brake pedal.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane
During regulation your vehicle may be regulated according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane.

This could occur at speeds above about 80 km/h when your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the adjacent lane on the driver's side. The display shows the detected vehicle is in the adjacent lane.

Note
Some ACC notifications in the display of the instrument cluster may be hidden by notifications for other functions. An ACC notification automatically appears for a brief moment when there is a change in status of the ACC.

Automatic stopping and starting

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

Vehicles with an **automatic transmission** can decelerate to a standstill and start moving again using the ACC.

Decelerate to a standstill
If a vehicle ahead decelerates to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill.

Starting to drive again after a holding period
As soon as the vehicle ahead starts moving again after a holding period, your vehicle will also move and the speed will continue to be regulated. Control is automatically disconnected in case of longer holding periods.

summary of operations

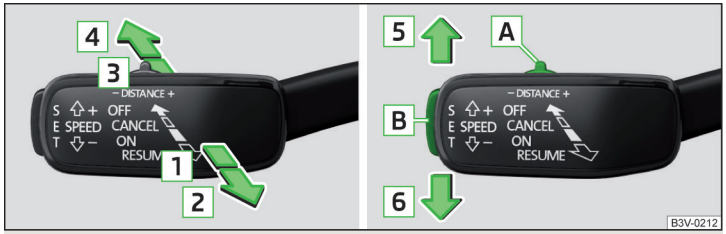

Fig. 284 **Operating lever**

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

Overview of ACC functions operated with the lever » Fig. 284

1	**ON**	Activate ACC (control deactivated)
2	**RESUME**	Start control (resume) / increase speed by 1 km/h at a time (sprung position)
3	**CANCEL**	Stop control (sprung position)
4	**OFF**	Deactivate ACC
5	**SPEED +**	Increase speed by 10 km/h at a time
6	**SPEED –**	Decrease speed by 10 km/h at a time
A	**– DISTANCE +**	Set proximity level
B	**SET**	Start control / reduce speed in increments of 1 km/h

If the lever is set from the position **OFF** directly into the sprung position **RESUME** the current speed is stored and the control process is started.

Start control

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

Basic requirements for start of control

- ✓ ACC is enabled.
- ✓ On vehicles with **manual transmission**, the second gear or a higher gear is selected and the current speed is greater than 30 km/h.
- ✓ On vehicles with **automatic transmission** the selector lever is in the position **D / S** or in the Tiptronic position and the current speed is higher than 2 km / h.

Start control

› Press the button **SET** » Fig. 284 *on page 236* .
› **or:** Set the lever into the sprung position **RESUME** » Fig. 284 *on page 236* .

The ACC adopts the current driving speed and performs the control, and the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

If control is started by moving the lever to the position **RESUME** and should the speed be stored already, the ACC adopts this speed and executes control.

Note

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed of 30 km/h is stored. The speed increases automatically to 30 km/h or is regulated with respect to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Stop/resume control

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

Stop control

› Set the lever into the sprung position **CANCEL** » Fig. 284 *on page 236* .
› **or:** Apply the brake.

Control stops, the speed remains stored.

Resume control

› Start control » page 236, *Start control*.

Note

Control is also stopped when the clutch pedal is held down for longer than 30 s or the TCS is deactivated.

Set/change desired speed

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

The desired speed can be set or changed using the control lever » Fig. 284 *on page 236*.

Setting/changing the speed by increments of 10 km/h at a time (SPEED) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

Increasing/reducing the speed by increments of 1 km/h at a time (RESUME/SET - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ Vehicle control takes place.

Changing the speed by adopting the current speed (SET) - requirements

✓ ACC is enabled.

✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed **other** than that which is stored.

Note

- If during control the speed is increased by pressing the accelerator, control is temporarily stopped. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is automatically resumed.
- If during control the speed is reduced by applying the brake, control is stopped. Control needs to be restarted in order to resume » page 236.
- If the vehicle is controlled by a lower speed than the stored speed, then **SET** the current speed is stored by pressing the button again **SET** and the speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h.

Setting the distance

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

The ACC allows you to set five distance steps to the preceding vehicle.

The distance is adjustable in a range of 1 to 3.6 s.

Adjusting the distance in the Infotainment system

› In Infotainment in the *ACC* the **Distance:** menu item and set the distance » page 234, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Adjust the distance with the lever

› Set the switch **DISTANCE** Adjust in the spring-tensioned position – or + » Fig. 284 *on page 236*.

The instrument cluster display shows line 2 » Fig. 282 *on page 234*, which indicates the proximity.

› Using the switch **DISTANCE** on the lever, adjust the line 2 to the desired distance.

Note

- If the distance is changed in the Infotainment, the change will only come into effect after a subsequent activation of the ACC.
- The distance setting is stored (depending on Infotainment model) in active user account personalisation » page 57.

Special driving conditions

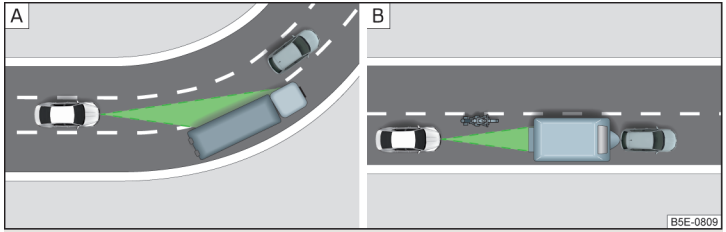

Fig. 285 **Cornering / narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side**

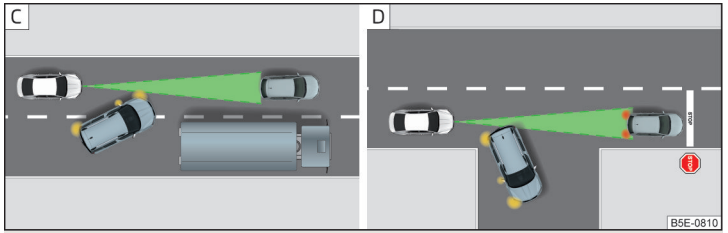

Fig. 286 **Lane changes of other vehicles / stationary vehicles**

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

The following (and similar) situations require special attention and possibly the intervention of the driver (braking, accelerating etc.).

When cornering
When driving into or driving out of long corners, it could be that a vehicle is travelling in the adjacent lane and is scanned by the radar » Fig. 285 - A. The host vehicle is then controlled according to this vehicle.

Narrow vehicles or vehicles travelling side by side
A narrow or offset vehicle driving can only be recognized by the ACC if this is located in the scanning range of the radar » Fig. 285 - B.

Other vehicles changing lanes
Vehicles that change onto the lane with a small distance » Fig. 286 - C may not be detected by ACC in good time.

Stationary vehicles
The ACC does not detect stationary objects! When a vehicle detected by the ACC turns or sheers off and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, » Fig. 286 - Dthe ACC does not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special body parts
Other vehicles with a load or with body parts protruding from the sides, back or top of the vehicle contour may not be detected by the ACC.

Overtaking and towing

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

When overtaking
When your vehicle is being controlled at a speed that is lower than the set speed and the turn signal is operated, ACC assesses this situation as meaning that the driver wishes to overtake. The ACC automatically accelerates the vehicle, thereby reducing the proximity to a vehicle ahead.

If your vehicle changes to the overtaking lane and no vehicle is detected ahead, ACC accelerates until the set speed is reached and then keeps it constant.

Acceleration can be cancelled at any time by touch on the brake pedal or pressing the button CANCEL on the lever » Fig. 284 *on page 236*.

Towing a trailer
When towing, or if another accessory is connected to the trailer socket, ACC control is set with a lower rate. The manner of driving should therefore be adapted to this limitation.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! on page 234 first.

If ACC is not available, the warning light ! appears in the display of the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is shown.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor cover or the sensor is dirty or covered, a message appears on the instrument cluster display stating there is no sensor view. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles » Fig. 251 *on page 210*.

If there is no sensor view in the winter, the snow on the sensor under the cover could be the reason. The ACC is functional again after the snow melts away from the sensor.

ACC not available
If the ACC is unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If ACC continues to be unavailable, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

ACC fault
With an ACC fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Front Assist

Introduction

The Front Assist (hereinafter referred to as the system) warns you of the danger of a collision with a vehicle or another obstacle in front of the vehicle, and tries to avoid a collision or mitigate its consequences by automatically applying the brakes where necessary.

The area in front of the vehicle is monitored by a radar sensor» page 210.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, in section *Introduction*.
- The system does not respond vehicles that are crossing or oncoming.

CAUTION

In case of failure of more than one brake light on the vehicle or on the electrically connected trailer, the system becomes unavailable.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe and on page 239 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *Front Assist (ambient traffic monitor. sys.)* - Set the assistant for distance monitoring to the vehicles ahead
  - **Active** - Activate/deactivate the assistant
  - **Advance warning** - Activate/deactivate and set the distance level at which a warning occurs
  - **Display distance warning** - Activate/deactivate distance warnings

Operation

Read and observe and on page 239 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- Alerts you about a dangerous proximity to the vehicle ahead.
- Warns you of an impending collision.
- Assists with a brake action triggered by the driver.
- If the driver fails to respond to a detected danger, an automatic braking action is performed.

The system can work only if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The system is activated.
✓ TCS is activated » page 211.
✓ The vehicle is travelling forwards at a speed of more than approx. 5 km/h.

Note

The system can be impaired or may not be available, for example when driving in “sharp ”curves or with an ESC engagement » page 211.

Distance warning

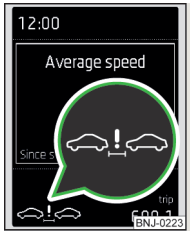

Fig. 287
Display in the instrument cluster: Distance warning

Read and observe and on page 239 first.

If a safe distance from the vehicle ahead is fallen short of, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 287.

Immediately increase the proximity if the current traffic situation allows you to do so!

The proximity at which the warning is displayed depends on the current speed.

The warning may occur when driving between about 60 km/h and 210 km/h.

Warning and automatic braking

Fig. 288
Display in the instrument cluster: Advance warning or emergency braking at low speed

Read and observe ! and ! on page 239 first.

Emergency braking at low speed
In the event of a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of approximately 5 km/h to 30 km/h, the warning light appears on the display » Fig. 288 and the system initiates automatic braking.

Advance warning
If the system detects a risk of collision, the warning light appears on the display » Fig. 288 and an audible signal is emitted.

The pre-warning display can occur in the following situations.
- If there is a risk of collision with a **moving** obstacle in a speed range of approximately 30 km/h to 210 km/h.
- If there is a risk of collision with a **stationary** obstacle in a speed range of approximately 30 km/h to 80 km/h.

When the advance warning is issued, the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle avoided!

Immediate warning and automatic braking - a moving obstacle
If the driver does not react to the advance warning when in danger of a collision with a moving obstacle, the system briefly applies the brake automatically via an active brake intervention to draw attention to the potential danger of a collision again.

If the driver does not respond to acute warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle.

Automatic braking - a stationary obstacle
If the driver does not respond to the advance warning of the risk of a collision with a stationary obstacle in a speed range of approximately 30 km/h to 60 km/h, the system initiates automatic braking.

Information on automatic braking
If automatic brake intervention is triggered by the system, the pressure in the brake system increases and the brake pedal cannot be operated with the normal pedal stroke.

The automatic braking interventions can be cancelled by pressing the accelerator pedal or by means of a steering intervention.

Brake assist
If the driver brakes inadequate with an impending collision, the system automatically increases braking force.

The braking assistance only occurs as long as the brake pedal is being firmly pressed down.

Pedestrian recognition

Read and observe ! and ! on page 239 first.

The pedestrian recognition can help to prevent accidents with crossing pedestrians or to mitigate the consequences of an accident.

The system warns of an imminent collision, prepares the vehicle for an emergency braking, supports during braking or performs an automatic braking.

Emergency braking at low speed
If there is a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of about 5 km/h to 30 km/h, the system triggers an automatic braking.

With automatic braking, the warning light appears in the display » Fig. 288 *on page 240*.

Advance warning and automatic braking
If the system detects a risk of collision in a vehicle speed range of 30 km / h to 65 km / h, the warning light appears on the display » Fig. 288 *on page 240* and an audible signal is emitted.

With a warning the brake pedal must be pressed or the moving obstacle is to be avoided!

If the driver does not respond to the advance warning, the system begins to automatically brake the vehicle.

Disable/enable

Read and observe ! and ! on page 239 first.

- In the instrument cluster display, in the **Assist systems** menu item.
- In Infotainment, in the *Front Assist (ambient traffic monitor. sys.)* menu, in the **Active** » page 239, *Settings in Infotainment* menu item.

The function is automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

The system should only be disabled in exceptional cases » !.

! WARNING

In the following situations, Front Assist should be switched off for safety reasons.

- When the vehicle is being towed away.
- When the vehicle is on a rolling test bench.
- If an unfounded warning or a system action was taken.
- When on a truck, or a car ferry service or similar.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 239 first.

If the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the sensor cover or the sensor is dirty or covered, a message appears on the instrument cluster display stating there is no sensor view. Clean the sensor cover or remove the obstacles » Fig. 251 *on page 210*.

If there is no sensor view in the winter, the snow on the sensor under the cover could be the reason. The system is functional again after the snow melts away from the sensor.

System unavailable
If the system is unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and then start it again. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Select the driving mode (Driving Mode Selection)

Introduction

By selecting the driving mode, the driving behaviour can be adapted to the desired mode of operation.

The following modes **Eco**. **Comfort**. **Normal**. **Sports**. **Individual** and **Offroad** are available.

The**Comfort** mode is only available on vehicles with adaptive chassis (DCC) and the **Offroad** mode is only available on Octavia Scout vehicles.

! WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.

Adaptive chassis (DCC)

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

The adaptive chassis (hereafter known as DCC) provides the ability to adjust the shock characteristics for the sporty, normal or comfortable driving when the corresponding control mode is selected.

The DCC evaluates steering response and road conditions while driving continuously and adjusts the suspension behaviour within the selected driving mode accordingly.

Mode Eco

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

This mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

Drive
Vehicle acceleration is more relaxed than in **Normal** mode.

The recommended gear is controlled such to achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption » page 50.

If the START-STOP system is deactivated manually» page 202, this will be automatically activated.

The automatic gearbox is set automatically to mode **E** » page 206.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
Acceleration occurs more relaxed than in **Normal** » page 234mode with distance control.

Air conditioning (Climatronic)
The air conditioning is controlled so as to save energy. For this reason, for example, it may take longer to reach the desired interior temperature in mode **Normal**.

Note
The maximum vehicle acceleration (kick down function) is possible also in driving mode **Eco**.

Mode Comfort

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

This mode is suitable for driving on roads with poorer surface or for long motorway journeys.

Mode Normal

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

This mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Mode Sports

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

This mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Selecting this mode primarily affects the function of the following systems.

DCC
The DCC adjusts the chassis for the sporty driving style.

Steering
The power steering is reduced slightly, i.e., the driver needs to exert more force for steering .

Drive
The vehicle acceleration is more dynamic than in **Normal** mode.

Front axle differential lock
The driving force distribution between the front wheels is adapted to the sporty driving style.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
The acceleration is quicker than in **Normal** mode with distance control » page 234.

ProActive passenger protection
The first level of protection is deactivated » page 243.

Engine noise
The engine noise is noticeable in the interior more intensely than in **Normal** mode.

Mode Individual

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

In the mode **Individual** each system can be set independently » page 243, *Individual mode* **settings**.

Mode Offroad

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

The mode **Offroad** is suitable for driving outside paved roads.

Further information » page 213, *Offroadmode*.

Mode selection and Infotainment display

Fig. 289 **Button for selecting the driving mode: Version 1/version 2**

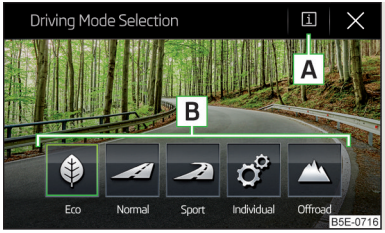

Fig. 290
Display on Infotainment screen

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

Display of the driving mode menu

› Press the button and MODE » Fig. 289.

The following function surfaces are displayed on the Infotainment screen » Fig. 290.

A Information on setting the currently selected mode
Setting the **Individual** mode

B Driving mode menu

The driving mode selection is performed in one of the following ways.

▶ By repeatedly pressing the button MODE or MODE.
▶ By tapping the function surface on the Infotainment screen » Fig. 290,

After switching the ignition off and on, the **Normal** mode is set.

Note

- The currently selected driving mode is displayed in the infotainment system in the status bar next to the symbol.
- The setting for the **individual** mode is stored in the active personalisation user account » page 57.

Individual mode settings

Read and observe ! on page 241 first.

In the **Individual** mode, the following menu items can be set.

- **DCC:** - Sets the shock characteristics
- **Steering:** - Set the power steering characteristics
- **Drive:** - Sets the drive characteristics
- **Front axle differential lock:** - Sets the characteristics of the front axle differential lock
- **ACC:** - sets the vehicle acceleration when adaptive cruise control is activated
- **Dynamic Cornering light:** - Sets the Full LED headlight characteristics
- **Air conditioning:** - Sets the Climatronic characteristics
- **Engine sound:** - Sets the engine noise in the vehicle
- **Reset mode** - Setting for all menu items in **Individual** mode to **Normal**
  - **Cancel** - Keep the current settings
  - **Reset** - cancels all menu items in the **Normal** mode

Proactive passenger protection (Crew Protect Assist)

Introduction

ProActive passenger protection (following known as system) increases passenger protection in the front seats in situations that could lead to vehicle impact or overturning.

! WARNING

Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.

Note

The system component service life is monitored electronically. Further information » page 43, *Safety systems*.

Operation

Read and observe ! on page 243 first.

In critical driving situations (e.g. during emergency braking or a sudden change in direction), the following steps can be taken separately or combined in order to reduce the risk of serious injury.

- The front passenger's and driver's seatbelts, if worn, are automatically **tensioned** closely over the body.
- Opened electrically powered door windows are closed automatically up to a gap of about 5 cm from the edge.
- The sliding/tilting roof is closed.

Once the critical driving situation has passed, the tension on the seatbelts will be released again.

The system operates at two levels of protection.

The first level of protection
The system already intervenes in situations that may occur during dynamic driving. As a result, this primarily helps to keep the driver and the passenger in the correct seated position.

The first protection level can be deactivated in one of the following ways.

- In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Driver assistance**.
- Deactivation of TCS » page 211.
- By selecting the driving mode **Sport** » page 243.
- By selecting the driving mode **Offroad** » page 213.

After switching the ignition off and on, the system is activated in both levels of protection.

The second level of protection
The system intervenes only if the situation is evaluated as critical, such as when panic braking at high speeds.

This level of protection cannot be deactivated.

Vehicles with the Front Assist system
Using this information, a system intervention may also occur when there is the danger of a collision with an obstacle detected in front of the vehicle.

Spurhalteassistent (Lane Assist)

Introduction

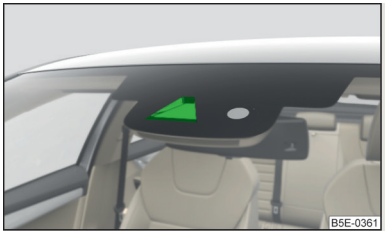

Fig. 291
Sensor for Lane Assist

The lane departure warning (following known as system) helps to keep the vehicle between the boundary lines of a lane.

The system recognises the boundary lines of the lane using a sensor » Fig. 291.

When the vehicle approaches a detected line between lanes, the system makes a **light** movement of the steering wheel in the opposite direction to the boundary line. This corrective steering intervention can be manually overridden at any time.

! WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Lane Assist can help you keep the vehicle within the lane. However, it does not steer the vehicle for you. The driver retains full responsibility for steering at all times.
- Some objects or markings on the road can be recognised as the boundary lines - an erroneous steering intervention may be the result.

! WARNING

The system may not be able to recognise the boundary line, or recognise it incorrectly, for example, in the following situations.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- When driving in “sharp” bends.
- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the functions of the system.

Note

- The system is designed for driving on motorways and roads with adequate longitudinal markings.
- The system can detect both continuous and broken lines.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe and on page 244 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *Lane Assist (lane departure warning sys.)* - Settings for Lane Assist
  - **Active** - Activate/deactivate the assistant
  - **Adaptive lane guidance** - Activate/deactivate adaptive lane guidance

Operation

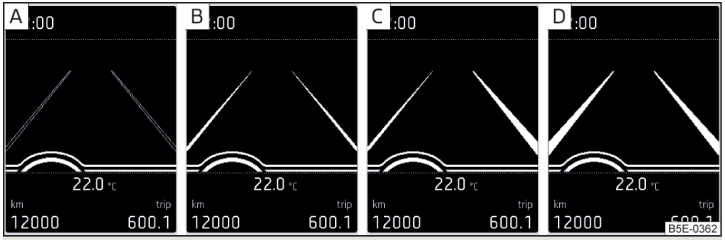

Fig. 292 **Monochromatic display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

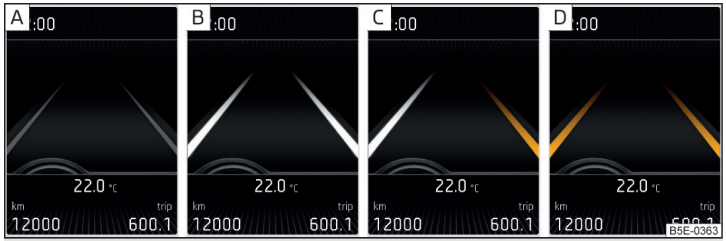

Fig. 293 **Colour display of the instrument cluster: Examples of system indications**

Read and observe and on page 244 first.

System displays» Fig. 292 and » Fig. 293

A The system is active, but not ready to intervene.

B The system is active and ready to intervene.

C The system intervenes when approaching the right-hand boundary lane.

D Adaptive tracking takes place.

The system can intervene when the following basic conditions are present.

✓ The system is activated.

✓ The vehicle is travelling at more than around 65 km/h.

✓ The boundary line of at least one side of the lane is detected.

✓ The driver's hands are on the steering wheel.

✓ The lane is more than 2.5 m in width.

If the turn signal is switched on (e.g. when turning), no steering intervention takes place when the vehicle approaches the boundary line. The system regards the situation as an intended lane change.

Warning lights in the instrument cluster

The system is active, but not ready to intervene.

The system is active and ready to intervene or is currently intervening.

Adaptive lane assist

Adaptive tracking helps to keep the vehicle in the position between the boundary lines selected by the driver, by means of steering intervention.

If the position within the lane is changed, the system quickly adapts and holds the newly-selected position.

Steering wheel vibrations
In the following situations, it may occasionally be the case that due to the steering wheel vibrations the syst4em indicates that a driver steering intervention is required.
- The system is not able to keep the vehicle by a within the lane due to a steering intervention.
- During an intense system-related steering intervention, the system suddenly cannot recognize the boundary lines.

WARNING
The system function may be restricted if, for example there is danger due to ruts on a downhill road or in a crosswind.

Activation / deactivation

Read and observe and on page 244 first.

The activation/deactivation of the system can be carried out in one of two ways.
- In the instrument cluster display » page 55, **Assist systems** *menu item*.
- In Infotainment » page 245, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Adaptive tracking can also be enabled or disabled In Infotainment.

After switching off and switching on the ignition, the system setting is retained.

Note
The system setting is stored (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Malfunctions

Read and observe and on page 244 first.

If the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor covered / dirty
If the windscreen is dirty, iced or misted up in the sensor area, a message appears indicating that there is no sensor view. Clean the windscreen or remove the obstacles from the sensor area.

System unavailable
If the system is unavailable, a message concerning the unavailability appears. Try to re-activate the machine. If the system still is not available, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Request to take over steering
If the system detects that there are no hands are on the steering wheel, this will not work properly. You will be prompted to take over steering. Place your hands on the steering wheel.

Traffic sign recognition

Introduction

The traffic sign recognition (following known as system) shows certain traffic signs (e.g. speed limits) on the display of the instrument cluster and if necessary warns against excessive speeds.

WARNING
- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, in section *Introduction*.
- Vertical traffic signs must always take precedence over the traffic signs shown in the display. The driver is always responsible for correctly assessing the traffic situation.
- The speed indications in the traffic signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country. For example, the display ⑨⓪ may relate to km/h or mph depending on the country in question.

WARNING

The traffic signs may not be displayed or may be displayed incorrectly in the system e.g. in the following situations.

- When visibility is poor, (e.g. fog, heavy rain, thick snowfall).
- The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- Travelling at high speed.
- The traffic signs are covered (e.g. by trees, snow or dirt).
- The traffic signs are not standard (round with a red border) or are damaged.
- The traffic signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- The traffic signs were changed (the navigation data are out of date).

Note

The system is only available in some countries.

Settings in Infotainment

Read and observe ! on page 246 first.

› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR/ tap on function surface → **Driver assistance**.

- *Dynamic Road Sign Display* - Settings for the Dynamic Road Sign Display
  - **Show in instrument cluster** - Activation/deactivation of the additional traffic signs in the display of the instrument cluster
  - **Speed warning:** - Configures a warning when the speed limit is exceeded
  - **Warning at over** - Configuration of the warning timing with the option to exceed the speed limit in a range from 0 to 20 km/h
- *Trailer recognition*
  - **Show road signs relevant to trailers** - Activating / deactivating the display of road signs relevant to trailers
  - **Use for route calculation** - Activation / deactivation taking trailers in account for route calculation in navigation
  - **Maximum speed for trailer** - Set the top speed for towing a trailer

Operation

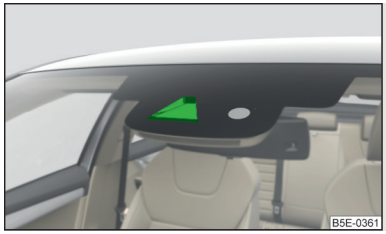

Fig. 294
Sensor for traffic sign recognition

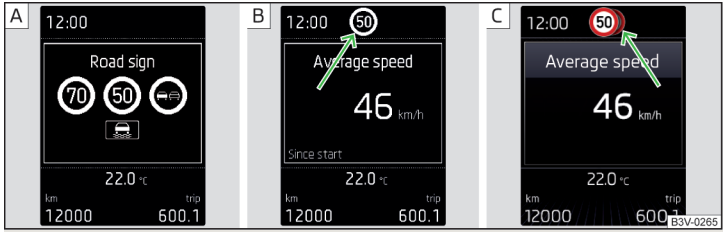

Fig. 295 **Display in the instrument cluster: Display examples**

Read and observe ! on page 246 first.

Description of displays and displayed traffic signs

Display » Fig. 295

A Display of detected road signs » page 52, *Driving data (Multifunction display)*

B Additional display (monochromatic display)

C Additional display (colour display)

The system can display the following (vertical) traffic signs where identified.

▶ Speed limit.

▶ Overtaking prohibited.

Additional signs, such as 'when wet' or signs which only apply for a limited time can also be displayed.

The system displays only traffic signs that are in the “viewing area” of the sensor » Fig. 294.

Data from the sensor is supplemented by information from the Infotainment Navigation. This is the reason why traffic signs with maximum speeds can also be shown on sections of roads which do not have any traffic signs.

Warning when exceeding the speed limit
The warning when exceeding the permissible speed (based on the detected traffic sign) can be activated and set in Infotainment» page 247.

Mode when towing a trailer
For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, in Infotainment it is possible to enable or disable the relevant traffic signs for trailer operation and the top speed for towing a trailer » page 247, *Settings in Infotainment*.

Note
If, for example, you are on a motorway without speed limits, then a road sign relating to the end of all limits is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Additional display

Read and observe ! on page 246 first.

If the menu item Road sign is currently not shown » Fig. 295 *on page 247* - A, the road sign with the speed limit will appear in the upper display area of the instrument cluster » Fig. 295 *on page 247* - B, C.

If several traffic signs are detected simultaneously, in some cases the next traffic sign will also be displayed in the colour display - » Fig. 295 *on page 247* - C.

All detected traffic signs can be displayed via the multifunction display in the menu item Traffic Sign Recognition » Fig. 295 *on page 247* - A.

The additional display can be activated / deactivated in Infotainment» page 247.

Note
The setting (activation/deactivation) of the auxiliary display will be saved (depending on Infotainment type) in the active user account personalisation » page 57.

Malfunctions and information messages

Read and observe ! on page 246 first.

If the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Sensor dirty/covered
If a note appears in relation to the cleaning of the windscreen, clean the windscreen or remove the obstruction from the sensor area.

System fault
If an error message appears, seek assistance from a specialist garage.

System limitation
The system displays a message about system limitation in the following cases.
- The map documents are not up to date.
- The vehicle is located in an area for which no map documents are present.

Fatigue detection system

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter simply the system) advises the driver to take a break from driving when driver fatigue can be detected based on the driver's steering behaviour.

The system evaluates the steering behaviour at speeds of 60-200 km/h.

Conditions under which a break from driving is detected by the system
- The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated/deactivated in menu CAR/ → → → **Driver assistance** menu.

Pause recommendation
The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster and a message about detected fatigue. An audible signal is also emitted.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.
- For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system can evaluate the steering behaviour incorrectly and therefore falsely display a break recommendation.
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

The tyre pressure monitoring function (following known as system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light (!) lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal sounds » page 43.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system.

Always save the tyre pressure values in the system if one of the following events occurs.

- Change of tyre inflation pressure.
- Change one or more wheels.
- Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
- The warning light (!) in the instrument cluster lights up.

WARNING

- Please take note of the general points relating to the use of assistance systems » page 210, ! in section *Introduction*.
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 279.

WARNING (Continued)

- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.
- Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 279. If the wrong pressure valuesare stored, the system may not issue any warnings, even if the tyre pressure is too low.

CAUTION

To ensure proper system function, the tyre pressure values must be stored every 10,000 km or 1x a year.

Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display

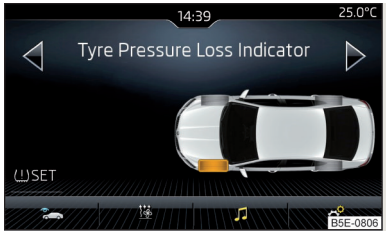

Fig. 296
Button for storage / screen display example: a tire pressure change at the front left is shown

Read and observe ! and ! on page 249 first.

Procedure for storing the tyre pressure values

› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
› In the infotainment system, in menu CAR / tap on function surface Tap → **Vehicle status**.
› Use the function surfaces ◁ ▷ select the *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator* menu item.
› Tap the functional surface (!) **SET** interface» Fig. 296.

In addition, follow the instructions that appear on the screen.

A message on the screen informs about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

Note

When the warning light (!) appears in the instrument cluster, the affected tyre can be displayed on the infotainment system » Fig. 296.

Towing device and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

The maximum trailer load is dependent on the engine and the vehicle equipment. The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, the COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other data (e.g. shown on the nameplate of the hitch) on provides information about the test values of the device .

WARNING

- Before each time you make a journey when using the ball rod, check that it is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess.
- When the knee-joint bar is not used and properly secured in the receiving shaft, it is damaged or incomplete, this must not be used - there is a risk of an accident.
- Do not perform any modifications or changes to the towing device.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing device clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball rod from being attached securely!

Note

If the towing device is removed completely, it must be replaced with the original reinforcement of the rear bumper which is part of the mount for the towing eye.

Description

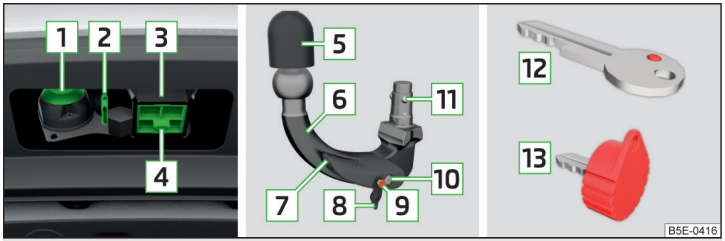

Fig. 297 **Carrier for the towing device/tow bar/key versions**

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

The tow bar is detachable and is located in the storage compartment for the spare/emergency wheel.

Towing device carrier, tow bar and key versions (dependent on equipment) » Fig. 297

1 13-pin power socket
2 Safety eye
3 Mounting recess
4 Cap
5 Dust cap
6 Ball rod
7 Operating lever
8 Lock cap
9 Trigger pin
10 Lock
11 Locking ball
12 Key – Version 1
13 Key – Version 2

Adjusting the ready position

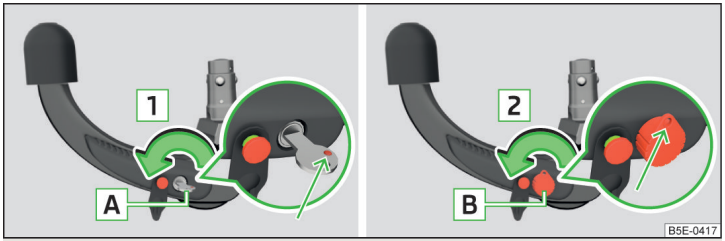

Fig. 298 **1. Step: Key version 1 / key version 2**

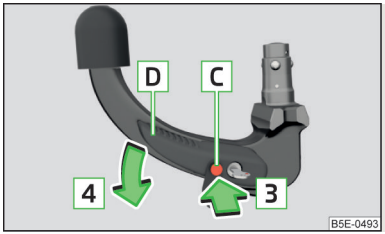

Fig. 299
2. step: both key versions

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

The tow bar can only be fitted if it is in the ready position.

1. Step - applies to the key version 1
› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key A into the lock so that the green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 298.

1. Step - applies to the key version 2
› Remove the cap from the lock
› Insert key B into the lock so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.
› Turn the key in the direction of arrow B 2 so that the conclusions release shows up » Fig. 298.

2. Step - applies to both key versions
› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Push release pin C in the direction of arrow 3 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever D in the direction of arrow 4 to the stop » Fig. 299.

Operating lever D remains locked in this position.

Check the setting of the standby position

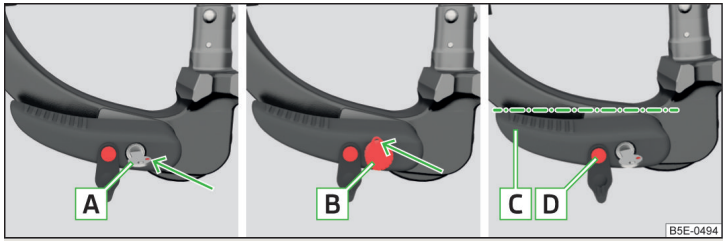

Fig. 300 **Ready position: Key Version 1 / key Version 2 / position of the lever and the release bolt with two key versions**

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 300
✓ Applies to key version 1 - the red marking on key A is pointing upwards.
✓ Applies to key version 2 - the eye of the key B is pointing upwards.
✓ Operating lever C is locked in the lower position.
✓ The trigger pin D can be moved.

In the ready position, the key cannot be removed or turned into a different position. The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

Assembling the bar ball – Step 1

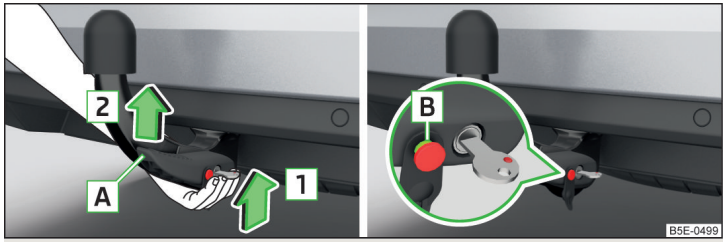

Fig. 301 **Insert ball rod / trigger bolt in the extended state**

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

Insert ball rod - applies to both key versions

› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 in a downwards direction» Fig. 297 *on page 250*.
› Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 251, *Adjusting the ready position*.
› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 301 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 1 until you hear it click into place » !.

The lever A **automatically** turns upwards in the direction of arrow 2 and the release pin B pops out (both its red and green parts are visible) » !.

If lever A does not turn automatically, or if the release pin B does not pop out, remove the ball rod from the mounting recess by turning lever A downwards as far as it can go. Clean the contact surfaces on the ball rod and the mounting recess.

! WARNING

- Keep your hands outside the lever's range of motion when attaching the ball rod – risk of finger injuries!
- Never attempt to pull the operating lever violently upwards to turn the key. Doing so would mean the ball rod is not attached correctly!

Assembling the bar ball – Step 2

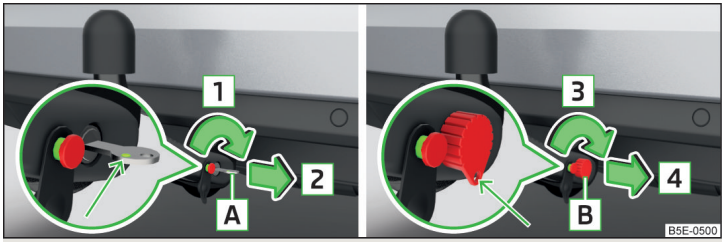

Fig. 302 **Lock lock: Key version 1 / key version 2**

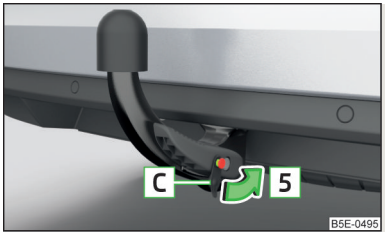

Fig. 303
Place cap on the lock

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

Applies to key version 1

› Turn key A in the direction of arrow 1 so that the green marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 302.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.

Applies to key version 2

› Turn the key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the conclusions release points down » Fig. 302.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 4.

Applies to both key versions

› Fit and press cap C onto the lock in the direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 303.
› Check that the ball rod is securely attached » page 253, *Check proper fitting*. ▸

WARNING

After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key. The tow bar must not be operated with the key inserted.

Check proper fitting

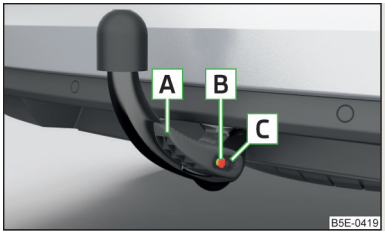

Fig. 304
Correctly secured ball rod

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

Correctly secured ball rod » Fig. 304

- ✓ The tow bar must sit securely in the receiving shaft. There must be no play when “shaken” roughly.
- ✓ Operating lever A is as far up as possible.
- ✓ The release pin B is completely exposed (both its red and green parts are visible).
- ✓ The key is removed and the cap C attached to the lock.

Removing the bar ball – Step 1

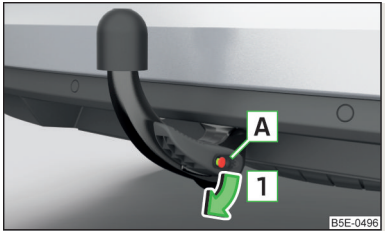

Fig. 305
Remove the cap from the lock

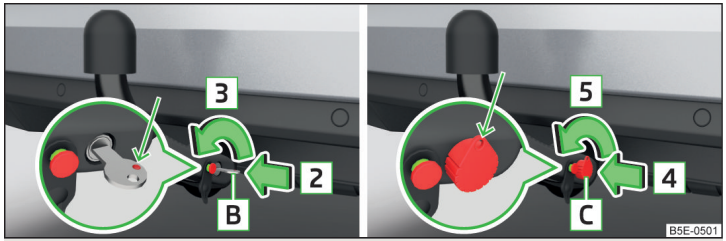

Fig. 306 **Unlock lock: Key version 1 / key version 2**

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

No trailer or other accessory is connected to the tow bar. We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

Applies to both key versions

› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 305.

Applies to key version 1

› Insert key B into the lock in the direction of arrow 2 so that the green marking is pointing upwards.
› Turn key B in the direction of arrow 3 so that the red marking is pointing upwards » Fig. 306.

Applies to key version 2

› Insert key C into the lock in the direction of arrow 4 so that the eye of the key is pointing downwards.
› Turn key C in the direction of arrow 5 so that the eye of the key is pointing upwards » Fig. 306.

Removing the bar ball – Step 2

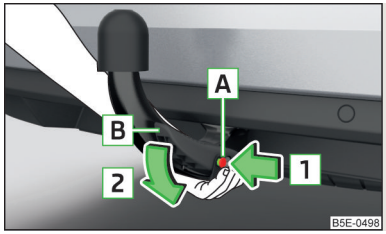

Fig. 307
Release ball bar

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

Removing

› Grasp the ball rod from **below** » Fig. 307.
› Push release pin A in the direction of arrow 1 to the stop, and simultaneously push operating lever B in the direction of arrow 2 to the stop .

The ball rod is released in this position and falls freely into the hand. If it does not fall freely into the hand, use your other hand to push it upwards.

› Place the cap 4 » Fig. 297 *on page 250* onto the mounting recess.

If lever B is held firmly and not pushed downwards to the stop, it will move back up after the ball rod is removed and will not latch into the ready position. The knee-joint bar will then need to be brought into this position before the next time it is installed» page 251, *Adjusting the ready position*.

The knee-joint bar must be cleaned before storing in the box with the vehicle tool always.

! WARNING

Never allow the ball rod to remain unsecured in the boot. This can cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk.

! CAUTION

- Store the ball rod in the box in the ready position and with the key facing upwards - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the key!
- Do not use excessive force when handling the operating lever (e.g. do not climb on it)!

Vertical load with mounted accessories

Read and observe ! on page 250 first.

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The **maximum length** of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) may not exceed **70 cm**.

The permissible total weight of the installed accessory, including its load, corresponds to the maximum trailer load on trailers.

If the maximum trailer load in trailer operation is more than 75 kg, then the permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value applies if the center of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases (e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half).

! CAUTION

Never exceed the permissible **total weight** of the accessories incl. load and **maximum length** of the accessories – There is a risk of damage to the towing device.

i Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Using hitch

Trailer (accessory) connect and disconnect

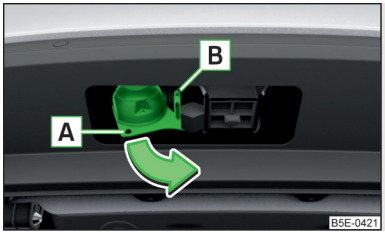

Fig. 308
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Connect / disconnect

› Fit the ball rod.
› Grip the 13-pin socket at point A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 308.
› Remove the protective cap 5 » Fig. 297 *on page 250*.
› Place the trailer (the accessory) onto the ball head.
› Open the socket cap and insert the plug of the trailer (accessories) into the 13-pin socket A » Fig. 308. (If the trailer / accessories have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories).
› Suspend the breakaway cable of the trailer at the safety eyelet B (the breakaway cable must **sag** in all trailer settings in view of the vehicle).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors
You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer using the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer (accessory) is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users. Set the range of the headlights » page 72, *Operating the lights*[1].

Power supply of the trailer / accessory power system
In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory), the trailer (accessories) is supplied with power from the vehicle (with ignition switched on and off).

With the engine switched off, the vehicle battery is discharged by the connected consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery, the power supply to the trailer (accessories) is interrupted.

WARNING

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) may result in an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- Do not make any adjustments to the electrical installation of the vehicle and the trailer (accessories) - risk of an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- After the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory) the trailer / accessory lights should be checked for function.
- Never use the securing eye to tow - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) can lead to the inoperability of the vehicle electronics.
- The total power consumption of all the connected loads to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle.

Loading a trailer

Correct the **tyre inflation pressure** on the vehicle for “full load”» page 279.

Distribution of the cargo
Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the load from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Drive with particular caution if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

[1] Applies to vehicles with Full LED headlights.

WARNING

Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

Trailer

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) at gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1300	620
	DSG	1300	630
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	630
	DSG	1500	640
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	640
	DSG	1500	640
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1100	610
	AG	1100	630
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	DSG	1600	670
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG	1700	690
	DSG 4x4	1700	730
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	MG	1500	670
	MG 4x4	1700	730
	DSG	1500	680
2.0 ltr./105 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	660
	DSG	1600	670
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	680
	DSG	1600	700
	DSG 4x4	2000	750
2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	2000	750

Permissible trailer load - Octavia RS

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) at gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	MG	1600	700
	DSG	1600	720
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG	1600	730
	DSG 4x4	2000	750

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) at gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1300	630
	DSG	1300	640
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	640
	DSG	1500	650
1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC	DSG	-[a)]	-[a)]
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1500	650
	DSG	1500	650
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1100	620
	AG	1100	640
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	DSG	1600	680
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG	1700	700
	DSG 4x4	1700	740
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	MG	1500	680
	MG 4x4	1700	740
	DSG	1500	690
2.0 ltr./105 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	670
	DSG	1600	680
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR	MG	1600	690
	DSG	1600	710
	DSG 4x4	2000	750
2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	2000	750

[a)] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi RS

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) at gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	MG	1600	710
	DSG	1600	730
2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR	DSG	1600	750
	DSG 4x4	2000	750

Permissible trailer load - Octavia Combi Scout

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer weight, braked (kg) at gradients up to 12%.	Permissible trailer weight, unbraked (kg)
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1700	750
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	2000	750
2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	2000	750

WARNING

The maximum vertical load and the maximum trailer load must not be exceeded - there is risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 100 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from “swaying” by accelerating.

Brakes

Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

WARNING

Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

CAUTION

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

The alarm is triggered if, with a vehicle with activated anti-theft alarm (hereinafter only warning system), the electrical connection to the trailer (accessory) is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer (accessory) is coupled or uncoupled » page 64.

Conditions for including a trailer (accessory) in the anti-theft alarm system.

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer (accessory) is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is not equipped with LED taillights.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle are to be carried out only by a specialist garage. Improperly conducted work (including work on the electronic components and their software) can cause faults - there is a risk of accidents and increased wear on parts!
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA AUTO cannot assume any liability for products which have not been approved by ŠKODA even though these may be products with a type approval or have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 259 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with the intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA partner. They will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant / battery replacement etc.).

ŠKODA Service Partner

Read and observe ! on page 259 first.

All ŠKODA Service Partners operate according to the most recent guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO . All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 259 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Original Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts correspond exactly to the ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 259 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following.

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO has selected such accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products, even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 259 first.

WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with an original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the boot lid, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries!
- The vehicle must always be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper only in combination with the corresponding spoiler on the boot lid.
- This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.
- Improperly conducted work on the spoilers of your vehicle may result in malfunction.

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 259 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 259 first.

WARNING

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tyre combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!

WARNING

- No changes may be made to parts of the airbag system, the front bumper and the body.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- If the airbag is triggered, the airbag system must be exchanged.

WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). The resulting damage can negatively affect the function of the airbag system - there is a risk of accidents and fatal injuries! The following guidelines must be observed.
- Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never drive with removed inner door panels or openings in the panels.

Cleaning and care

Introduction

Regular and thorough care retains the value of your vehicle.

When using the care product, always observe the instructions on the packaging. We recommend that you use the preservative from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents - there is a danger of damaging the material that is to be cleaned.

Note

We recommend that the vehicle is cleaned and cared for by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Washing the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 261 first.

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is frequent washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain on the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the underside of the vehicle at the end of the winter.

Washing by hand

Wash the vehicle from top to bottom, if necessary, wash using a soft sponge or washing mitt and plenty of water with appropriate detergents. Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Use a different sponge for the wheels, door sills and lower vehicle areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

Automatic car washes

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the blades of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

Pressure washer

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This particularly applies to information with respect to the **pressure** and **spray distance** from the vehicle surface.

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Take care when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel wells - there is a risk of injury on sharp metal parts!

CAUTION

- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight, do not exert pressure on the body while washing. The temperature of the washing water should be max. 60 ° C - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the vehicle paint.
- Before driving through a car wash, fold in the exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage.

CAUTION

Washing the vehicle using pressure washers

- Do not wash the foils using pressure washers - there is a risk of damage.

▪ Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
▪ During cleaning, always keep a sufficiently large spraying distance in particular from the parking sensors, the reversing camera lens, the external decorative and protective plastic parts (e.g. roof racks, spoilers, protective strips) and other vehicle parts made of non-metallic materials, such as rubber hoses or insulation materials – otherwise there is a risk of damage.

Caring for the outside of the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 261 first.

Vehicle component	Facts of the matter	Remedy
Paint	Spilled fuel	Clear water, cloth, (clean as soon as possible)
	No water droplets form on the paint	Use hard wax (min. twice a year), apply wax to clean and dry body
	Matt paint	Use polish, then preserve (if the polish does not contain any preservative ingredients)
Plastic parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth / sponge provided for the intended cleaning agent
Chromed and anodised parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth or cleaning agent provided for this purpose, then polish with a soft dry cloth
Foils	Soiling	soft sponge and mild soap solution[a]
Windows and external mirror glass	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry using the intended cloth
Headlights/lights	Soiling	soft sponge and mild soap solution[a]
Reversing camera	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a soft cloth
	Snow / ice	Hand brush / de-icer
Door lock cylinder	Snow / ice	De-icer
Wiper / wiper blades	Soiling	Glass cleaner, sponge or cloth
Wheels	Soiling	Clear water, then coat with appropriate conservation solution

[a] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

The **jack** is maintenance-free. If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

The **towing device** is maintenance-free. Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Protection of hollow spaces
All the hollow spaces on your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of protective wax applied in the factory.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

Underbody protection
The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

Product life of the films
Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films. Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not a fault.

Sunlight may also affect the strength of the film colour.

When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box or similar), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. of chipping from the secured load).

! CAUTION
▪ **Vehicle paint**
  ▪ Damaged areas should be repaired as soon as possible.
  ▪ Do not treat painted parts with or hard waxes.

- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.

- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not use paint care products.
- **Chromed and anodised parts**
  - Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.
- **Foils**

  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of foil damage.
  - Do not clean with dirty cloths or sponges.
  - To remove ice and snow, do not use a scraper or other means.
  - Do not polish the foils
  - Do not use a pressure washer to clean the foils
- **Rubber seals**
  - Do not treat the door seals and window guides with any products - the protective lacquer layer could be affected.
- **Windows and external mirror glass**
  - Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp objects - there is a risk of damage to the filaments or glass antenna.
  - Do not use a cloth, which was used to polish the body - this could soil the window and reduce visibility.
- **Headlights/lights**
  - Do not dry off the headlights/lights, do not use sharp objects - there is a risk of damage to the protective coating and subsequent cracking of the headlight glass.
- **Reversing camera**

  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of camera damage.
  - Do not remove snow / ice with warm / hot water.
  - To wash, never use a pressure washer or steam jet.
  - For cleaning, do not use abrasive cleaners.
- **Door lock cylinder**
  - Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!
- **Wheels**
  - Heavy contamination of the wheels can affect the balance of the wheels - this can result in vibrations and, under some circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering wheel.

Removing snow and ice from the windscreens

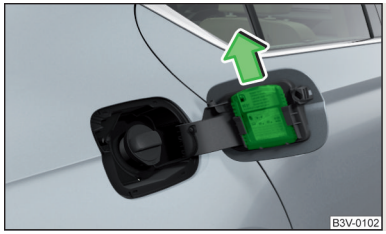

Fig. 309
Installation location of the ice scraper, removing the scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 261 first.

Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors. This can be on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap and slide the scraper in the direction of arrow » Fig. 309.

! CAUTION

- Move the scraper in one direction only, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the glass surface.
- Do not remove snow / ice on the surface that is soiled (e.g. pea gravel, sand, road salt) - there is a risk of damaging the surface.
- Remove snow / ice carefully, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the labels that have been fitted by the factory.

Caring for the interior

Read and observe ! and ! on page 261 first.

Vehicle component	Facts of the matter	Remedy
Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Suede / Fabric	Dust, surface contamination	Vacuum cleaner
	Pollution (fresh)	Water, slightly damp cotton / wool cloth, if necessary, mild soap solution[a], then wipe with a soft cloth
	Stubborn stains	Specially prepared detergent
	Care (natural leather)	Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.
	Care (Alcantara® suede / fabric)	Remove stubborn hairs using a “cleaning glove” Remove pills from materials with a brush
Plastic parts	Soiling	Water, slightly damp cloth or sponge, or cleaning agent provided for this purpose
Windows	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry using the intended cloth
Covers of electrically heated seats	Soiling	Specially provided cleaning agent
Seat belts » !	Soiling	soft cloth and mild soap solution[a]

[a] A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

! WARNING

- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- **Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® suede / material**
  - In lengthy periods in bright sunlight, it might be sensible to cover these materials in order to avoid bleaching.
  - Fresh stains (e.g. from pens, lipstick, shoe polish etc.) should be removed as soon as possible.
  - Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams.
  - Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
  - Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® suede seat upholstery.
  - Some clothing fabrics (e.g. dark denim) do not have sufficient colour fastness - this may leave evident marks on upholstery. This is not a defect in the fabric.
  - Sharp objects on garments (e.g. zips, rivets, sharp- edged belts) can damage the upholstery fabrics in the vehicle. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dashboard – there is a risk of damage to the dashboard.
- **Windows**
  - Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- **Covers of electrically heated seats**
  - Do not clean with water or other liquids - there is a risk of damage to the heating system.
  - Do not dry by switching on the heating.
- **Seat belts**
  - Allow to dry before rolling up the seat belts.

i Note

During use, the leather and Alcantara® and suede materials may show minor changes (e.g. folds, discolouration).

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

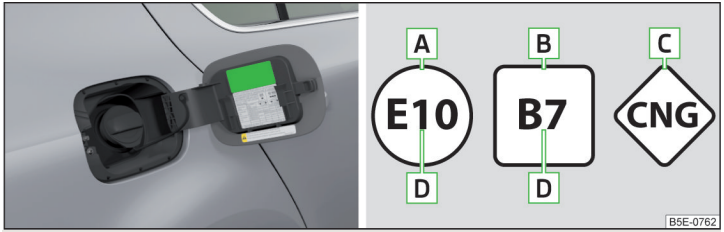

Fig. 310 **Label with prescribed fuel / graphic designation of fuel types**

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 310.

The fuel capacity for vehicles with front wheel drive is about **50 litres,** and for vehicles with four-wheel drive about **55 litres,** with about **6 litres** as reserve.

Graphic name of the fuel types » Fig. 310

A Unleaded petrol
B Diesel
C CNG (compressed natural gas)
D Percentage of organic

WARNING

Fuel vapours are explosive - can be fatal!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with the intended weather conditions, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will tell you whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the respective country or whether it is permissible to operate the vehicle with another fuel.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

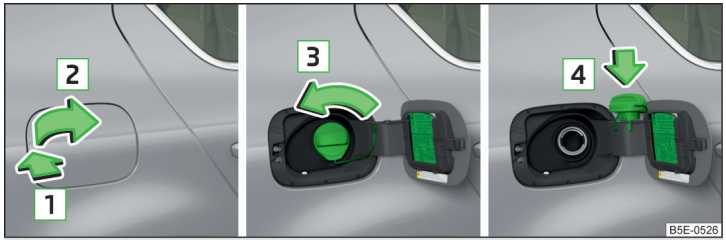

Fig. 311 **Open fuel filler flap/unscrew tank cap/place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

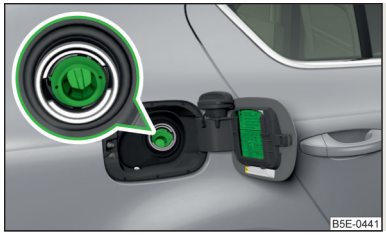

Fig. 312
Fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines

Read and observe ! and ! on page 265 first.

Perform the refuelling under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off.

› Press the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 1 and fold in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 311.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place in the recess on top of the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler neck as far as it will go, and refuel.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time. Not continue refuelling.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages 3.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Incorrect refuelling guard on vehicles with diesel engines
The fuel filler tube on vehicles with diesel engines has been fitted with an incorrect refuelling guard » Fig. 312.

If the diesel pump nozzle does not sit directly in the fuel filler tube, move it to and fro with slight pressure to insert it correctly.

The diameter of the diesel pump nozzle can be identical to that of the petrol pump nozzle in some countries. When driving in these countries, the incorrect fuelling protection should be removed by a specialist company.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe ! and ! on page 265 first.

The correct fuel for the vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 310 *on page 265*.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** containing **maximum** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Unleaded petrol must correspond to the European Standard **EN 228** (in Germany DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 91 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98).

Specified petrol 95 / min. 92 and 93 RON/ROZ
We recommend using petrol **95** RON.

Optionally, the petrol **92** or. **93** RON can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency** petrol **91** RON can be used (slight power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Unleaded petrol min. 95 RON / ROZ
Use min. **95** ROZ petrol.

In an **emergency** petrol **91**, **92** or **93** RON can be used (slight loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Prescribed petrol 98/(95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **98** RON.

Optionally, petrol **95** RON can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency** petrol **91**, **92** or **93** RON can be used (slight loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

! CAUTION
The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of engine damage and damage to the exhaust system.
■ If gasoline is used which is lower than the prescribed octane number, then continue driving at medium engine speeds and minimum engine load. Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.

▪ Petrol with a **lower** Octane count than **91** should not even be used in an emergency!
▪ If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.

! CAUTION

Petrol additives (additives)
▪ The unleaded petrol in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the petrol - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.
▪ **The following additives and auxiliary products may not be used - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system!**
  ▪ Additives with metal components (metallic additives), in particular with manganese and iron content.
  ▪ Fuels with metallic content (e.g. LRP - lead replacement petrol).

i Note

▪ Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
▪ The use of petrol with an octane rating higher than **95** RON in does not result in either a noticeable increase in power nor lower fuel consumption in vehicles for which unleaded petrol **95/min 92 or 93** RON is specified.
▪ On vehicles using prescribed petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 265 first.

The correct fuel for the vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 310 *on page 265*.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that complies with the European standard **EN 590** (in Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005/EN 590: 2004, in India IS 1460/Bharat IV or in an emergency IS 1460/Bharat III).

The diesel fuel may contain **maximum** 7% biodiesel (**B7** - In Germany in accordance with DIN 52638, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590).

Operating under different weather conditions
Use only diesel in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. Ask the petrol station personnel whether the diesel fuel offered corresponds to these conditions.

! CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of engine damage and damage to the exhaust system.
▪ If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is put into the tank, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition!
▪ The biofuel **RME** must not be used!

! CAUTION

Diesel fuel additives
▪ The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the diesel - - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.

Refuel CNG (compressed natural gas)

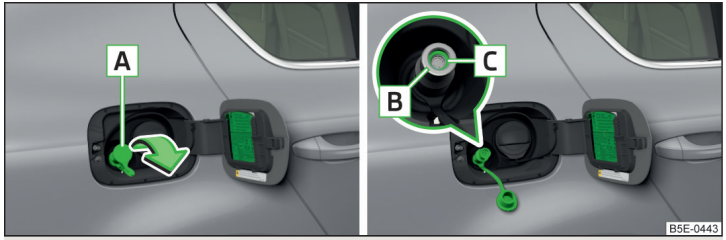

Fig. 313 **Natural gas filler tubes**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 265 first.

Refuel with natural gas under the following conditions.
✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.
✓ The auxiliary heating and ventilation is switched off » page 119.

Natural gas refuelling may vary from station to station. If refuelling with natural gas at a station is unfamiliar to you, get someone to instruct you or allow the fuelling operation to be carried out by the station staff.

Refuelling operation

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Remove cap A » Fig. 313in the direction of the arrow and insert connector for the refuelling system into filler neck B.

The fuel tank is full when the compressor of the refuelling system automatically switches off.

› Check that sealing ring C » Fig. 313has remained inserted in filler neck B. If the sealing ring has slipped on the connector, reinsert it into the filler neck.
› Insert cap A into the filler neck and close the fuel filler flap until it locks into place.

The natural gas refuelling systems have an overfill protection relating to the outdoor temperature. At very high outside temperatures, it may happen that the gas tank may not be fully refuelled.

If the vehicle is parked directly after a refuelling operation, on restart the pointer of the gas gauge may not show exactly the same level as immediately after the filling process. This is not a leak in the system, but a reduction in pressure due to the cooling of the gas in the gas tank after refuelling.

The maximum lifetime of the gas tank is 20 years.

The capacity of the natural gas fuel tank is approximately **17.5 kg**.

WARNING

- Natural gas is highly explosive and highly flammable.
- When refuelling, never get into the vehicle. If you have to get into your vehicle in exceptional cases, touch a metal surface before you touch the filling coupling again. Otherwise, electrostatic discharging may occur - There is a risk of fire!

CAUTION

LNG (Liquefied Natural Gas), LPG (Liquefied Petroleum Gas) and hythane (mixture of hydrogen and methane) must not be used - there is a risk of damaging the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

During the filling process sounds are heard which are harmless. If you are unsure which service station staff to use, ask the petrol station staff.

CNG

Fig. 314 **Position of the CNG label(s).**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 265 first.

A G-TEC-vehicle may be operated with CNG and unleaded petrol.

Positioning of the CNG sticker in natural gas vehicles » Fig. 314.

Automatically switching over from natural gas mode to petrol mode

The vehicle automatically switches from natural gas to petrol, for example, if the following situations occur.

▶ With an empty gas tank or not enough pressure in the tank.
▶ After natural gas refueling (for protecting the petrol fuel system).
▶ At very low surrounding temperatures.

Never fully empty the petrol tank. After the warning light comes on Refuel petrol at the nearest petrol station.

To ensure the correct functioning of the fuel system, every 6 months the fuel tank should be run down until the warning light comes on.

Gas leak

If a gas leak is suspected (noticeable odour), proceed as follows.

▶ Stop the vehicle.
▶ Switch off the ignition.
▶ Extinguish cigarettes, switch off spark-producing or incendiary items and remove them from the vehicle.

- Open the doors and the boot lid to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently.
- Do not continue to drive if the odour persists.
- If it is not possible to drive a vehicle with a gas leak out of an enclosed area (e.g. tunnel, underpass, garage, ferry etc.), call the emergency services immediately.

Seek help from a specialist garage to correct the gas system fault.

In a traffic accident

If a gas leak is suspected in a traffic accident, proceed as follows.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Extinguish cigarettes, switch off spark-producing or incendiary items and remove them from the vehicle.
- Have all the occupants get out.
- Keep all persons away from the vehicle. We recommend standing at least 10 metres from the vehicle.
- Inform the emergency services that it is a natural gas vehicle.

Regular gas system checks

Regular gas system checks must be carried out in a specialist workshop on natural gas-powered vehicles. The vehicle owner is responsible for ensuring tests are conducted properly.

Every 2 years

- Check the filler cap.
- Check the condition of fuel filler tubes and the sealing ring in the fuel filler tubes, and clean the sealing ring if necessary.
- Check the gas system for leaks and carry out an examination of gas containers.

Every 20 years

- Replace the gas tank.

WARNING

- Do not underestimate the smell of gas in the car or when refuelling - risk of fire, explosion and injury.
- The natural gas tanks in the vehicle must not be exposed to unwanted heat sources.

CAUTION

In the event of contact between the vehicle underbody and an obstacle or in the event of an accident, the gas container may become damaged. If this is the case, have the vehicle checked by a specialist garage immediately. If you smell gas, **stop driving!** Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

AdBlue® and its refilling

Introduction

In order to reduce pollutant emissions from vehicles with diesel engines and the SCR catalyst, a urea - AdBlue® solution is injected into the exhaust system.

Only use AdBlue® that corresponds to ISO 22241-1 **standard**. Do not add additives to AdBlue®.

The AdBlue®-**consumption** depends on driving style, the operating temperature of the system and on the weather conditions.

The AdBlue®-**tank filling** is about **12 litres**.

WARNING

AdBlue® can cause skin, eye and respiratory irritation. If your eyes or skin come into contact with the AdBlue® fluid, immediately wash the affected area with water. Seek medical assistance if required.

CAUTION

AdBlue® attacks the surface of some materials (e.g. as painted parts, plastics, fabrics). Clean the areas affected with AdBlue® using a damp cloth and plenty of cold water. Remove any dried AdBlue® with warm water and a sponge.

Note

- The AdBlue® solution freezes at a temperature of -11° C and lower. The system has an automatic heater to ensure the operability at low temperatures.
- We recommend purchasing AdBlue® refill bottles from the ŠKODA original parts.

▪ The working life of the AdBlue® solution is 4 years. If the tank contents are not used within this period, then this is to be replaced by a specialist garage. When topping up, do not use AdBlue® for which the shelf life has expired.
▪ AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA. AdBlue® is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Check level

Read and observe ! and ! on page 269 first.

The AdBlue® level is automatically monitored.

The driving distance that can be driven with the existing AdBlue®Tank capacity as well as indication of the minimum and maximum AdBlue®- Refill quantity, can be displayed using the driving data » page 52.

If the available travel distance that can be completed with the remaining AdBlue® tank capacity drops to about 2400 km, the warning appears on the instrument cluster and a request for replenishment of AdBlue® appears.

If the available travel distance that can be driven with the existing AdBlue® - tank capacity drops down to 0 km, **then no motor start is possible**. In this case, if possible, top up AdBlue® to the maximum fill level.

AdBlue® Refill

Fig. 315 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 269 first.

AdBlue® You can even top up using a fuel nozzle at a petrol station or a refill bottle, if necessary at a specialist garage.

We recommend when refilling using refill bottles that you use refill bottles from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

When adding AdBlue® take note of the minimum and maximum AdBlue®tank capacity shown in the display of the instrument cluster together with warning light .

Refill AdBlue® under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The ignition is switched off.

Refilling

› Press the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 1 and open it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 315.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place in the recess on top of the fuel filler flap in the direction of arrow 4.
› Refill AdBlue® in the neck A by means of a refill or a fuel nozzle refill (follow the instructions on the container or the instructions of the petrol station operator).

The AdBlue® - tank is full when no AdBlue® flows from the refill bottle or as soon as the correctly operated pump cuts out for the first time. Do not continue refilling AdBlue®.

› After refilling AdBlue®put the cap on the fuel filler neck and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it engages.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Before continuing your journey, switch on just the ignition for 30 s so that the refilling can be recognized by the system. Only then start the engine.

! CAUTION

When refilling AdBlue® Do not exceed the maximum refill quantity specified in the instrument cluster - there is a risk of damage to the AdBlue®systems.

Engine compartment

Introduction

WARNING

Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, the following instructions must be observed - risk of injury or fire. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

- Stop the engine and remove the ignition key, on vehicles with the KESSY system, open the driver's door.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** the lever into the neutral position. For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine room

- Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- Never touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan suddenly switch on approx. 10 minutes after switching off the ignition!
- Do not smoke or use open flames in the vicinity of the engine.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- If it is necessary to work on the engine compartment with the engine running, then observe the **rotating engine parts and electrical plants** - it can be fatal!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.

CAUTION

Refill only operating fluids of the correct specification - danger of damaging the vehicle!

Note

- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.
- We recommend you have the battery replaced by a specialist garage.

Open the bonnet and close

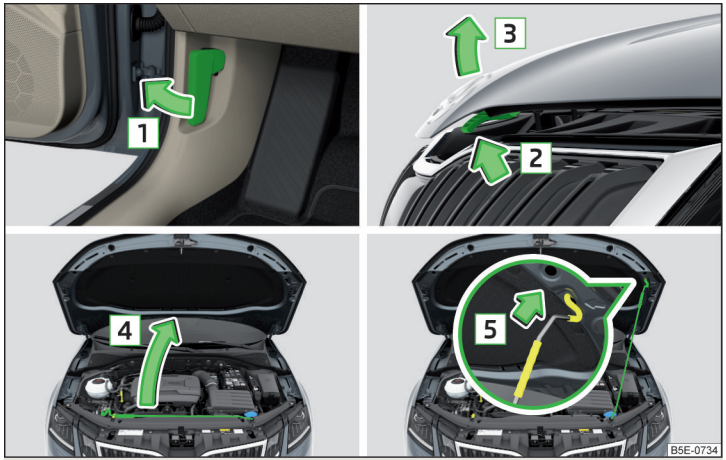

Fig. 316 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 271 first.

Open flap

› Make sure that the windscreen wiper arms are not folded away from the windscreen - there is a risk of damage to the bonnet.
› Open the front door and pull the release lever below the dash panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 316.
› Press the release lever in the direction of arrow 2 and the bonnet will be unlocked.
› Raise the bonnet in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the bonnet lid

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› From around 20 cm, lightly push the bonnet lid closed until it securely engages.

If the bonnet lid is not properly closed, the display of the instrument cluster will show this.

! WARNING

- Never drive if the bonnet is open - could cause an accident!
- Make sure that when closing the engine compartment lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

! CAUTION

When closing the bonnet “do not press down” - there is a risk of damaging the bonnet.

Engine compartment overview

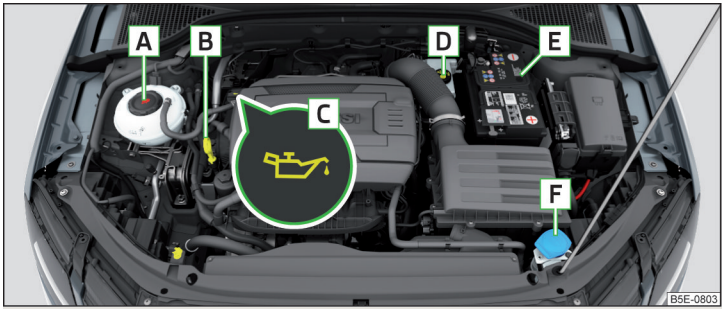

Fig. 317 **Arrangement example in the engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 271 first.

A	Coolant expansion tank	274
B	Engine oil dipstick	273
C	Engine oil filler opening	273
D	Brake fluid reservoir	275
E	Vehicle battery	276
F	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	273

Windscreen washer fluid

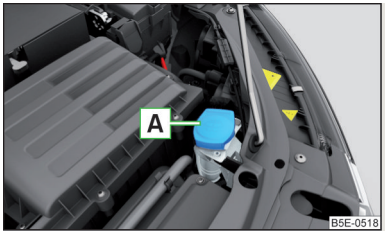

Fig. 318
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 271 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 318.

The capacity of the reservoir is 3 litres, or 4.7 litres in vehicles with the headlight cleaning system (in some countries, the reservoir capacity is 4.7 litres for both variants).

Use a suitable windscreen washer fluid in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

! CAUTION

- Only use liquids that do not attack polycarbonates - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the headlights.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid otherwise the liquid transportation system can become contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Specification

To find out which type of engine oil you can use for your vehicle, contact a specialist garage.

If this oil is not available, other oils can also be refilled. To prevent engine damage, a **maximum of 0.5 l** of engine oil with the following specifications may be used until the next oil change:

- Petrol engines: VW 504 00, VW 502 00, VW 508 00, ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
- Diesel engines: VW 507 00, ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines without a **diesel particulate filter**.

Check and refill

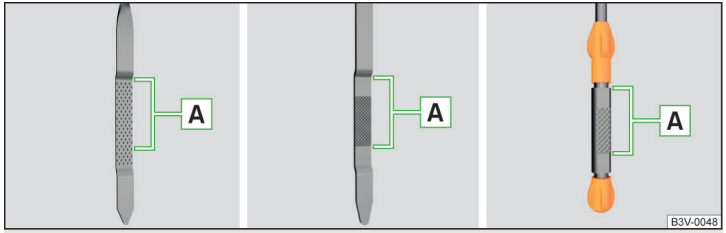

Fig. 319 **Dipstick variants**

Depending on the driving style and operating conditions, the engine uses some oil (up to 0.5 l / 1 000 km). Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

Have the **oil change** carried out by a specialist garage during the inspection.

Check the oil under the following conditions and refill.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Push the dipstick to the stop and pull out again.
› Read the oil level and push in the dipstick.

The oil level must be in range A » Fig. 319. If the oil level is below the range A, refill the oil.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening C » Fig. 317 *on page 272*.

› Add oil of the correct specification in increments of 0.5 litres » page 273.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 271.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never fall outside range A » Fig. 319 - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the engine and the exhaust system.
- If it is not possible to top up the engine oil or if the oil level is above range A, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not add additives to the engine oil - risk of engine damage.

Note

- An engine oil level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message » page 46. Nevertheless, we recommend that you check the oil level regularly using the dipstick.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coolant

Introduction

The coolant cools the engine and consists of water and coolant additive (with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring).

The coolant additive level in the coolant must between 40 and 60 %.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive should be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or corrected if necessary.

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 271.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurized - risk of scalding or injury from being splashed with coolant!

WARNING (Continued)

- To protect against coolant splashes, cover the cap with a cloth when opening.
- Coolant and coolant fumes are harmful - avoid contact with the coolant. If your eyes or skin come into contact with the coolant, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water and seek medical advice if required.

CAUTION

Do not cover the radiator or fit any parts (e.g. auxiliary lights) in front of the air intakes - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Checking and refilling

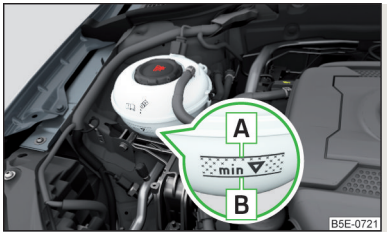

Fig. 320
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 274 first.

Check the coolant under the following conditions and refill.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is not warm (if the engine is warm, the test results could be inaccurate).
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the coolant level - the coolant level must be between the marks A and B » Fig. 320. If the coolant level is below the mark B, refill the coolant.

Refilling

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » !.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.

› Always top up using the correct specification of fluids.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

The **specification** of the coolant is shown on the coolant expansion reservoir» Fig. 320.

If no specified coolant is available, use only distilled or demineralised water and have the mixing ratio of water and coolant additive corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

CAUTION

▪ If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could aerate - risk of damaging the engine! Do not drive the vehicle! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 320. When it heats up, the coolant could press out of the cooling system - there is a risk of damage to the engine parts.
▪ If it is not possible to add coolant, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
▪ A coolant additive which does not correspond to the correct specification can reduce the anti-corrosion effect of the cooling system - there is a risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine.
▪ If water other than distilled (demineralised) water is used, then have the coolant replaced by a specialist garage - there is a risk of engine damage.
▪ A loss of coolant could be due to **leaks** in the cooling system - there is a risk of engine damage. Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

A coolant level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message » page 46. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Brake fluid

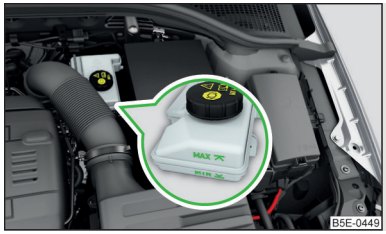

Fig. 321
Brake fluid reservoir

Check the brake fluid under the following conditions.
✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check brake fluid level - the brake fluid level must be between the markings “MIN” and “MAX”» Fig. 321.

Specification - the brake fluid must comply with **VW 501 14** standard (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

The **brake fluid change** is carried out during the inspection.

WARNING

▪ If the date of the brake fluid change is exceeded, steam bubbles could form in the brake system during heavy braking. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!
▪ The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 271.
▪ There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the “MIN” » Fig. 321 marking. Do not continue driving - There is a risk of accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

A brake fluid level which is too low is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and a corresponding message» page 41. We therefore recommend that you check the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Automatic consumer shutdown - Discharge protection of the vehicle battery

The on-board power supply tries as follows to avoid draining the vehicle battery when it is heavily loaded.

- By increasing the engine idle speed.
- By limiting the power of certain consumers.
- By switching off some loads(heated seats, heated rear window) for as long as necessary.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

Battery acid is highly corrosive - risk of injury, irritation or poisoning! Corrosive vapours in the air irritate and damage the respiratory tract and the eyes. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Seek medical assistance if required.

WARNING (Continued)

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.

WARNING

When working on the car battery, there is the risk of explosion, fire, injury or irritation! The following guidelines must be observed.

- Avoid smoking, the use of open flames or light and any activities that could cause sparks.
- **A discharged vehicle battery can freeze slightly.** Never charge up a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Do not connect the battery terminals with each other by bridging the two poles of a short circuit.

CAUTION

Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Check condition

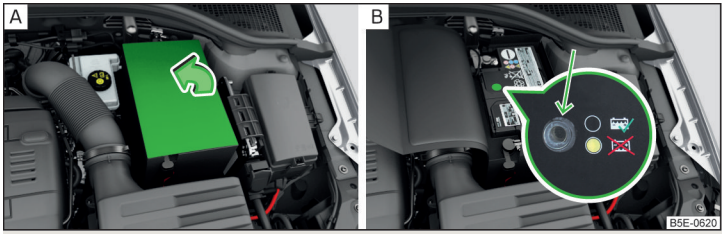

Fig. 322 **Vehicle battery: Open the cover / acid level indicator**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 276 first.

The battery condition is checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Check the acid level
For car batteries with acid level indicator, use the colouration of the display to check the acid level. In vehicle batteries with the designation **“AGM”** there is no acid level examination.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle battery may be provided with a cover, this can be opened in the direction of arrow » Fig. 322 - A.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. Therefore, carefully knock on the display » Fig. 322 - B.

Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Battery discharge
Frequent short journeys will not sufficiently recharge the car battery.

The battery capacity decreases at low temperatures.

If the vehicle is not used for longer than 3 to 4 weeks, disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ or charge the battery constantly with a very low charging current.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 276 first.

Only charge the vehicle battery when the ignition and all consumers are switched off.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

Charging
- For vehicles **with** START-STOP system or auxiliary heating, connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ pole of the battery, the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point of the engine » page 290.
- For vehicles **without** START-STOP system or auxiliary heating, connect the terminals of the charger to the corresponding battery poles (⊕ to ⊕. ⊖ to ⊖).
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Disconnect the terminals of the charger from the vehicle battery.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

! WARNING
- When charging the vehicle battery, hydrogen is released - risk of explosion. An explosion can be caused from sparks or connection or releasing the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- The so-called “quick charging” of the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge. Therefore, have “Quick loading” carried out by a specialist garage.

Disconnect/reconnect and change

Read and observe ! and ! on page 276 first.

We recommend you have the battery **replaced** by a specialist garage.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original Battery.

Connecting/disconnecting

› To **disconnect** the battery, switch off the ignition and disconnect first the negative terminal ⊖, and only after this the positive ⊕.
› To **connect** the battery, first connect the positive terminal ⊕, and only after this the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Power windows	» page 70
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 71
Sun screen	» page 72
Time settings	» page 50

CAUTION

▪ Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
▪ Before disconnecting the battery, close the electric tailgate, all the windows, the sliding / tilting roof and the electric sunshade - otherwise malfunctions of equipment elements may occur.
▪ Under no circumstances must the connection cables be connected incorrectly – risk of fire.

Note

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

Advice on tyre/wheel usage

New tyres, during the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit **tyres with a greater profile depth** on the front wheels.

Wheels and bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Always **store wheels or tyres**in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. The tyres themselves should be stored standing.

Tyre life
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the **inside**). E.g. **DOT ... 10 18...** means that the tyres were produced in the 10th week of the year 2018.

Tyre damage
We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre tread immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Installation of new tyres
Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all 4 wheels.

When mounting new tires the tires have to be replaced axle by axle.

Unidirectional tyres
Some tires may be directional. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The specified running direction must be strictly adhered to, otherwise the following tyre characteristics may be degraded.

- Driving stability.
- Traction.
- Tyre noise and tyre wear.

WARNING

Never use damaged tyres or tyres that are older than 6 years old – risk of accident.

CAUTION

- The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.
- Do not use alloy rims with a burnished or polished surface in winter conditions - there is a risk of wheel damage (e.g. from the road grit).

Tyre pressure

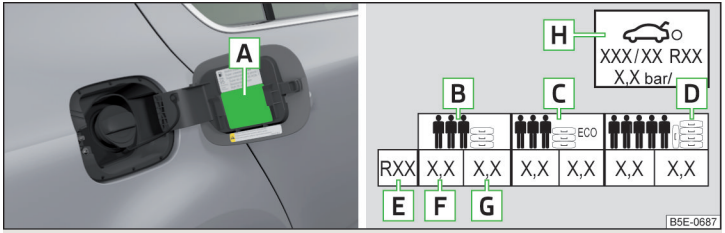

Fig. 323 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms A » Fig. 323 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

B Inflation pressure for half load

C Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)

D Inflation pressure for full load

E Tyre diameter in inches
This information serves merely as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a list of shared tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document).

F Tyre pressure value on the front axle

G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

H Required tire pressure value for the emergency wheel

Check tyre pressures

Check the tyre pressure (including that of the emergency or spare wheel) at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 249.

WARNING

- Do not drive with an incorrect tyre pressure - risk of accident.
- In the event of very fast pressure loss, e.g. in the event of sudden tyre damage, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

Note

The declaration of conformity (the so-called. COC document) can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (only valid for some countries and some models).

Tyre wear and wheel change

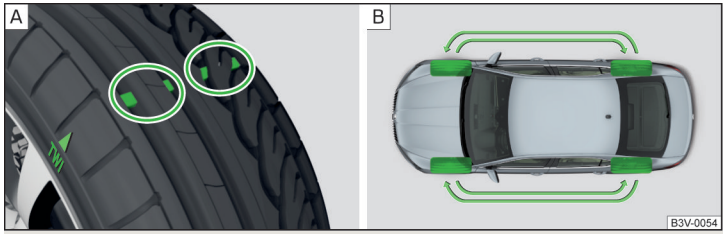

Fig. 324 **Tyre wear indicator / wheel change**

The **tyre wear** increases in the following circumstances.
- Incorrect tyre pressure.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration / deceleration).
- Incorrect balancing of wheels (have the wheels balanced after changing tyres / repair or with “restlessness” on the steering).
- Wheel alignment error.

Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres which display the permissible minimum tread depth » Fig. 324 - A. A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this indicator is flush with the tread. Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters “TWI” or other symbols (e.g. △) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

The tread depth can be measured with a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper, which is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you **change** the **wheels** every 10,000 km according to the schedule » Fig. 324 - B.

WARNING

- Change when they are worn down to the wear indicators at the latest - risk of accident.
- Improper wheel alignment affects the driving behaviour - there is an accident.
- Unusual vibrations or “pulling” of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. Reduce speed and stop! If no tyre damage is evident, seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Spare wheel

A **full spare wheel** corresponds to the wheel mounted on the vehicle with the wheel dimensions, tyre dimension and tyre type.

A **temporary spare wheel** is provided with a warning label on the rim. Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage since it is not intended for permanent use.

Instructions for using a temporary spare wheel
- Do not cover the warning sign.
- Be particularly observant when driving.

Inflate the spare wheel to the maximum prescribed inflation pressure » page 279.

WARNING

A temporary spare wheel can only be used for a short time in the event of a breakdown and with a correspondingly careful driving method.

Spare wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage since it is not intended for permanent use.

The emergency wheel is significantly narrower than the wheels mounted ex-factory.

Instructions for using an emergency wheel
- Do not cover the warning sign.
- Be particularly observant when driving.

WARNING

- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.
- Do not drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- When driving with the temporary spare wheel at full throttle acceleration, avoid sharp braking and fast cornering.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Tyre marking

Explanation of tyre markings - e.g. 195/65 R 15 91 T

195	Tyre width in mm
65	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
15	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	load index
T	Speed symbol

Load index - indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre

load index	88	89	90	91	92	93	94	95
Load (In kg)	560	580	600	615	630	650	670	690

Speed symbol - indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned

speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270	300

! WARNING

Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** and **speed** for the tyres fitted – risk of accident.

Operating in winter conditions

All-year (or “winter”) tyres

All-year or “winter” tyres (indicated by an **M+S** or a mountain peak/snowflake symbol ⛷) to improve the performance of the vehicle in winter conditions.

For the best possible handling, use all-season or “winter” tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

If using “winter” tyres, fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol

All-season or “winter” tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol ⛷) of a lower speed category than stated in the technical vehicle documentation can be used, provided the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for all-season or “winter” tyres can be set in the infotainment system in menu CAR / → → → **Tyres**.

If the vehicle has all-season or “winter” tires of a lower speed category than the specified maximum speed of the vehicle (referring to tyres that have not been delivered by the factory), then a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category provided for the fitted tyres must be fixed in the interior of the vehicle in a constantly visible place in the driver’s field of vision. The warning label (sticker) can be replaced by setting the maximum value of the speed category specified for the mounted tyres in Infotainment (only applies to certain countries). This specification defines the maximum vehicle speed with mounted all-season or “winter”tyres that may not be exceeded.

Snow chains

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.

Snow chains must only be fitted on the front wheels and are applicable only to the following wheel / tyre combinations. ▸

Octavia

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 15[a)]	43 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 15[a)]	47 mm	195/65 R15
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[b)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 13 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 12 mm.

Octavia Scout

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16[a)]	50 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 16[a)]	48 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 16[b)]	48 mm	205/60 R16
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[b)]	48 mm	205/55 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 12 mm.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 9 mm.

Octavia RS

Rim size	Impression depth D	Tyre size
6J x 17[a)]	45 mm	205/50 R17
6J x 17[a)]	48 mm	205/50 R17

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks no larger than 12 mm.

WARNING

Do not use chains on snow- and ice-free routes - the driving behaviour may be affected and there is a risk of a puncture.

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

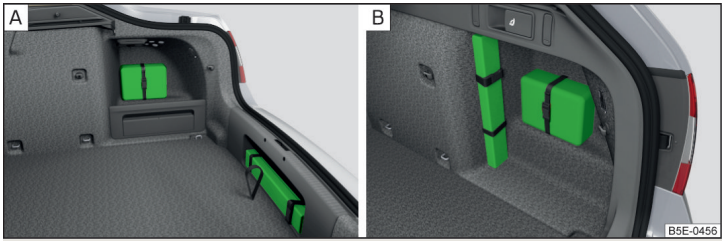

Fig. 325 **Placing of the first-aid kit and the warning triangle: Version 1/version 2**

The following information applies for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Placing the first-aid kit
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 325.

Placing of the warning triangle - variant 1
The warning triangle can be inserted into the recess under the loading edge and secured with the fastener tape» Fig. 325 A. Natural gas vehicles have the warning triangle located under the floor mat in the luggage compartment.

Placing of the warning triangle - variant 2
The first-aid box can be attached to the right-hand side of the boot using a strap» Fig. 325 B.

! WARNING

Properly secure the first aid kit and the warning triangle, or there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Placement of reflective vest

Fig. 326 **Storage compartment for the reflective vest**

The reflective vest can be stored in brackets under the front seats » Fig. 326.

Fire extinguisher

Fig. 327 **Release the fire extinguisher**

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

› To **remove** the fire extinguisher, release the safety catches on the two belts in the direction of arrow » Fig. 327 and remove the fire extinguisher.
› To **secure**, place the fire extinguisher back in the mount and secure with the belts.

The Owner´s Manual is fitted next to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. After this date, the correct function of the device is not guaranteed.

! WARNING

Always properly secure the fire extinguisher, there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Vehicle tool kit

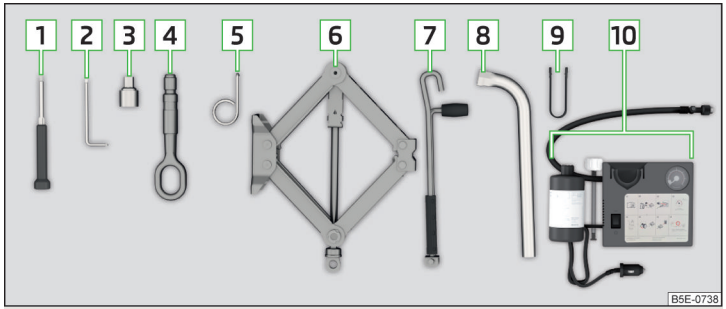

Fig. 328 **Vehicle tool kit**

The box with the tool kit is located in the storage compartment for the spare wheel and may be secured with tape, depending on specification.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, it may not contain all the components listed in the on-board tool kit.

1. Screwdriver
2. Key for removing and installing the tail light
3. Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4. Towing eye
5. Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6. Jack with sign
7. Crank for the jack
8. Wheel wrench
9. Extraction pliers for the wheel bolt caps
10. Breakdown kit

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift other vehicles or loads with this – there is a risk of injury.
- Always stow the tool safely in the box and make sure that it is attached with the belt to the spare wheel - otherwise it could cause injury to the occupants if breaking suddenly or colliding with another vehicle.

CAUTION

Screw the jack back to its starting position prior to putting it back in its box - Otherwise, there is a risk of damage to the box.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

- As far as possible, park the vehicle far away from the traffic flow - find a place with a flat and firm surface.
- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select 1st **gear**.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Position the hazard warning system and the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- **All the occupants should get out of the vehicle**. The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.
- Uncouple any trailers.

Changing a wheel

- Take out the emergency or spare wheel » page 285.
- Remove the full wheel trim » page 285 or caps » page 286.
- Loosen the wheel bolts » page 286 ».

› Jack up the vehicle» page 287 until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench (“alternating crosswise”)» page 286.
› Replace the wheel trim » page 285and the caps » page 286.

When fitting a wheel with unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 278.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily. If the screws are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.

! WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts just a little (about one turn) while the vehicle is not jacked up. Otherwise, the wheel could come off and fall down – there is a risk of injury.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts - risk of accident!

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow the replaced wheel in the well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and secure with a locking screw.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› Check and, if necessary, adjust the tyre pressure on the assembled wheel, and, for vehicle with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 249.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible. The prescribed tightening torque is **120 Nm**.

Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

! WARNING

A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim. Too low tightening torque, the wheels may fall off while driving - risk of an accident. Therefore, drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Removing/stowing the emergency or spare wheel

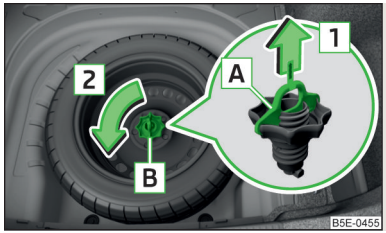

Fig. 329
Take out the wheel

The wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with special bolt B» Fig. 329.

Take out the wheel

› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Remove locking A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 329.
› Unscrew the screw B in direction of arrow 2 and remove the wheel.

Store wheel away

› Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw in nut B in the opposite direction to arrow 2 » Fig. 329.
› Insert locking A in the opposite direction to which arrow 1 is pointing.
› Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Full wheel trim

Removing the trim

› Hang the clamps for removing the full wheel trims at the edge of one of the ventilation openings in the full wheel trim.

› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing the trim

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

The back of the wheel trim supplied by the factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories shows the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt. When using the anti-theft wheel bolt, this is to be fitted in this point » !.

! WARNING

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories. A sufficient air supply may not be able to be guaranteed with other wheel trims to cool the braking system – Otherwise there is a risk of an accident.

! CAUTION

■ If the wheel trim is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel trim.
■ Use only manual pressure and do not hit the full wheel trim – otherwise there is a risk of damaging the trim.

i Note

We recommend that you use hub caps from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts

Fig. 330
Remove the cap

› To **remove the cap**, insert the extraction pliers up to the stop on the cap and pull this in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 330.
› To **install**, insert the cap up to the stop on the wheel bolt.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

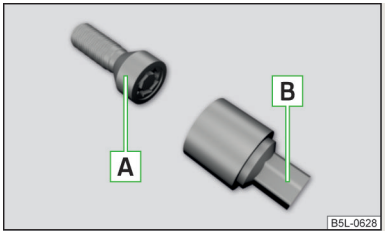

Fig. 331
Anti-theft wheel bolt and attachment

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. The upper section B » Fig. 331 must be used to **loosen/tighten** these.

› Insert the upper section B on the anti-theft wheel bolt A until it stops.
› Insert the wrench on the upper section B until it stops and loosen/tighten the wheel bolt.
› Removing the upper section.

The attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in case of a possible wheel change!

For wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

i Note

We recommend that you retain the label with the code number. A replacement upper section can be acquired from ŠKODA original parts based on this.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts

Fig. 332
Loosening the wheel bolts

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop. Use the associated upper section for the anti-theft wheel bolts » Fig. 331 *on page 286*.
› To **loosen the screws**, hold the wrench end and turn the screw about **one** turn in the direction of arrow » Fig. 332.
› To **tighten the screws**, hold the wrench end and turn the screw against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 332, until it is tight.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing - risk of accident.

Raising the vehicle

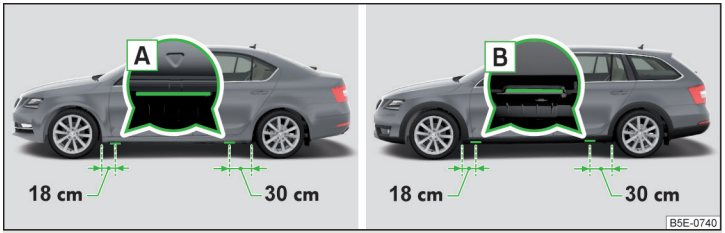

Fig. 333 **Jacking points for the jack: Version 1/version 2**

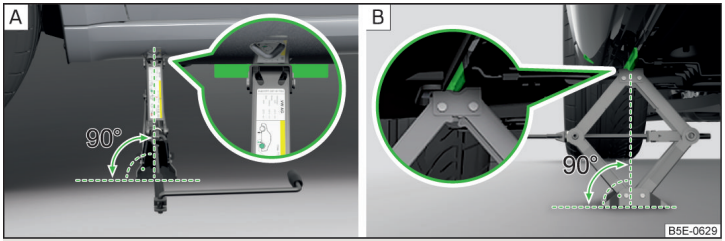

Fig. 334 **Attach lifting jack**

Before the vehicle is raised, the safety instructions must be observed » !.

Use the jack from the tool kit to raise the vehicle. Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.

The runner connectors are located on the lower sill **variant 1** A or. **Variant 2** B » Fig. 333.

› Insert the crank 7 into the mount on the jack 6 » page 284.
› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 334 - A.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar » Fig. 334 - B.
› Raise the vehicle until the wheel is a little off the floor.

WARNING

Observe the following instructions, otherwise there is risk of injury.
- Secure the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip.
  - Provide a wide and stable base under the jack on loose surfaces (e.g. such as gravel).
  - Create a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface (e.g. cobblestones).
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs, under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the bar of the lower beam – otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Puncture repair kit

Introduction

The following information applies to the factory-fitted puncture repair kit.

Use the puncture repair kit to seal tyre punctures with a diameter of up to about 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the puncture repair kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre (e.g. nails etc.).

Do **not use** the puncture repair kit in the following instances.
- The rim is damaged.
- The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the instruction manual of the tyre filling bottle with sealant.
- Tyre punctures of more than 4 mm.
- There is damage to the tyre wall.
- The expiration date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- If the sealant comes into contact with skin, wash the affected area immediately.
- Observe the instructions provided in the puncture repair kit manufacturer's instructions for use.

Description of puncture repair kit

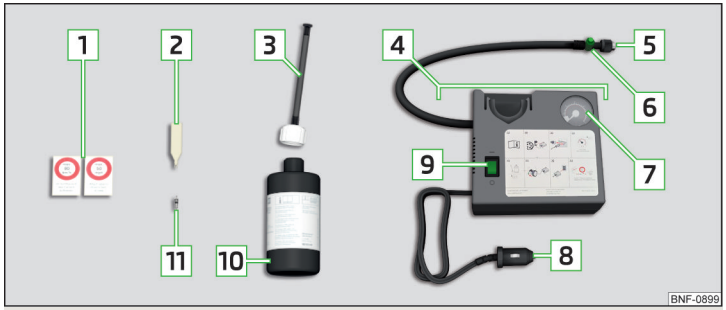

Fig. 335 **Description of puncture repair kit**

Read and observe ! on page 288 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

1 Sticker with speed designation “max. 80 km/h”/“max. 50 mph”
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor delivered with the vehicle)
5 Tyre inflation hose
6 Button for the tyre pressure reduction
7 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
8 12 volt cable connector
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflation bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Preparing to use the puncture repair kit

Read and observe ! on page 288 first.

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before performing a wheel repair the road.
- As far as possible, park the vehicle far away from the traffic flow - find a place with a flat and firm surface.
- Switch off the engine.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select 1st **gear**.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- Position the hazard warning system and the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
- **All the occupants should get out of the vehicle**. The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being repaired.
- Uncouple any trailers.

Sealing and inflating tyres

Read and observe ! on page 288 first.

Sealing

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Insert the valve remover 2 » Fig. 335 *on page 288* on the valve insert, so that the valve insert fits into the slot of the valve remover.
› Unscrew the valve insert and lay it on a clean surface (e.g. cloth, paper etc.).
› Forcefully shake bottle 10 several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw in the valve insert using the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the air compressor tyre inflation hose 5 » Fig. 335 *on page 288* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, set the lever in the neutral position.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector 8 into the 12 volt socket » page 99.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor. Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the instructions of the repair kit manufacturer » !.
› If an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar has not been reached, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 5 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to “distribute” in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 5 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Stick the corresponding sticker 1 on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

- If the tire does not inflate to at least 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Do not drive the vehicle! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor at the latest after the running time according to the instructions of the repair kit manufacturer has elapsed – otherwise there is the risk of compressor damage! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Information for driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 288 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› The tyre cannot be properly sealed with the breakdown kit. STOP **Do not drive the vehicle!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value » page 279.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre. The following guidelines must be observed.

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 271.
- When handling the vehicle battery, the following warnings must be observed » page 276.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an acid level that is too low – risk of explosion and caustic burns!

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

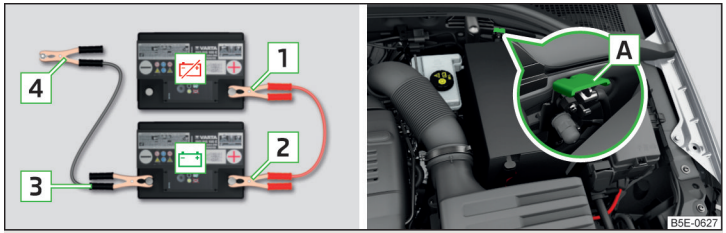

Fig. 336 **Jump-starting: - discharged battery, - power-supplying battery/ground point of the engine for the START-STOP system**

Read and observe ! on page 290 first.

If it is not possible to start the engine due to a discharged vehicle battery, the battery of another vehicle can be used to start the engine. Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.

The **rated voltage** of the two batteries must be 12V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the current-giving battery must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

- Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
- Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the current-giving battery.
- Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the current-giving battery.
- For vehicles **with** the START-STOP system, secure the clamp 4 to the ground point of the engine A » Fig. 336.
- For vehicles **without** the START-STOP system, secure the clamp 4 to a solid metal part that is firmly attached to the engine block or secure to the engine block directly.

Starting engine

- Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
- Start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.
- If the engine does not start within 10 s, then cancel the starting procedure and repeat after half a minute.
- Remove the jump start cables in the **reverse** order as attachment.

WARNING

- Never clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery - danger of explosion.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Route the jumper cables so that they cannot be caught in rotating parts in the engine compartment - danger of injuries and the risk of vehicle damage.

Towing the vehicle

Information about the towing process

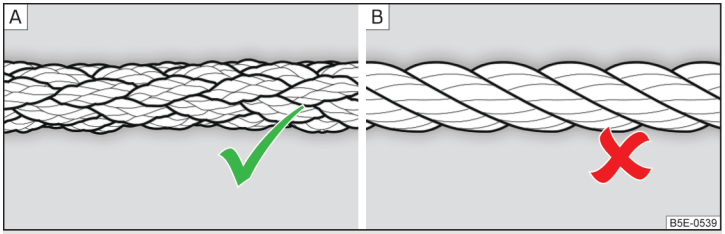

Fig. 337 **Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope**

For towing using a tow rope, use only a braided synthetic fibre rope » Fig. 337 - A » !.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes at the front** » page 291, **towing eyes at the rear** » page 292 or to the **towing device of the trailer device** » page 250.

Conditions for towing.

- ✓ **Cars with automatic gearboxes must not be towed with the rear wheels raised - there is a risk of gearbox damage!**
- ✓ If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- ✓ The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.
- ✓ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Driver of the tow vehicle

- › On vehicles with **manual transmission**, engage gear slowly when starting.
- › On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, accelerate with particular care.
- › Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

Driver of the towed vehicle

- › If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running. Operate the brake booster and power steering only if the engine is running, otherwise the brake pedal must be depressed more strongly and more power has to be directed to the steering.
- › If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
- › Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
- › Always keep the tow rope taut during the towing procedure.

! WARNING

- Wound tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 337- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - risk of accident.
- Ensure tow rope is not twisted - risk of accident.

! CAUTION

- Do not tow-start the engine – risk of damaging the engine! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 290, *Jump-starting*.
- In the case of off-road towing manoeuvres, for both vehicles there is the risk that the fastening parts could be overloaded and damaged.

i Note

We recommend that you use the tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Front towing eye

Fig. 338 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Remove/insert cap

› To **remove**, press on the cap in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove this in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 338.
› To **insert**, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **install**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 338 until the stop» !.
› **Tighten** the towing eye using a wheel wrench or similar object. To do this, insert the wheel wrench through the eye.
› To **remove**, unscrew the towing against the direction of arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be tightened, otherwise the towing eye may break during the towing.

Towing eye rear

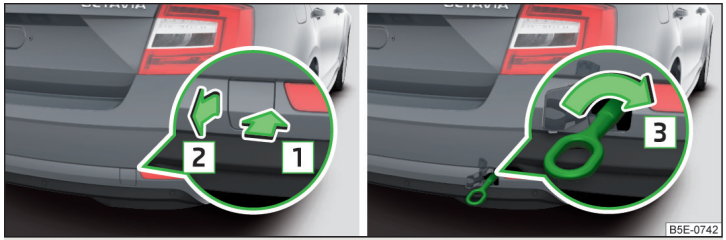

Fig. 339 **Remove cap / install towing eye - Variant 1**

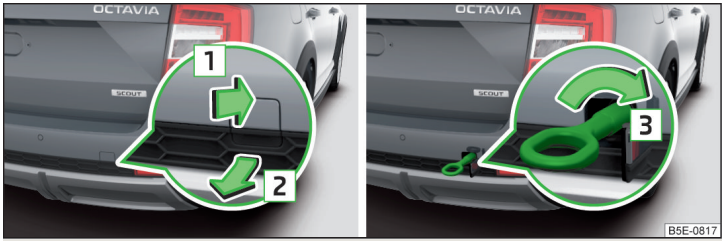

Fig. 340 **Remove cap / install towing eye - Variant 2**

Remove/insert cap

› To **remove**, press down on the cap in the direction of arrow 1 and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 339 or » Fig. 340.
› To **insert**, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **install**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 339» Fig. 340until it clicks into place» !.
› **Tighten** the towing eye using a wheel wrench or similar object. To do this, insert the wheel wrench through the eye.
› To **remove**, unscrew the towing against the direction of arrow 3.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye. Use the detachable ball rod for towing » page 250, *Hitch*.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be tightened, otherwise the towing eye may break during the towing.

Remote control and removable light - changing the battery

Introduction

CAUTION

- The replacement battery/batteries must comply with the original specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.

Note

We recommend having the faulty battery/batteries replaced by a specialist garage.

Key with fold-out key bit

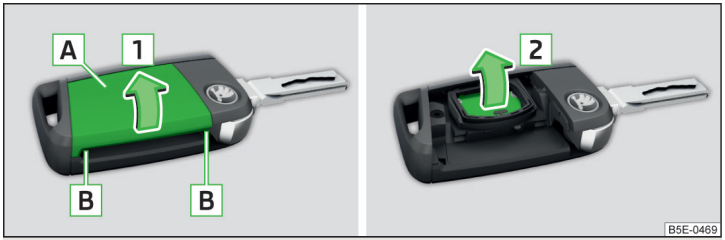

Fig. 341 **Open the cover/remove the battery**

Read and observe ! on page 293 first.

- Fold out the key bit.
- Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 341 with your thumb or by using a flat screwdriver in region B.
- Open the battery in the direction of the arrow 1.
- Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2.
- Hold any button on the key for about 5 s.
- Insert the new battery.
- Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the key after replacing the battery » page 63.

Remote control of the auxiliary heating

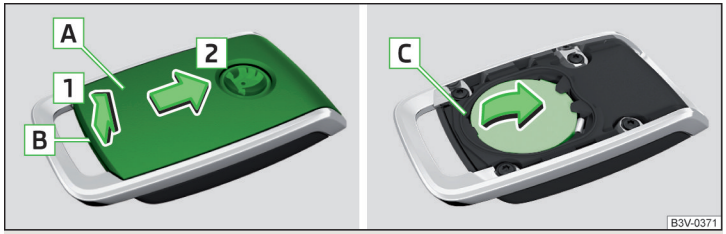

Fig. 342 **Open the cover/remove the battery**

Read and observe ! on page 293 first.

- Use a thin screwdriver to remove the cover A in the area B » Fig. 342.
- Open the cover in the direction of arrow 1 and push out in the direction of arrow 2.
- Use the screwdriver to remove and replace the battery in the area C.
- Insert the battery cover in the opposite direction to arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

Removable light

Fig. 343
Locking clip on the battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 293 first.

- Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the area of the lock clips A » Fig. 343.
- Replace the batteries.
- Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

If an incorrect battery type is used or a non-rechargeable battery, there is a risk of damaging the light and the vehicle's electrical system.

Emergency unlocking / locking of doors

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

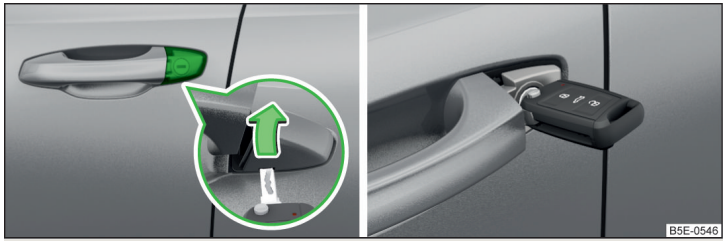

Fig. 344 **Handle on the driver's door: Open lock cover / lock cylinder with key**

In an emergency, the driver's door can be locked/unlocked via the lock cylinder using the key.

- Pull on the door handle and hold.
- Insert the key into the recess on the lower side of the cover and fold up the cover in the direction of arrow » Fig. 344.
- Release the door handle.
- For vehicles with**LHD**,insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing upwards** » Fig. 344 into the lock cylinder and unlock/lock the vehicle.
- For vehicles with **RHD**, insert the key with the fold-out key bit **with the buttons facing downwards** into the lock and unlock/lock the vehicle.
- Pull on the door handle and hold.
- Replace the cover.

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without locking cylinders

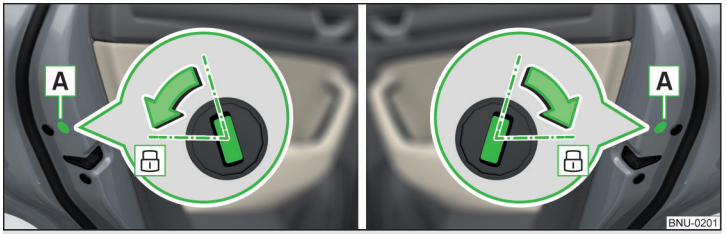

Fig. 345 **Left door/right door:**

- Open the corresponding door.
- In vehicles with the panel A, remove this panel » Fig. 345.
- Insert the key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (sprung position).
- Replace the cover A.

After closing, the door is locked.

Unlock the boot lid

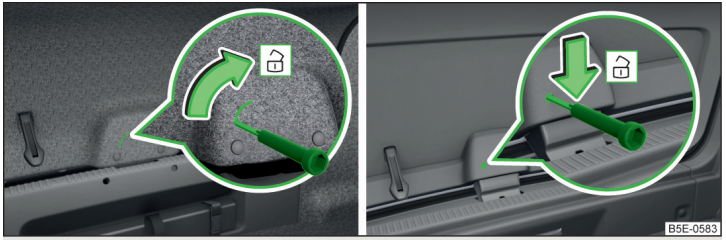

Fig. 346 **Unlatch lid: Version 1/version 2**

The boot lid can be unlocked manually from inside.

- Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the recess or the opening in the trim» Fig. 346 as far as the stop.
- Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

Fig. 347 **Remove the cover/release the selector lever**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Open the stowage compartment in the front centre console.
› Grab hold of the cover A in the area of the arrows and carefully raise it forwards in the direction of the arrow 1 and then backwards » Fig. 347.
› Press on the yellow plastic part in the direction of arrow 2, simultaneously press the lock button in the selector lever handle and put the lever in position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

Fig. 348
Setting the service position for the wiper arms

Fig. 349 **Replace windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 295 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Setting the service position
› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Within 10 seconds, push the lever in the direction of arrow » Fig. 348 and hold for approximately 2 seconds.

Removing the wiper blade
› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 349.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the wiper arm and press the safety catch A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever into the direction of the arrow » Fig. 348.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade

Fig. 350 **Replace the rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 295 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 350.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Hold the wiper arm and press the safety catch A in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Push the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

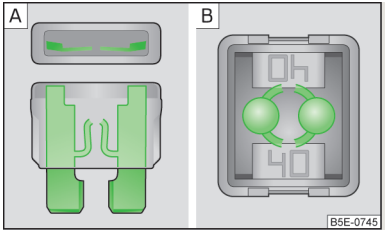

Fig. 351
Blown fuse

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip » Fig. 351 A/B.

! WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 271.

! CAUTION

- Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse blows after a short time, then seek the assistance of a specialist garage.
- Do “not repair” the fuses and do not replace them with stronger ones - it can cause a fire and could damage parts of the electrical system.

i Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse. Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dashboard - LHD

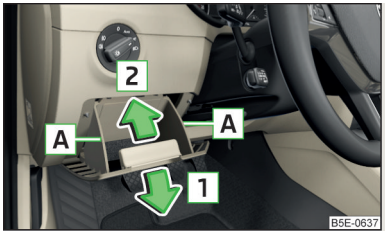

Fig. 352
Storage compartment on the driver's side

Read and observe ! and ! on page 296 first.

The fuse box is located behind the storage compartment on the driver's side.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Open the storage box on the driver's side.
› Hold the stacker laterally in the region A and open by pulling in the direction of arrow 1 (A greater force is required to open) » Fig. 352.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » Fig. 355 *on page 299*.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Close the compartment by pressing in arrow direction 2 until you hear it click.

Fuses in the dashboard - RHD

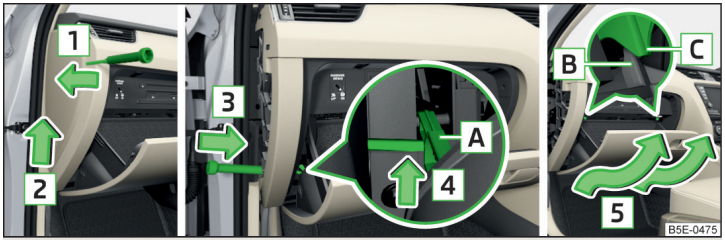

Fig. 353 **Storage compartment on the front passenger side**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 296 first.

The fuse box is located behind the storage compartment on the front passenger side.

Fold down the storage compartment and replace the fuse

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Insert a screwdriver under the side cover » Fig. 353.
› Unlock the cover in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Push the cover out in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Open the storage compartment.
› Insert a screwdriver from the side into the dash panel in the direction of arrow 3.
› Use the screwdriver to unlock the brake rod A of the storage compartment in the direction of arrow 4.
› Remove the storage compartment in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment » Fig. 355 *on page 299*.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.

Fold back the storage compartment

› Move the stop buffer B of the storage compartment behind the brackets C » Fig. 353.
› Push in the storage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow 5.
› Insert the brake rod and lock it against the arrow 4 with a screwdriver.
› Push in the side cover against the direction of the arrow 2.
› Press the side cover fully against the direction of the arrow 1.
› Close the storage compartment.

Fuse assignment in the dashboard

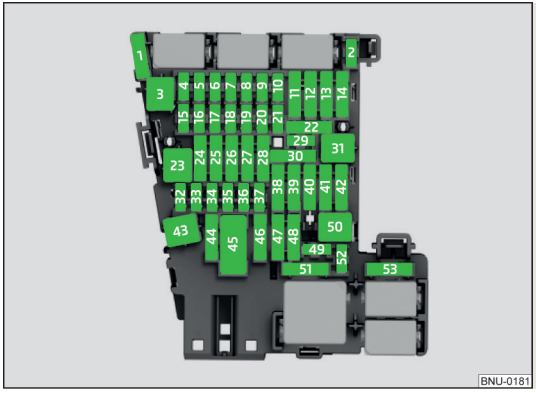

Fig. 354
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 296 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Not assigned
3	Not assigned
4	Heated steering wheel
5	Databus
6	Sensor Alarm
7	Air conditioning, heating, recipient of the wireless remote control for auxiliary heating, selector lever of the automatic transmission, ignition key removal lock (vehicle with automatic transmission)
8	Light switch, rain sensor, diagnosis connection, ambient lighting, control unit for front headlights
9	All-wheel drive
10	Infotainment screen
11	Light - left
12	Infotainment
13	Belt tensioner - driver's side
14	Air blower for air conditioning,heating
15	Electric steering lock
16	Phonebox, Wireless phone charging
17	Instrument cluster, emergency call
18	Reversing camera
19	KESSY system
20	Operating lever underneath the steering wheel
21	Adaptive Shock absorber
22	Tow hitch
23	Panoramic tilt / slide sunroof
24	Light - right
25	Central locking- front left door, window - left, exterior mirrors - Heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface
26	Heated front seats
27	Interior lighting
28	Tow hitch
29	SCR (AdBlue®)
30	Heated rear seats
31	Not assigned
32	Parking aid (Park Assist)
33	Airbag switch for hazard warning lights
34	TCS, ESC, tyre pressure monitoring, air conditioning, reversing light switch, mirror with automatic blackout, START-STOP, heated rear seats, sport sound generator
35	Headlight range adjustment, diagnosis socket, sensor (camera) behind the windscreen, radar sensor
36	Headlight right
37	Headlight left
38	Tow hitch
39	Central - front right door, window lifter - right, right Mirrors - Heating, fold-in function, setting the mirror surface
40	12-Volt power socket

No.	Consumer
41	Belt tensioner - front passenger side
42	Central - rear doors, headlamp washers, washer
43	Music amplifier
44	Tow hitch
45	Electrically adjustable seats
46	230 volt power socket
47	Rear window wiper
48	Assist system for blind spot monitoring
49	Engine starting, clutch pedal switch
50	Opening the boot lid
51	SCR (AdBlue®)
52	USB socket
53	Heated rear window

Fuses in the engine compartment

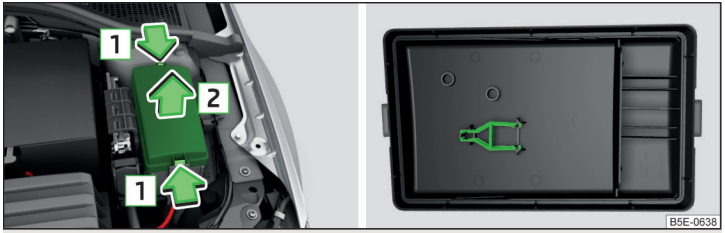

Fig. 355 **Fuse box cover: Removing the cover / Plastic clip for fuses**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 296 first.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Simultaneously press the lock buttons of the cover together in the direction of arrow 1 and remove the cover in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 355.
› Remove the plastic clip under the cover of the fuse box » Fig. 355.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Replace the cover, push the lock buttons of the cover together and lock.

! CAUTION

The cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be used correctly, otherwise water may penetrate into the fuse box – there is a danger of damage to the vehicle!

Fuse assignment in engine compartment

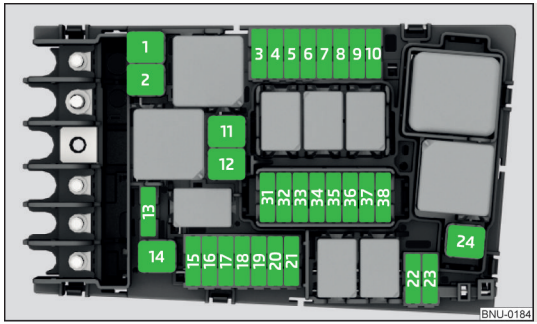

Fig. 356 **Fuses**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 296 first.

No.	Consumer
1	ESC, ABS, handbrake
2	ESC, ABS
3	Engine control system
4	Radiator fan, oil temperature sensor, air mass meter, fuel pressure control valve, electric booster heater, oil pressure valve, exhaust gas recirculation valve, glow plug, SCR (AdBlue®)
5	Ignition coil of CNG relay, fuel injectors, fuel metering valve
6	Brake sensor
7	Coolant pump, radiator shutters, oil pressure valve, gear oil valve, crankcase ventilation heating
8	Lambda probe
9	Ignition, exhaust flap

No.	Consumer
10	Fuel pump, ignition
11	Electrical auxiliary heating
12	Electrical auxiliary heating
13	Windscreen heater - left
14	Windscreen heater - right
15	Horn
16	Ignition, fuel pump, CNG relay
17	ABS, ESC, motor control system, Relay for heated windscreen
18	Databus, battery data module
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Anti-theft alarm
21	Automatic gearbox
22	Engine control system
23	Starter
24	Electrical auxiliary heating
31	Vacuum pump for the brake system
32	Not assigned
33	Oil pump for automatic gearbox
34	Front differential
35	Not assigned
36	Not assigned
37	Aux. heating
38	Not assigned

Bulbs

Introduction

This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs or LED lights must be replaced by a specialist garage.

For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- ▶ Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- ▶ Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 271.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- H7 and H8 bulbs are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.

CAUTION

- Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.
- The cap of the filament bulb must always be seated correctly in the headlight, otherwise this may allow water and debris to enter the headlight - risk of damage to the headlights.

Note

We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle.

Bulb arrangement in the halogen headlights

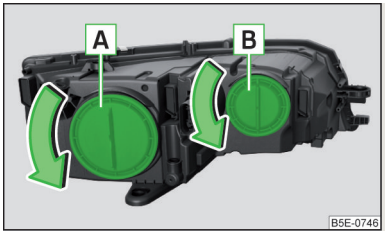

Fig. 357
Left headlight

Read and observe ! and ! on page 300 first.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 357

A Low beam
B Main beam

Changing the bulb for the low beam

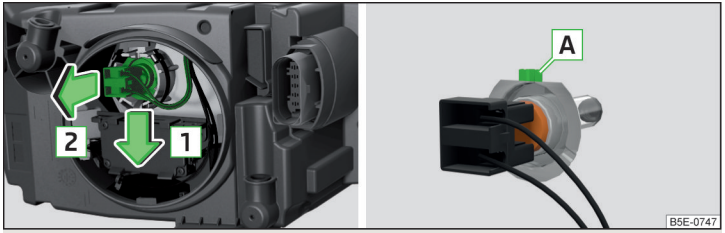

Fig. 358 **Changing the bulb for the low beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 300 first.

› Turn the protective cap A » Fig. 357 *on page 301* in direction of the arrow.
› Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 358.
› Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Plug the connector into the new bulb so that the fixing lug A on the bulb points upwards.
› Insert the connector, with the bulb, into the headlight opposite to the direction of arrow 2 until you feel it lock into place.
› Insert the protective cap A » Fig. 357 *on page 301* and turn it opposite to the direction of the arrow.

Changing the bulb for the main beam

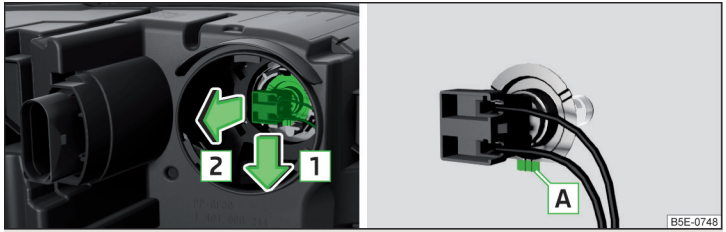

Fig. 359 **Changing the bulb for the main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 300 first.

› Turn the protective cap B » Fig. 357 *on page 301* in direction of the arrow.
› Disconnect the connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 359.
› Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Plug the connector into the new bulb so that the fixing lug A on the bulb points downwards.
› Insert the connector, with the bulb, into the headlight opposite to the direction of arrow 2 until you feel it lock into place.
› Insert the protective cap B » Fig. 357 *on page 301* and turn it opposite to the direction of the arrow.

Change bulb for fog lights switch - Variant 1

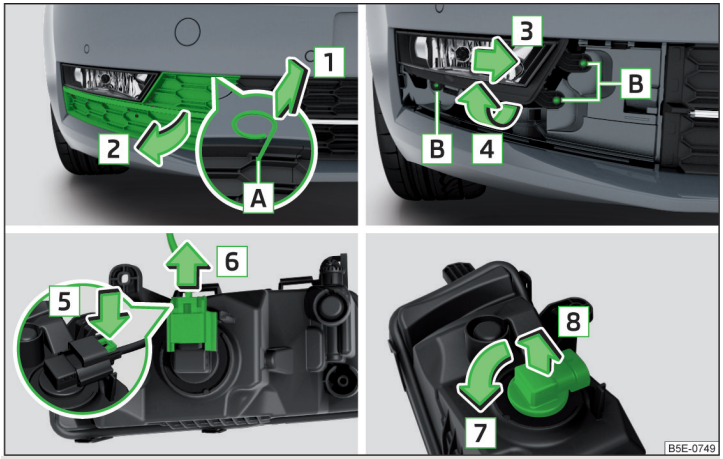

Fig. 360 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - variant 1**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 300 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 360.
› By pulling the hook in direction of arrow 1, remove the protective grille in the direction of arrow 2.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Carefully move the headlights in the direction of arrow 3 and remove in the direction of arrow 4.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Turn the holder with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 7.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 8 .
› Insert a new holder with the bulb in the headlamp and turn it in the direction of arrow 7 as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Insert the fog light opposite to the direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 360, push opposite to the direction of arrow 3 and bolt into place.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Change bulb for fog lights switch - Variant 2

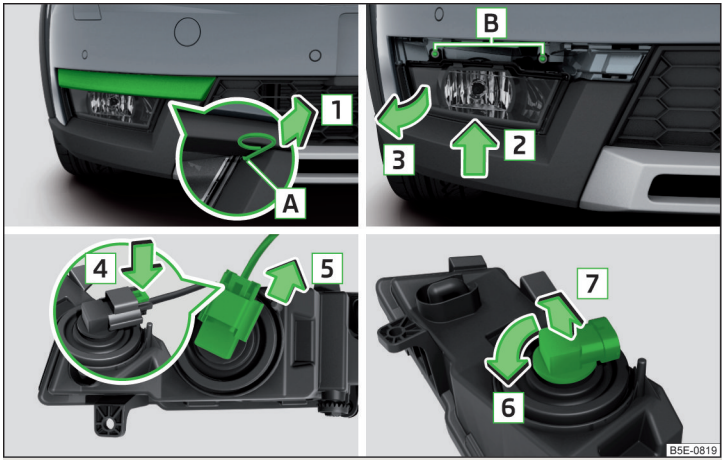

Fig. 361 **Remove the fog lamp / bulb change - variant 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 300 first.

Remove the cover and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A » Fig. 361.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Raise the headlights in the direction of arrow 2 and remove carefully in the direction of arrow 3.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 4.

› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Turn the holder with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Remove the holder with the bulb in the direction of arrow 7 .
› Insert a new holder with the bulb in the headlamp and turn it in the direction of arrow 6 as far as the stop.
› Fit the connector.

Refit the headlight and cover

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 361 and tighten.
› Insert the guard and push it gently until it locks into place.

Removing/installing tail light

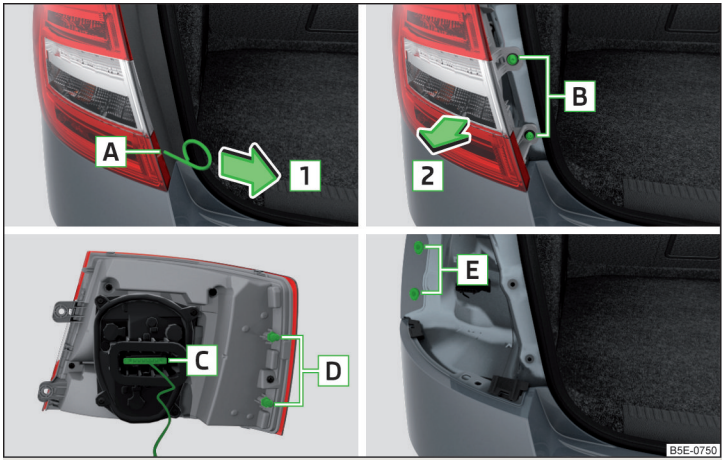

Fig. 362 **Removing lamp**

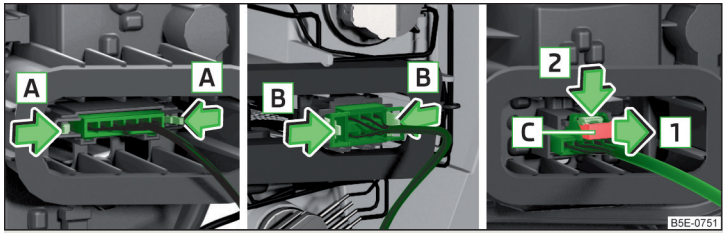

Fig. 363 **Connector removal variants**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 300 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel trims into opening A[1] » Fig. 362.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the key from the tool kit.
› Hold the light and carefully remove in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove connector C .

Remove the plug

The connector type varies according to the vehicle version » Fig. 363.

› For connectors with lateral safety tabs, push these in the direction of arrows A or B and remove the connector carefully.
› For connectors with removable safety tabs C, pull these in the direction of arrow 1, press the safety tabs in the direction of arrow 2 and remove the connector carefully.

Fitting

› Insert the connector into the light and lock it securely.
› With a plug with removable safety tab, secure this in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 363.
› Insert the lamp with pins D » Fig. 362 into the recesses E in the body.
› Carefully push the cover in » !.

[1] The position of the opening may vary depending on the vehicle model.

› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover. The cover must engage securely.
› Shut the boot lid.

CAUTION

■ Ensure that the cable bundle does not become stuck between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – or there is a risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
■ If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
■ Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly - Variant 1

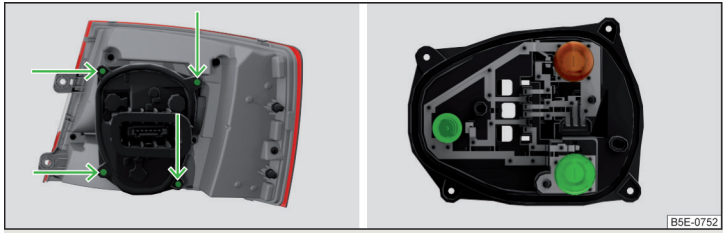

Fig. 364 **Outer part of the lamp/holder with bulbs**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 300 first.

› Unscrew the lamp holder » Fig. 364 with the screwdriver from the car tool kit, and remove the lamp holder from the light assembly.
› Turn the respective light bulb **counter-clockwise** to the stop and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder into the light and screw in tightly.

Replacing the bulbs in the tail lamp assembly - Variant 2

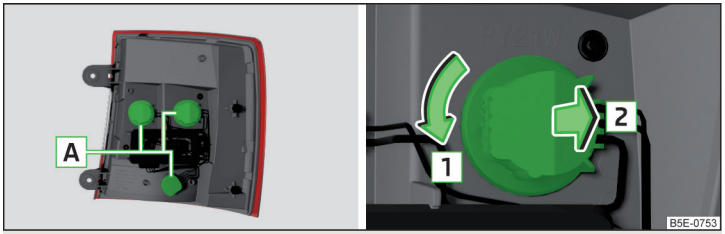

Fig. 365 **Outer part of the lamp/Remove holder with bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 300 first.

› Turn the holder with the bulb A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 365.
› Remove the socket with the bulb from the lamp housing in the direction of arrow 2.
› Push the faulty bulb into the holder, turn in **anti** -clockwise direction up to the stop and remove.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values given have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The values listed are for the basic model without any optional equipment.

Vehicle data

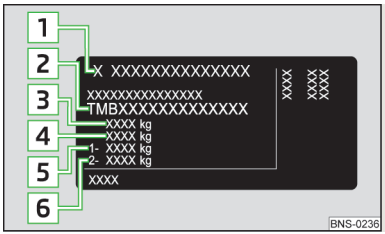

Fig. 366
Type plate

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 366 is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right-hand driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

1 Vehicle manufacturers
2 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
3 Maximum permissible gross weight
4 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
5 Maximum permissible front axle load
6 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

The VIN can also be displayed in the CAR → → **Events** menu.

Engine number
The engine number is embossed in the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

Maximum permissible towed weight
The listed maximum allowable trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight

This specification is only a guide value and corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without further weight-reducing equipment (e.g. spare wheel etc.). This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

Operating weight - Octavia

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1246
	DSG	1268
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1265
	DSG	1289
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1280
	DSG	1295
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1223
	AG	1263
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	DSG (EU5)	1343
	DSG (EU6)	1345
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG	1388
	DSG 4x4	1473
1.6 ltr./85 kW TDI CR	MG	1348
	MG 4x4	1463
	DSG	1363
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1335
	DSG	1355
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1373
	DSG	1408
	DSG 4x4	1501
2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1517

Operating weight - Octavia RS

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	MG	1410
	DSG	1442/1448[a)]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG	1478
	DSG 4x4	1551

[a)] Applies to cars with the EU6BG emission standard.

Warning triangle – Octavia Combi

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	MG	1268
	DSG	1290
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1287
	DSG	1311
1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC	DSG	1389/1528[a)]
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	MG	1302
	DSG	1317
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	MG	1245
	AG	1285
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	DSG (EU5)	1365
	DSG (EU6)	1367
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG	1410
	DSG 4x4	1495
1.6 ltr./85 kW TDI CR	MG	1370
	MG 4x4	1485
	DSG	1385
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	MG	1357
	DSG	1377
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	MG	1395
	DSG	1430
	DSG 4x4	1523
2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1539

[a)] Applies to vehicles without a towing hitch.

Operating weight - Octavia Combi RS

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/180 kW TSI	MG	1432
	DSG	1464[a)]/1470
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	DSG	1500
	DSG 4x4	1573

[a)] Applies to cars with the EU6BG emission standard.

Operating weight - Octavia Combi Scout

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1566
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1594
2.0 ltr./135 kW TDI CR	DSG 4x4	1608

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof load including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 250.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The valid specifications for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, the COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

i Note

- The emission and fuel consumption values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.
- Depending on the range of equipment, style of driving, traffic situation, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values may deviate from the indicated values.

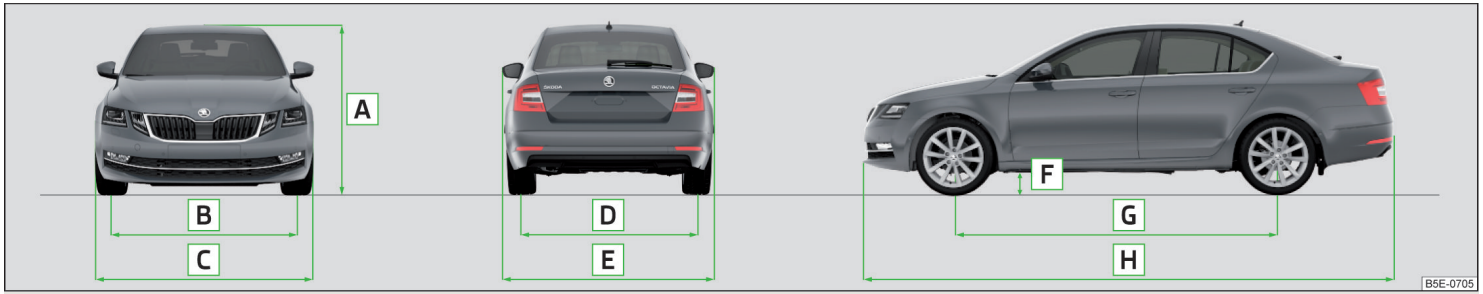

Fig. 367 **Vehicle dimensions**

The vehicle dimensions given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.
The dimensions listed below are for the basic model without any optional equipment.

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 367	Specification		Octavia	Octavia 4x4	Octavia RS
A	Height		1461	1459	1448- 1464[a]
B	Front track » page 310				
C	Width		1814	1814	1814
D	Rear track » page 310				
E	Width including exterior mirror		2017	2017	2017
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	141	138	142
		Vehicles with the 2.0 l./180 kW TSI and 2.0 l./135 kW TDI engine	-	-	-[b]
G	Wheel base	Basic dimension	2686	2680	2680
		Vehicles with the 1.8 l./132 kW TSI and 2.0 l./140 kW TSI engine	2680	-	-
H	Length		4670	4670	4689

[a] Only valid for some countries.
[b] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Dimensions - Octavia estate

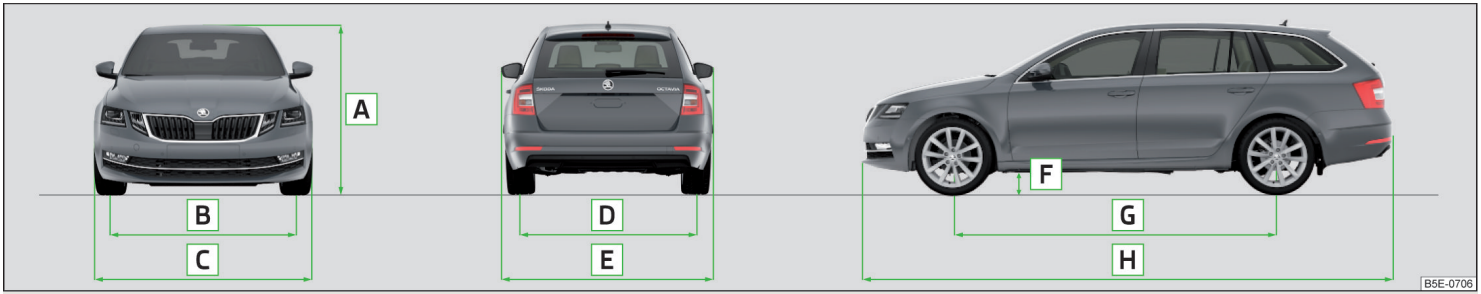

Fig. 368 **Vehicle dimensions**

The vehicle dimensions given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.
The dimensions listed below are for the basic model without any optional equipment.

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 368	Specification		Octavia Estate	OCTAVIA Estate 4x4	Octavia Combi RS	Octavia Combi Scout
A	Height	Basic dimension	1465	1463	1452- 1467[a]	1531
		G-TEC vehicles	–[b]	-	-	-
B	Front track » page 310					
C	Width		1814	1814	1814	1814
D	Rear track » page 310					
E	Width including exterior mirror		2017	2017	2017	2017
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	141	139	142	171
		G-TEC vehicles	–[b]	-	-	-
G	Wheel base	Basic dimension	2686	2680	2680	2680
		G-TEC vehicles	–[b]	-	-	-
H	Length		4667	4667	4689	4687

[a] Only valid for some countries.
[b] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Track gauge front/rear

Engine	Front track	Rear track
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	1549	1540
1.4 l/110 kW TSI	1543	1534
1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC	–[a]	–[a]
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	1543	1534
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	1549	1540
1.8 ltr./132 kW TSI	1543	1542
2.0 l/140 kW TSI	1543- 1538[b]	1542- 1539[b]
2.0 ltr./180 kW TSI	1535	1544
1.6 ltr./85 kW TDI CR	1549	1540- 1548[c]
2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR	1543	1534
2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR	1543- 1538[b]	1534/1539[b]/1542[c]
2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR	1543[c]/1535[d]/1538[b]	1542[c]/1544[d]/1539[b]

[a] The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.
[b] Applies to Octavia Scout vehicles.
[c] Applies to Octavia 4x4/Octavia Combi 4x4 vehicles.
[d] Applies to Octavia RS/Octavia Combi RS vehicles.

Overhang angle

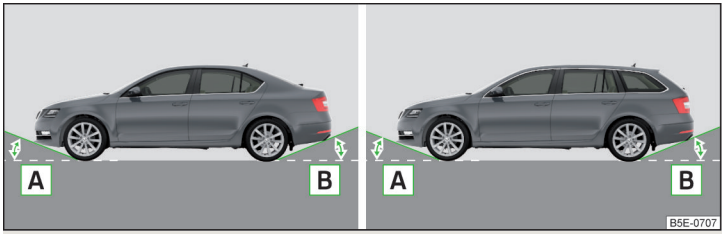

Fig. 369 **Overhang angle: Octavia/Octavia Estate**

Angle » Fig. 369

A Overhang angle, front

B Overhang angle, rear

The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody. The values listed represent the maximum axle load at the front and rear.

Departure angle (°) - Octavia

» Fig. 369	Octavia		Octavia 4x4		Octavia RS	
	A	B	A	B	A	B
Base value	14.0	12.1	14.2	12.4	12.9- 14.1[a)]	12.8- 12.9[a)]
Vehicles with the 1.8 l./132 kW TSI and 2.0 l./140 kW TSI engine	14.1	12.5	-	-	-	-

a) Only valid for some countries.

Departure angle (°) - Octavia Combi

» Fig. 369	Octavia Estate		OCTAVIA Estate 4x4		Octavia Combi RS		Octavia Combi Scout	
	A	B	A	B	A	B	A	B
Base value	14.0	12.4	14.2	12.3	12.8- 14.0[a)]	12.5- 12.7[a)]	16.6	14.5
G-TEC vehicles	-[b)]	-[b)]	-	-	-	-	-	-

a) Only valid for some countries.

b) The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

Introduction

The values given have been determined in accordance with the rules and conditions specified in statutory or technical regulations for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

The exhaust gas standard is specified in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document). The declaration of conformity (the so-called. COC document) can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (only valid for some countries and some models).

1.0 l/85 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	85/5000-5500			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	200/2000-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	3- 999			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	205 (5)	205 (6)	199 (5)	198 (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.0	10.1	10.2	10.3

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	110/5000-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1395			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	222 (6)	223 (6)	215 (5)	214 (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.2	8.2	8.3	8.3

1.5 l/96 kW TSI G-TEC engine

The valueswere not available at the time of going to press.

1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	110/5000-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1498			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	223 (6)	223 (6)	215 (5)	214 (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.3	8.3	8.4	8.4

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	81- 5800			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	155/3800-4000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1598			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**AG**	**MG**	**AG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	195 (5)	195 (5)	189 (5)	188 (5)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.7	12.0	10.9	12.2

1.8 l/132 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	132/5100-6200	
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1250-5000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1798	
Body	**Octavia**	**Octavia Estate**
Transmission	**DSG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	233 (7)	226 (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.7	7.7

2.0 l/140 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	140/4200-6000			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1500-4100			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1984			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	236 (6)	232 (6)	230 (6)	226- 217[a)] (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.3	6.7	7.4	6.8- 7.2[a)]

a) Applies to Octavia Combi Scout vehicles.

2.0 l/180 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	180/5000-6700 (180/5000-6200)[a)]			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	370/1600-4300			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1984			
Body	**Octavia RS**		**Octavia Combi RS**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	250 (6)	250 (6)	246 (6)	244 (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	6.6	6.6	6.7	6.7

a) Applies to cars with the EU6BG emission standard.

1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	85/3250-4000					
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1750-3200					
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1598					
Body	**Octavia**			**Octavia Estate**		
Transmission	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	205 (5)	200 (6)	204 (7)	198 (5)	194 (6)	198 (7)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.2	11.6	10.4	10.4	11.9	10.5

2.0 l/105 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	105/3500-4000			
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	320/1750-3000			
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1968			
Body	**Octavia**		**Octavia Estate**	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	219 (6)	213 (6)	212 (6)	207 (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	9.2	8.8	9.3

2.0 l/110 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	110/3500-4000						
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	340/1750-3000						
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1968						
Body	**Octavia**			**Octavia Estate**			
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**MG**	**DSG**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4 Scout**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	223 (6)	221 (7)	214 (7)	216 (6)	213 (7)	208 (6)	200 (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.5	8.9	8.7	8.6	9.1	8.9	9.4

2.0 l/135 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at 1/min)	135/3500-4000						
Maximum torque (Nm at rpm)	380/1750-3250						
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4- 1968						
Body	**Octavia**			**Octavia Estate**			
Transmission	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG RS**	**DSG 4x4 RS**	**DSG 4x4**	**DSG RS**	**DSG 4x4 RS**	**DSG 4x4 Scout**
Top speed (km/h) with the mentioned gear engaged	230 (7)	233 (7)	228 (7)	222 (7)	226 (7)	218 (6)	215 (6)
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	7.5	8.1	7.6	7.6	8.2	7.7	7.7

Index

A

A2DP/AVRCP 162
Abort route guidance 192
ABS 42, 211
ACC 48
see Automatic Distance Control 234
Accessories 259
Activation of online services 14
Active steering assist (DSR) 212
Adaptive chassis (DCC) 49, 241
Adaptive cruise control
Set/change desired speed 237
Warning light 41
Adaptive Cruise Control 48
automatic stopping and starting 235
Malfunctions 238
Operation 234
Overtaking 238
Radar sensor 210
Setting the distance 237
Special driving conditions 237
Start control 236
Stop/resume control 236
Trailer towing 238
AdBlue 269
Check level 270
indicator light 47
refill 270
Additional keyboard languages 134, 141
additional window 179
Additional windows
Manoeuvre 191
Adjusting
Steering wheel 21
Adjusting seats manually 84
Advice on tyre/wheel usage 278
aim
Favourite 182
Flagged destination 182
Online goals 182
own goal 184
saved destination 182
search 179
Telephone contact 182
vCard 182
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 118
Airbag 25
Adjustments and impairments on the airbag system 260
Deactivation 27
Deployment 25
Warning light 43
Airbag system 25
Air conditioning 114
Air Care 118
Air distribution control 117
Climatronic 115
Manual air conditioning 115
Air conditioning system 122
Air distribution control 117
Air outlet vents 118
Alarm 64
Trailer 258
All season tyres 281
Alphanumeric keyboard 126
Alternative routes 139
Ambient lighting 78
Amundsen
external module 124
Infotainment description 123
Android Auto 172
Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 211
Anti-theft alarm system 64
Trailer 258
Anti-theft wheel bolts 286
APN 135, 162
Apple CarPlay 173
applications
Disclaimer 122
Armrest
Front 87
Rear 88
Ashtray 100
ASR 211
Assembling the
bar ball, Step 1 252
bar ball, Step 2 252
Assist systems 210
AT THE 144
Audio source 149
Auto-Check-Control
Vehicle condition 50
Automatic consumer shutdown 276
Automatic distance control
activate 236
Operational overview 236
Automatic Distance Control 234
Settings in Infotainment 234
Automatic drive
Selector lever 205
Automatic driving light control 74
Automatic gearbox
Disengage selector lever 206
Kickdown 207
Launch control 207
Malfunction 45
Manual shifting on the multifunction steering wheel 206
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 295
Selector lever lock 206

Start and drive 207
Tiptronic 206
Warning light 45
Automatic switch-off of Infotainment 127
Automatic transmission 205
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 119
In infotainment 120
set to 119
Auxiliary heating (heating and ventilation)
Radio remote control 120
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 209

B

ball bar
ready position 251
Ball head
Check fitting 253
Ready position 251
Bass tones 133
Battery
Changing batteries for the removable light 293
Changing in key 293
Replace the battery in the remote control in the auxiliary heating 293
Belts 22
Belt tensioners 24
Blind spot monitoring assistant
Activation / deactivation 220
Bluetooth
A2DP / AVRCP 134
Name 134
on / off 134
Paired external devices 134
Profiles 162
rSAP 160
Set 142
set to 134, 137
Set to 134
Switch on/off 142
Update 132, 135
Updates 142
Visibility 134, 142
Bluetooth Player 150
Bluetooth® update 159
Bolero
external module 124
Infotainment description 123
Bonnet 272
Boot
Stow roof rack 113
Boot lid 65
Automatic locking 65
Open/close 65, 66
See boot lid 65
Brake Assist (HBA) 212
Brake booster 203
Brake fluid 275
Check 275
specification 275
Brake linings
Warning light 44
Brake pads
new 203
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)
Warning light 45
Brakes
Brake booster 203
Brake fluid 275
Braking and stabilisation systems 210
Handbrake 203
Information on braking 203
Run in 207
Warning light 41
Brake system 210
Breakdown call 163
Broadcasting 144
Bulbs
Replacing 300
Button in driver's door
Electric windows 68

C

Call list
Call list 165
CAR 198
Car battery
Automatic consumer shutdown 276
Check condition 277
Cover 277
Disconnecting and reconnecting 277
Replacing 277
Winter operation 277
Car care
Interior 264
Car computer
see multifunction display 52
Care and maintenance 259
Care Connect 17
Cargo element 108
Car park 181
CarStick 168
CD 149
cellphone
Disclaimer 122
Central locking 59
Problems 63
Central locking button 61
Changing
Batteries for the removable light 293
Battery 293
Wheels 284
Windscreen wiper blades 296
Changing a wheel 284

Changing gear
Selector lever 205
Tiptronic 206
Charging a vehicle battery 277
Check
Brake fluid 275
Engine oil 273
Fit ball head properly 253
Oil level 273
Checking
Battery status 277
Coolant 274
Children and safety 29
Child safety lock 63
Child seat 29
Classification 31
Installation location 31, 32
ISOFIX 32
on the front passenger seat 30, 31
TOP TETHER 33
Cigarette lighter 100
Cleaning the vehicle
Interior 264
Outside 262
Washing 261
Climatronic 114
air distribution control 117
Automatic operation 117
Operate in Infotainment 116
Operating elements 115
Clock
Change display 127
Clothes hook 96
CNG 268
Gas leaks 268
In an accident 268
Natural gas gauge 37
Refuel 267
Regular checks 268
Sticker 268
tank inspection 49
Warning light 45
Cockpit 35
Lighting 77
Columbus
external module 124
infotainment Description 122
Comfort flashing 73
COMING HOME 76
compartments 91
Compatible sources
DVD video 155
Pictures 154
Component protection 260
Compressed natural gas
see CNG 268
Computer
see multifunction display 52
Conditions for pairing 159
Conference call 166
Configuration wizard 129
Connect external device to the Infotainment hotspot 170
Connect Infotainment to the hotspot of the external device 170
Convenience operation
Tilting / sliding sunroof 71
Coolant 274
Checking 274
Refilling 274
Temperature display 36
Warning light 46
CORNER 76
Correct routing of seat belt 22
Correct seating position 19, 21
Crew Protect Assist 243
Cruise control
activate 231
lever 231
Cruise Control System 231
Cup holders 93

D

DAB 144
additional information 144
Radio Text and images presentation 144
Set 136, 143
DAB Slideshow 144
Data connection
Amundsen 168
CarStick 168
Internet 168
rSAP 169
Data Connection
Columbus 168
SIM card 169
Data roaming 135
Data transfer of external devices 129
Date 133, 141
DAY LIGHT
see Daytime running lights 73
Daytime running lights 73
DCC 49, 241
De-icing the windscreen and rear window 79
Deactivation
Airbag 27
default settings 198
Delayed locking of the boot lid
See boot lid 65
Delete destination 189
Demo mode 140, 190
Destination
Enter destination using the address 180
enter in map 181

Favourite 189
final destinations 182
Home address 183
Image with GPS 185
Map point 181
Memory 189
Types of destination search/destination entry 179
Destination details 189
Destination management
Destination details 189
Favourite 189
Storage 189
Diesel 267
Diesel fuel 267
Digital clock 50
Digital instrument cluster 38
display 38
Map 188
operation 39
pre-selection options 39
Setting the map display 139
Turn the map display on / off 178
Digital service schedule 56
Dipped beam 72
Dipstick 273
Directive 2014/53/EU 9
Disclaimer
applications 122
external devices 122
Mobile phones 122
display
Petrol / diesel storage 37
Display
Coolant temperature 36
Gear changes 50
In the instrument cluster 49
Natural gas / petrol gauge 37
Display information on sporty driving in Infotainment 51
Display of a low temperature 48
Display of the instrument cluster
Menus in the display of the instrument cluster 54
Display POIs in the map 181
Display when the light is switched off
indicator light 47
Distance warning 239
Diverting calls 137
Door
Child safety lock 63
Emergency locking 294
Emergency locking of the driver's door 294
Opening/ Closing 63
Door alarm 49
double hooks 104
Drive
Driving through water 209
DriveGreen 208
Driver information system 49
Driving
Emissions 307
Fuel consumption 307
Maximum speed 312
through water 209
Driving mode 241
Adaptive chassis (DCC) 241
Comfort 242
Eco 241
Individual 242
Individual mode settings 243
Mode selection and Infotainment display 243
Normal 242
Offroad 242
Sports 242
Driving Mode Selection 241
DSR 212
DVD 149
DVD-Video
Select video source 154
DVD video
Compatible sources 155
Supported file formats 155
Dynamic Road Sign Display
Additional display 248
Operation 247
Dynamic route 197

E

Economical driving 208
Economy mode
Warning light 48
Edit route 192
EDR 8
EDS 212
Electrical boot lid
set the top position of the lid 66
Electrical power windows 69
Electric boot lid
Force limiter 65
Manual operation 65
Open/close 66
Electric power windows 67
Malfunctions 70
Electric tailgate
Malfunctions 67
Electric Windows
Button in driver's door' 68
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL, XDS) 212
Electronic immobiliser 199
Elevation 176

emergency
Jump-starting 290
Starting the engine / stopping at the push of a button 201
Emergency
Changing a wheel 284
Hazard warning light system 76
Jump-starting 290
Lever-release 295
Starting the engine / stopping the push of a button 200
Towing the using the tow hitch 292
Towing the vehicle 291
Tyre repair 287
Unlocking/locking the door 294
Unlocking / locking the door 294
Emergency call 16, 163
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 283
First aid kit 283
Jack 284
Reflective vest 283
Vehicle tool kit 284
Warning triangle 283
Emergency spare
Removing/stowing 285
Emission control system 42
Emissions 307
Engine
Information messages 46
Run in 207
Engine compartment 271
Brake fluid 275
Coolant 274
Engine oil 273
Overview 272
Vehicle battery 276
Windscreen washer fluid 273
Engine drag torque control (MSR) 211
Engine number 305
Engine oil 273
Check 273
Oil changing 273
Refilling 273
Specification 273
Warning light 46
Engine revolutions counter 36
Enter destination 180, 181
EPC 43
equalizer 133
ESC
ESC Sport 211
Operation 211
Event Data Recorder 8
External device data transfer 134, 141
External devices
Disclaimer 122
External module 124
CD / DVD 149
SD card 150
SIM card 162
Video DVD 154

F

Factory settings 134, **142**
Familiarize yourself with the vehicle 2
Fastening elements 103
Fatigue detection
Fatigue detection system 248
Fatigue detection system 248
Favourite 182, 189
file formats
media 151
Requirements and Restrictions 151
File formats
DVD video 155
Pictures 154
Find
Car park 181
Petrol station 181
Restaurant 181
Finish route guidance 191
Fire extinguisher 283
First aid kit 283
Flagged destination 182
Flashing 73
Floor covering in the luggage compartment 105
Flooring in the luggage compartment 105
Floor mats 205
See Floor mats 205
FM 144
Set 136, 142
Fog lights 75
Warning light 45
Fog lights/rear fog light 75
Foils 262
Folding table 96
Force limiter
Electric boot lid 65
Sliding/tilting roof 70
Window 69
Front assist
Warning light 48
Front Assist 239
Disable/enable 241
Distance warning 239
Malfunctions 241
Operation 239
Pedestrian recognition 240
Radar sensor 210
Settings in Infotainment 239
Warning and automatic braking 240
Front head restraints
Adjust height 88
Front seats 84

fuel
Gasoline / Diesel gauge 37
Fuel 265
Diesel 267
Natural gas / petrol gauge 37
refer to Fuel 265
Refuel CNG 267
Refuelling 265
Unleaded petrol 266
Warning light 44
Fuel consumption 307
Fuel filter 48
Fuel options 140
Fuel reserve
Petrol/diesel 44
Functional surfaces 125
Fuses 296
in the engine compartment 299
in the switchboard 297, 298
Plastic clip 299

G

Gearbox
Information messages 45
Gear change
Gear recommendation 50
Information on the selected gear 50
Gear changing
lever 204
Genuine parts 259
Glasses storage box 95
GPS 176
Graphical driving recommendations 191

H

Handbrake 203
Warning light 40
hand gestures 127
Hazard warning light system 76
HBA 212
Headrests 88
Heating 114, 115
Air distribution control 117
Mirrors 83
Seats 89
Steering wheel 90
Windscreen and rear window 79
High-beam assistant 47
High beam
Light Assist 75
Hill Descent Assist 214
Hill Start Assist 212
hitch 255
Hitch 250
Home address 139, 183
HOME button 129
HOME main screen 129
Hook 105
Horn 35
Hotspot
Connect 170
Set 170

I

I-PAD holder 101
Ignition lock 200
Images
Display 137
main menu 153
Operation 153
safe removal of the data source 134
Select Image Source 153
Set to 137
Image viewer 153
Immobiliser 199
import
Destinations (online) 185
Objectives (vCard) 184
POI categories 184
POI categories (online) 177, 185
Routes (online) 193
Import contacts 137
Inertia reels 24
Information about the towing process 291
Information call 163
Information system 49
Gear recommendation 50
Menus in the display of the instrument cluster 54
Multifunction display 52
Service interval display 56
infotainment Description
Columbus 122
Infotainment description
Amundsen 123
Bolero 123
Swing 124
Infotainment gesture control 127
Infotainment language 134, 141
Infotainment menus
Grid display 128
Horizontal display 128
Infotainment Online 18
Infotainment operation 125
Infotainment screen 125
Infotainment operation using an application in the external device 129
Infotainment Overview 122
Infotainment restart 127
Infotainment screen 133, 141
Areas 125
Important information 124
keyboard 126

Maintenance 124
Operation 125
Input screen
Language characters 141
Input screen with keyboard 126
Instrument cluster 36
digital 38
Vehicle condition 50
Warning lights 39
interior light 78
Interior lights 77
Ambient lighting 78
Interior monitor 64
Intermediate target 189
Internet 168
Amundsen 168
CarStick 168
Columbus 168
rSAP 169
SIM card 169
ISOFIX 32

J

Jack 284
- fit 287
Journey 53
Jukebox 151
Jump-starting 290

K

KESSY
deactivating 61
Starting engine / Stopping 200
Switching the ignition on/off 200
Unlocking / locking 61
key
Starting engine / Stopping 200
Key
Changing battery 293
Lock 60
Switching the ignition on/off 200
Unlock 60
keyboard 126
key CAR 198

L

L-band 136
Lamp failure 47
Lamps
Warning light 47
Lane Assist 44, 244
Malfunctions 246
Settings in Infotainment 245
Lane Departure Warning
Activation / deactivation 246
Operation 245
Lane recommendation 191
Language characters 134
Laptimer
Display of the instrument cluster 56
infotainment 51
Last destinations 182
Latitude 176
LEAVING HOME 76
LED headlights 74
lever
ACC 236
Cruise control 231
Speed limiter with ACC 233
Speed limiter with GRA 233
Lever
Operation of the information system 52
Turn signal/main beam 73
Windscreen wipers 81
Liability for defects 6
Light 72
Cockpit 77
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 76
Daytime running lights 73
Flash 73
Fog lights/rear fog light 75
Function CORNER 76
Hazard warning light system 76
Headlight cleaning system 82
LED headlights 74
Light Assist 75
Parking light 76
Replacing bulbs 300
Turn signal/main beam 73
Light Assist 75
See Light Assist 75
Lighting
Ambient lighting 78
Entry space 77
Interior lighting 77
Luggage compartment 102
Lights
Automatic driving light control 74
Dipped beam 72
Driving abroad 77
Headlight range control 72
Parking lights 72
Switching on and off 72
Warning lights 39
List
of available stations 145
of telephone contacts 164
With folder / track list 148
List of available hotspots 170
List of paired external devices 162
List of traffic reports 196
Load 307
Location Services 16

Lock
Individual settings 62
KESSY 61
Key 60
Locking
Central locking button 61
in case of emergency 294
Remote control 60
Lock steering lock 199
Long cargo channel 97
Longitude 176
Luggage compartment 102
Compartment with cargo element 108
Cover 106
Fastening elements 103
Fastening the flooring 105
Fixing nets 103
Floor covering on both sides 105
foldable hook 105
Folding double hooks 104
Lighting 102
Net on the luggage compartment cover 106
Net partition 112
Removable light 109
Roll-up cover 107
Storage compartments under the floor covering 108
unlock manually 294
Unlock the boot lid 294
Variable loading floor 110
Luggage compartment cover 106
Roll-up cover 107
Luggage storage
Multi-function pocket 109

M

Main beam 73
Warning light 45
main menu
Android car 173
Apple carplay 174
Images 153
MirrorLink® 174
radio 144
Main menu
Media 147
Media Command 156
Navigation 178
SmartLink 172
SMS 166
Video DVD 154
Waypoint mode 194
WLAN 169
Make up mirror 79
Manage favourites 143
Manage Favourites 137
Manage memory 139
Management of online services 15
Management of online services ŠKODA Connect 142
Management of ŠKODA Connect Online Services 135
Managing paired devices 162
Managing saved routes 193
Manoeuvre
Graphical driving recommendations 191
Navigation announcements 191
Manual air conditioning
Air distribution control 117
Controls 115
Manual gear changing
See Gear changing 204
Map
Automatic scale 186
Display 178
Display options 186
Display options in the split screen 188
Display POIs 181
Fast Map 186
in the digital instrument cluster 188
Lane recommendations 139
Main menu 178
Manual scale 186
Map alignment 187
Operation 178
POI display 139
Road Signs 188
Traffic sign display 139
|Alignment 187
Maximum speed 312
MCB 212
Mechanical window lifter 67
open/close 68
media
Compatible sources 151
file formats 151
Requirements and Restrictions 151
serve 147
USB 93, 150
Media
Audio source 149
Bluetooth Audio 150
Browser 148
CD / DVD 149
Jukebox 151
List 148
Main menu 147
Multimedia database 148
Playback control 147
safe removal of the data source 134
Safe removal of the data source 141
SD card 150
Setting 137
Set to 143
Voice control 130
WLAN 151

Media Command
Control 157
Main menu 156
Supported formats 157
Memory 54
Memory Function for the seat 85
Menus in the display of the instrument cluster 54
Apple CarPlay 55
audio menu item 55
Main menu 54
navigation menu item 55
Operation 52
phone Menu item 55
wizard menu item 55
Mirror 79, 82
MirrorLink® 174
MODE button
See driving mode 241
Modes of the automatic transmission 205
Modifications and technical alterations 259
Most common routes 191
MSR 211
Multi-function pocket 109
Multicollision brake (MCB) 212
Multifunctional steering wheel 52
Multifunction display
Functions 52
Information Overview 52
Memory 54
Multifunction pocket 104
multimedia
see media 147
Multimedia database 148
Multimedia holder 94
Mute 128
MyŠKODA App application 11

N

Natural gas operation
Warning light 45
Natural gas tank test 49
navigation
additional window 179
Contacts 182
destination search 179
Favourites 182
Map orientation 187
route list 193
Start the route guidance 190
target import 184
target memory 182
Update navigation data online 177
Working with the navigation 176
Navigation
Abort route guidance 192
Advanced settings 140
Alternative routes 139
Demo mode 140, 190
Destination address 180
Destination details 189
Destination display 186
Destination in map 181
Destination presentation in the split screen 188
Dynamic route 139
Edit route 192
Final destinations 182
Finish route guidance 191
Foreword 176
Fuel options 140
GPS 176
Graphical driving recommendations 191
Home address 183
Image with GPS 185
Imported destinations 139
Intermediate target 189
Main menu 178
Manage memory 139
Map 139
Map alignment 187
Map display in the digital instrument cluster 188
Map display options 186
Map scale 186
Most common routes 191
Navigation announcements 140, 191
Navigation data 177
Navigation data update 177
Options for map display in the split screen 188
Preferred type of route 139
Route 189
Route calculation 190
Route change 193
Route details 192
Route display 186
Route display in the split screen 188
Route guidance 189
Route information 192
Route options 139
Set to 139
Status line 140
Top speeds 140
Traffic obstruction 197
Trailer towing 190
Transit point 193
Types of destination search/destination entry 179
Update the navigation data 140
Version information 140
Voice control 130
Waypoint mode 194
Navigation announcements 140, 191
navigation data 177
Navigation data 177
Navigation data update 177
Net partition 112
Nets 103, 106

Network
Data connection 135
Data roaming 135
setting 135
set to 137
Values of the downloaded data 135
New route 193
NGVs
see CNG 268
Notes 12

O

Off-road mode
indicator light 48
Offroad 213
Hill Descent Assist 214
Offroad mode
See Offroad 213
oil
see Engine oil 273
Oil changing
Engine oil 273
On-board computer
see multifunction display 52
On-line
destination search 179
Detail of the traffic report 197
Import POI categories 177, 185
route import 193
target import 182, 185
Update navigation data 177
Online
Destinationdetails 189
Find car park 181
Find petrol station 181
List of traffic reports 196
Navigation data update 177
Online goals 182
Online services
Deleting the user 14
Electronic Owner's Manual 14
Instruction video 14
private mode 15
service management 15
Switching user 14
Switch online services in the service workshop off/on 15
Switch online services on/off in infotainment 15
ŠKODA Connect Portal website 13
Online Services 13
Activation in Infotainment 14
Care Connect 17
Infotainment Online 18
Location Services 16
proactive service 17
Remote access to the vehicle 17
Service package 13
Status Symbols of Online Services 16
ŠKODA Connect website 13
Online services ŠKODA Connect
enable service 142
Opening/closing
contactless boot lid 67
opening/closing contactless boot lid 67
Operating the Infotainment menus 126
Operating weight 305
Operation
Images 153
Telephone 158
Original accessories 259
Overhang angle 311
Overview
Cockpit 35
Engine compartment 272
Fuses 296
Warning lights 39
Own POI categories 184, 185

P

Pairing process 159
Park
Rear traffic alert 218
Park assist
Parking 227
Park Assist 224
Automatic brake assist 228
Leaving a parallel parking space 228
Malfunctions 228
Operation 225
Parking 228
Search for parking space 226
Switch to park mode 226
Park assistant
Activation/deactivation 220
Parking 204
Park Assist 224
Parking aid 215
Rear View Camera 221
Parking aid 215
Automatic emergency braking 217
Automatic system activation when moving forward 217
Operation 215
Settings in Infotainment 215
Parking assistance
Activation / deactivation 217
Parking lights 72
Parking sensors
Display Infotainment screen 216
Parking the vehicle
see Parking 204
Parking ticket holder 91
ParkPilot 215
Particulate Filter 47
Part replacement 259

Passive safety
Before setting off 19
Driving safety 19
Passive Safety 19
Pedals 205
Floor mats 205
Personalisation
Configuration wizard 129
Personalization 57
Operating principle 57
Overview of some personalized functions 58
Set 58
Petrol 266
Petrol station 181
Petrol station logo 139
phone
connect to the infotainment 159
couple 159
Phone
Adjust text messages 137
Bluetooth® update 159
Clear calls 137
Compatibility 159
Diverting calls 137
Import contacts 137
Introductory information 158
Manage Favourites 137
Phone call 165
Premium 137
rSAP 160
Settings call 137
set to 137
User profile 137
Voice control 130
Phonebox 92
Phone call 165
Phone compatibility 159
Phone Premium
SIM card 162
Pictures
Compatible sources 154
File formats 154
Requirements and restrictions 154
Supported file formats 154
Pin code
set to 137
Playback
Media 147
Video DVD 154
Pockets 96
Pockets in the luggage compartment 104
POI 184, **185**
POIs 181
Pop-up window
Map 188
Power limit
Tilt / slide sunroof 70
Power steering 41
Power windows
Button in the front passenger door 69
Button in the rear doors 69
Practical features
Ashtray 100
Cigarette lighter 100
Glasses storage box 95
Parking ticket holder 91
Pockets 96
Reflective vest 283
Seat backrest with long cargo channel 97
Storage compartment 91
Storage compartment for umbrella 96
Waste container 94
Preferred contacts 164
Preheating unit 43
Principles of Infotainment operation 125
Private mode 15
Proactive passenger protection 243
Proactive passenger protection warning light 43
Proactive service 17
Puncture repair kit 287

R

Rack 113
radio
Broadcasting 144
main menu 144
Radio stations Logo 145, 146
scan 144
serve 144
Radio
L-band 136
List of available stations 145
Set 136, 142
Traffic program (TP) 146
Voice control 130
Radio equipment
Information on Directive 2014/53/EU 9
Radio remote control
Auxiliary heating (heating and ventilation) 120
Radio station 145
Preset buttons 145
Radio station logos 145, 146
Update 135
radio stations
Select channels and search 144
Raising the vehicle 287
Rear fog light 75
Warning light 42
Rear headrests
Adjusting the height 88
Removing/inserting 89
Rear seats 87
Rear traffic alert 218

Rear Traffic Alert
Malfunctions 220
Operation 219
Rear View Camera 221
Rear view mirror 82
Rear window - heating 79
Record waypoints 194
Refill
Windscreen washer fluid 273
refilling
AdBlue 269
Refilling
Coolant 274
Engine oil 273
Reflective vest 283
Refuelling 265
Fuel 265
Register online services
settings 135, 142
Registration of online services
Electronic Owner's Manual 14
Instruction video 14
Regulation
Headlight beam 72
Remote access to the vehicle 17
Remote control
Changing battery 293
Synchronisation process 63
Unlocking/locking 60
Remote transfer of SIM data 160
Removable light 109
Changing batteries 293
Removable through-loading bag 98
Removing the
bar ball, Step 1 253
bar ball, Step 2 254
Repairs and technical alterations 259
Replace
Battery 293
Replacing
Bulbs 300
Fuses 296
Windscreen wiper blades 295
Reset counter for distance driven (trip) 49
Restaurant 181
Rims 278
Road Signs
infotainment display 188
Roller blind
see Luggage compartment cover 107
Roof
Weight 113
Roof rack 113
route
new route 193
Online Route Import 193
route list 193
Route 189
Store route 192
Route calculation 190
Trailer towing 190
Route details 192
Route information 192
route list 193
Route options 139
rSAP 160
Data connection 169
Run-in
Engine 207
Running in
Brake pads 203
Tyres 278

S

SafeLock 62
Safe removal of the data source 134, 141
Safety 19
Airbag 25
Child safety 29
Child seats 29
Correct seating position 19
Headrests 88
ISOFIX 32
TOP TETHER 33
SAFE, SAFELOCK
See SafeLock 62
Save radio
Save channel 145
Saving electrical energy 208
Saving fuel 208
Scraper 263
Screen
see Infotainment screen 124
Screen display 125
SD card 150
Safe removal 141
search
aim 179
Online goals 179
Search
Types of destination search/destination entry 179
Seat belt
height adjustment 22
Warning light 41, 45
Seat belts 22
Belt tensioners 24
fastening and unfastening 23
Inertia reels 24
Seat electrical adjustment 85
Seats
Electrical adjustment 85
Folding front passenger seat 86

Front 84
Front armrest 87
Headrests 88
Heating 89
Manually adjusting 84
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat 85
Rear 87
Rear armrest 88
Rear seat backrests 87
Setting 84
Storing in memory of remote control key 86
see Instrument cluster
see Instrument cluster 36
Selector lever 205
Selector lever control 205
Selector lever lock 45
service
media 147
radio 144
Service 259
Service interval display 56
Warning light 49
Service interval 56
Service interval display 56
Service intervals 56
Service schedule 56
Setting
Headrests 88
Mirror 82, 83
Positions of the variable loading floor 110
Seat belt height 22
Seats 84
Time 50
settings
Bass tones 133
equalizer 133
Images 137
infotainment 133, 141
Infotainment language 134, 141
Infotainment screen 133, 141
Reset to factory settings 198
Software Update 132
sound 133
sound system 133
surround 133
system information 132
ŠKODA Connect 142
vehicle 198
Video DVD 137
Settings
Additional keyboard languages 134, 141
Advanced settings 140
APN 135, 162
Bluetooth 134, 137, 142
Codecs 137
Configuration wizard 129
DAB 136, 143
Data connection 135
External device data transfer 134, 141
FM 136, 142
Fuel options 140
Information regarding the version of the navigation data 140
Manage favourites 164
Manage memory 139
Map 139
Media 137, 143
Navigation 139
Navigation announcements 140
Network 135
Phone 137
Pin code 137
Radio 136, 142
Reset to factory settings 134
Restore factory settings 142
Route options 139
SmartLink+ 138, 143
Software updates 142
Sound 141
System information 135, 142
ŠKODA Connect 135
Telephone 143
Time and date 133, 141
Top speeds 140
Units 134, 141
Update software 135
User profile 164
Voice control 134
Volume 128
WLAN 135
Settings Call
Clear calls SettingsText messages 137
Set to
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 119
SIM card
Change PIN code 162
Data Connection 169
Insert 162
PIN code 162
Remove 162
Sliding/tilting roof
Activate operation 71
Activating operation of the sunshade 72
SmartLink 171
Android Auto 172
Apple CarPlay 173
Introduction to the subject 171
Main menu 172
MirrorLink® 174
SmartLink+
Set 138, 143
ŠKODA OneApp application 175

SMS
Main menu 166
New message 167
Received message 167
Snow chains 281
sockets
12-volt power socket in the luggage compartment 99
12-volt socket in the interior 99
Sockets
230 V 99
Software Update 132, 135
Software updates 142
SOS button 16
sound 133
Sound 141
sound system 133
Spare wheel 280
Removing/stowing 285
Speed limitations 191
speed limiter
activate 233
lever 233
Lever with ACC 233
Speed limiter 45, **232**
Speed regulating system
Warning light 45
Speed symbol 281
Spoiler 260
Sports information 51
Sporty driving
information 51
Spurhalteassistent 244
SSID 135
Stabilisation system 210
Stability Control (ESC) 42, 211
Standby 127
START-STOP 201
Jump-starting 290
manually activate/ deactivate system 202
Operation 201
Warning light 48
START-STOP system 201
Start engine 200
Immobiliser 199
Jump-starting 290
starter button
Starting engine / Stopping 200
Starter button
Lock / unlock the steering lock 199
Problems with the engine start 201
Switching the ignition on/off 200
Starting the engine
Jump-starting 290
Start the route guidance 190
Status bar 125
status line
Navigation 140
Status line 178
Telephone 158
Status Symbols of Online Services 16
Steering lock (KESSY system) 41
Steering wheel
Buttons 52
Heating 90
Proper posture 20
Setting 21
Stop engine 200
Stopping
see Parking 204
stopwatch
Display of the instrument cluster 56
infotainment 51
Storage 91
Storage compartments
see Practical features 91
Stored destinations
Final destinations 182
target memory 182
Store destination 189
Storing
seats 85
Storing skis 97
Sunblind for the tilt / slide sunroof 71
Sun visors 79, 80
Supported sources
media 151
surround 133
Swing
Infotainment description 124
Switch
Car battery 277
Switching off the ignition 200
Switching on the ignition 200
Switching the lights on and off 72
Switch off
Alarm 64
switch on / offTraffic
dynamic route 197
system information 132
System information 135, 142

T

Tablet holder 101
Tailgate 65
target memory 182
TCS 42
Technical data 305
telephone
conditions for pairing 159

Telephone
Additional telephone 160
Bluetooth Profiles 162
Breakdown call 163
Call list 165
Conference call 166
Connection types 160
Dialling the telephone number 163
Emergency call 163
Enter telephone number 163
Functions 163
Import contacts 143
Information service 163
Main menu 158
Main telephone 160
Manage favourites 143
Operation 158
Pairing process 159
Preferred contacts 164
rSAP 160
Set 143
SIM card 160
Telephone 158
Telephone book 164
Text messages (SMS) 166
User profile 143
Voicemail 163
Telephone book 164
Telephone connection types 160
Telephone functions 163
Telephone number 163
Telephone Premium
rSAP 160
Text messages 166
Through-loading bag 98
Tilt / slide sunroof
Operation 70
Sunblind 71
Time 50, **133, 141**
Time and date display in the Infotainment screen 127
Tiptronic 206
TMC
Detail of the traffic report 197
dynamic route 197
List of traffic reports 196
Tools 284
Top speeds 140
TOP TETHER 33
Touch screen 124
Towing 291, 292
Towing a trailer 258
Towing device
Accessories 254
Description 250
Vertical load 250
Towing eye 291
Towing protection 64
Towing the vehicle 291
Traction control (ASR) 211
Traction control (TCS) 42
traffic
Detail of the traffic report 197
Traffic
List of traffic reports 196
Traffic Information (TMC) 197
Traffic jam 197
Traffic obstruction 197
Traffic program (TP) 146
Traffic reports (TMC) 196
Traffic sign recognition 246
Traffic Sign Recognition
dysfunction 248
Information messages 248
Settings in Infotainment 247
Traffic signs
see Traffic sign recognition 246
Trailer
Connect and disconnect 255
Load 256
loading 255
Towing a trailer 258
Trailer Assist 229
Trailer manoeuvring assistant 229
Activation / deactivation 230
Automatic brake intervention 230
Manoeuvring 230
Operating principle 229
Trailer stabilisation system (TSA) 213
Trailer towing 250
navigation 190
Transit point 193
transmitter
See main menu 144
Transport
Luggage compartment 102
Roof rack 113
Towing device and trailer 250
Transporting children 29
Triangle 283
TSA 213
Turning off Infotainment 127
Turning on Infotainment 127
Turn signal 73
Turn signal system
Warning light 44
Tutorial videos 11
Type plate 305
Tyre
Wear indicator 280
Tyre load capacity 281
Tyre pressure 279
Warning light 43

Tyre pressure monitor
refer to the tyre pressure monitoring 249
Tyre pressure monitoring 249
Warning light 43
Tyre Pressure Monitoring
Storing the tyre pressure values and Infotainment display 249
Tyre repair 287
Tyres 278
damage 278
Explanation of the label 281
new 278
Tyre pressure 279
Tyre size 281

U

Units 134, 141
Unlatch
KESSY 61
Key 60
Unlock
Individual settings 62
Unlocking
Central locking button 61
In case of emergency 294
Remote control 60
Unlocking and locking 59
Unlock steering lock 199
Update navigation data 177
Update the navigation data 140
USB 93, 150
Safe removal 141
Useful equipment
230-volt socket 99
Clothes hook 96
Cup holders 93
Multimedia holder 94
Removable through-loading bag 98
Useful Features
12-volt power socket in the luggage compartment 99
12-volt socket in the interior 99
Useful links 2
User account
Configuration wizard 129
User profile 137, 143

V

Variable loading floor 110
vCard 182, 184
Vehicle - Settings 198
Vehicle battery
charging 277
Safety instructions 276
Warning light 45
Vehicle care 260
Exterior 263
Outside 262
Vehicle cleaning 260
Exterior 263
Windscreens 263
Vehicle condition
Auto-Check-Control 50
Vehicle dimensions 308, 309
Vehicle height 308, 309
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 305
Vehicle length 308, 309
vehicle systems 198
Vehicle tool kit 284
Vehicle width 308, 309
Vest 283
Video DVD
Main menu 154
Playback 154
Set to 137
Video DVD menu 155
Menu 155
video player 154
VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 305
Virtual pedal
see operating contactless boot lid 67
Visibility 79
Visors 79, 80
Voice control 130
Commands 131
Correction of a voice command input 131
Help 131
Not recognising a voice command 131
on / off 130
Operation principle 131
Settings 134
Stop / restore command 131
Voicemail 163
Volume 128
Volume setting 128

W

Waiter
Voice control 131
Warning lights 39
Warning symbols
see Warning lights 39
Warning triangle 283
Warning when speeding 54
Warranty 6
Washing the vehicle 261
Waste container 94
Water in the fuel filter 48
Waypoint mode 194
Main menu 194
Record waypoints 194

Set waypoint manually 194
Waypoint tour memory 195
Waypoint tour memory 195
Weather conditions 259
Weights 305, **307**
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolts 286
Caps 286
Loosening and tightening 286
Wheels 278
Changing 284
Full trim 285
Load Index 281
Snow chains 281
Speed symbol 281
Tyre age 278
Tyre damage 278
Tyre pressure 279
Tyre storage 278
Unidirectional tires 278
Winter tyres 281
Window convenience operation 69
Window operation 67
Windows
operating 67
Windscreen - heating 79
Windscreen washer fluid
Refill 273
Warning light 47
Windscreen washing systems 80
Windscreen wipers and washers 80
Activation 81
Replacing the windscreen wiper blade 296
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 295
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms 295
Winter operation 281
All season tyres 281
Car battery 277
Diesel fuel 267
Snow chains 281
Winter tyres 281
Winter tyres 281
Wiper and Washers
Automatic rear window wipers 81
Wipers and washer
Warning light for windscreen washer fluid level 47
Wipers and washers
Activate 81
Refill fluid 273
Wiping interval 81
Wireless Internet Hotspot
set to 135
Wizard for blind spot monitoring 218
Driving situations and warnings 219
Operation 219
WLAN 151, 169
Client 170
Connect 170
Connect to hotspot 170
Set hotspot 170
Switch hotspot on/off 169
WPS 135, 170
WLAN client
set to 135
WLAN Client 170
WPS 135, 170

X

XDS 212

Other Characters

ŠKODA Connect
register 142
Register 135
see Online Services 13
services Manager 142
Services Manager 135
Set 135
set to 142
ŠKODA Connect Online Services
Enable services 135
Register 135
ŠKODA OneApp application 175

Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2018

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Octavia anglicky 11.2018
5E0012720AQ

5E0012720AQ